F. XV. 2
17

Clayton Havers

M.D.

Jno Norman

37717/B

65.B.19 29970

Peter Pelz

Parfitt 12/7/11

RICHARDUS MORTON M.D.
Colleg: Med: Lond: Soc:

PHTHISIOLOGIA:

OR, A

TREATISE

OF

Conſumptions.

WHEREIN

The Difference, Nature, Cauſes, Signs, and Cure of all ſorts of CONSUMPTIONS are Explained.

Containing Three BOOKS,

I. *Of Original Conſumptions from the whole Habit of the Body.*

II. *Of an Original Conſumption of the Lungs.*

III. *Of Symptomatical Conſumptions, or ſuch as are the Effects of ſome other Diſtempers.*

Illuſtrated by particular Caſes, and Obſervations added to every Book. With a Compleat TABLE of the moſt Remarkable Things.

By *RICHARD MORTON*, M. D.
And Fellow of the Colledge of Phyſicians.

Tranſlated from the Original.

LONDON:
Printed for *Sam. Smith* and *Benj. Walford*, at the *Prince's Arms* in St. *Paul's* Church-yard. 1694.

29975

WELLCOME
HISTORICAL
MEDICAL
LIBRARY

TO THE

High and Invincible Monarch,

William III^d.

By the Grace of God

King of *Great Britain*, *France*, and *Ireland*, Defender of the Faith, *&c.*

Dread Soveraign,

NOW that you have with the greateſt Difficulty and Danger happily expended ſo many, and ſuch vaſt Labours for the ſake of Religion and the Common-wealth, now that you have had ſo many Remarkable and Eminent Rewards conferred upon Your Majeſty (as we muſt think) by the Hands of Heaven, with the Suffrage and Applauſe of all Good Men for your Vertue and Piety both towards God and Mankind, which every way imi-

tate and equal what has been always found in the Family of *NASSAW*, permit me, who not by my own Merits, but by Your Favour alone, was some time since advanced to the Doctor's Chair, to Present to your Majesty these First Fruits of my Studies, how mean soever they be, as an Expression of my most Humble Gratitude, and to lodge them securely under the Protection of Your Most Mighty Patronage. From which if any thing shall redound to the Publick Good, I shall have Reason abundantly to Congratulate my own Felicity. And may it please Almighty God, that his free and infinite Goodness towards Mankind may especially at this time be manifested to all the World, to bestow upon Your Majesty, and upon the Most Illustrious Consort of Your Bed and Throne, *MARY*, Queen of *Great Britain*, perpetual and unshaken Health, a Long and Prosperous Reign, and an Heir in every thing like his Parents, and at length

length a late arrival to the Regions of Immortal Bliss. This all Good Men particularly Pray for, this they passionately desire. In the mean time go on, Most Renowned Monarch, to Compose the disordered state of Religion and the Commonwealth, to Succour the Christian Part of *Europe*, that is just ready to perish, to give Peace to the World; and finally, to take off every Unjust and Tyrannical Yoak, that in after-ages you may for ever be stiled under God the only Deliverer and Saviour both of Your Country, and of Mankind, which is the most ardent desire of

Your MAJESTY'S

Most Humble and

Devoted Subject,

RICH. MORTON.

TO THE READER.

THIS Book had remained concealed from Vulgar Eyes in the Learned Language in which it was writ by the Author, had we not been certainly informed that the Translation of it was intended and attempted by other Hands. And having also fresh Experience how by such means two late Treatises of Dr. Harris *and Dr.* Sydenham (*whose Copies were our Proprieties*) *were surreptitiously invaded, and by false and unintelligible Translations, the worthy Authors themselves much defamed and injured; we thought in Justice to our selves as well as the learned Author, to anticipate such an ill Design, by procuring, and putting forth this Exact Traduction, wherein not only the Sense, but also the Life and Elegancy of the Author's Style is fully set forth. And we do here at once declare to the World our Intentions to frustrate the Designs of any* (*whoever they be*) *who for the future shall go about to Translate and Publish any Copy of Ours.*

S. Smith.
B. Walford.

The CONTENTS.

BOOK I.

Of Consumptions *in General*, *and particularly of a* Consumption *proceeding from the whole Habit of the* Body, *or an* Atrophy, *both that which is* Nervous, *and that which is caused by* Evacuations. pag. 1.

Chap. 1. *Of a Nervous* Consumption. pag. 4.

Chap. 2. *Of a* Consumption *proceeding from some* Evacuation. p. 11

Chap. 3. *Of a* Consumption *from* Bleeding p. 14.

Chap. 4. *Of a* Consumption *from a* Gonorrhœa *and the* Whites. p. 19

Chap. 5. *Of a* Consumption *proceeding from* Apostemes *and large* Ulcers p. 23.

Chap. 6. *Of a* Consumption *happening to* Nurses, *from the giving of Suck beyond what their strength will allow* p. 32

Chap. 7. *Of a* Consumption *from a* Bloody-Flux, *and from a* Looseness p. 37

Chap. 8. *Of a* Consumption *from a* Diabetes, *or too great a* Flux *of* Urine p. 41.

Chap. 9. *Of a* Consumption *caused by* Salivation, *or* Spitting p. 45

Chap. 10. *Of a* Consumption *proceeding from a* Dropsie p. 47

Chap. 11. *Of a* Consumption *caused by profuse* Sweats p. 52

The Appendix p. 57

BOOK II.

Of *an Original* Consumption *of the* Lungs pag. 62

Chap. 1. *Of the Causes of an Original* Consumption *of the* Lungs p. 64

Chap. 2. *Of the Degrees of an Original* Consumption *of the* Lungs, *and the Signs which give us warning of it, together with the Preservatory Indications, or what we are directed to do in order to prevent it* p. 69

Chap. 3. *Of the* Diagnostick *and* Pathognomonick Signs *of the beginning of a* Pulmonary Consumption p. 82

Chap. 4. *Of the* Pathognomonick Signs *of a Confirmed* Consumption *of the* Lungs p. 100

Chap. 5. *Of the Differences of an Original* Consumption *of the* Lungs p. 117

Chap. 6. *Of the* Prognostick Signs *of an Original* Consumption *of the* Lungs p. 122

Chap. 7. *Of the* Indications *of Cure in an Original* Consumption *of the* Lungs p. 127

Chap. 8 *Of the Method of Cure in an Original* Consumption *of the* Lungs p. 138

Chap. 9. *Of the Cure of a* Consumption *in the Second Degree of it, to wit, when from the want of a due Expectoration, and from the Matter, that was lodged in the* Lungs, *thereupon staying long in them, some crude* Tubercles *arising from the knotty Swelling of the* Glands *of the* Lungs, *happen to come upon a long* Cough p. 155

Chap. 10. *Of the Cure of an Original* Consumption *of the* Lungs *in the*

the Third Degree of it, to wit, when the Patient *is reduced by the* Inflammation, *the* Apostems, *and* Exulceration *of the* Glandulous *part of the* Lungs, *to the state of a* Marasmus, *together with an extraordinary Weakness, a* Consumption *of his Flesh, an increase of his Hectick* Fever, *and likewise the addition of a* Peripneumonick *and* Putrid Fever, *and the other direful* Symptoms, *which are wont to accompany the Fatal state of a* Consumption p. 171

Chap. 11. *Of the Relief of the* Symptoms *of a* Consumption *in the Third Degree of it* p. 182

BOOK III.

OF *a* Symptomatical Consumption *of the* Lungs pag. 191

Chap. 1. *Of a* Scrophulous Consumption p. 194

Chap. 2. *Of a* Scorbutical Consumption p. 202

Chap. 3. *Of an* Asthmatical Consumption p. 212

Chap. 4. *Of a* Consumption *proceeding from* Melancholy, *as also from an* Hysterical *and* Hypochondriacal Affection p. 217

Chap. 5. *Of a* Consumption *caused by* Spitting of Blood p. 225

Chap. 6. *Of a* Consumption *caused by* Stones *bred in the* Lungs, *and by things slipt* down *into them from without, as also by the* Stone *in the* Kidneys *and* Bladder, p. 238

Chap. 7. *Of a* Consumption *proceeding from the* French-Pox p. 250

Chap 8. *Of a* Consumption *proceeding from the Suppression of a virulent* Gonorrhœa, *of the Running of Old* Ulcers, *but especially* Fistula's *in the* Fundament, *and* Scrophulous Ulcers, Issues, *and the* Whites p. 254

Chap 9. *Of a* Consumption *proceeding from the* Green-Sickness, *and a Suppression of the Monthly Purgations in* Women p 258

Chap. 10. *Of a* Consumption *caused by a* Peripneumony *and a* Pleurisie p. 263

Chap. 11. *Of a* Consumption *proceeding from the* Gout, *and from a* Rheumatism p. 276

Chap. 12. *Of a* Consumption *proceeding from* Fevers, *especially such as are from* Surfeits, Scarlate, *and* Intermitting Fevers; *as also from the* Small-Pox *and* Measles p. 294

Chap. 13. *Of an* Icterical, *or* Hepatick Consumption p. 307

Chap. 14. *Of a* Consumption *of the* Lungs *proceeding from Internal* Ulcers *of the* Viscera *and* Membranous Parts p. 340

A TREATISE OF Consumptions.

The First BOOK.

Of Consumptions in general, and particularly of a Consumption proceeding from the whole Habit of the Body, or an Atrophy, *both that, which is Nervous, and that, which is caused by Evacuations.*

THAT I may give such a Scheme of this whole Work, as will lye under a single View, and open a Prospect into my Design, I shall here by way of Preface first give a Definition, and make a Division of the Subject about which we are to treat, whereby, as by *Ariadne*'s Thread, we

be easily, and safely directed to, and proceed through all the parts of the Work.

The Definition of a Consumption in general. A Consumption in general is a wasting of the *Muscular* parts of the Body, arising from the Substraction, or Colliquation of the Humours, and that either with, or without a Fever, and it is either Original, or Symptomatical.

Of an Original Consumption. An Original Consumption is that, which arises purely from a Morbid Disposition of the Blood, or Animal Spirits, which reside in the *System* of the Nerves and Fibres, and is not the effect of any other preceding Disease. Of which there are two sorts, to wit, an *Atrophy*, and a Consumption of the Lungs.

Of an Atrophy. An *Atrophy* is an Universal Consumption proceeding from the whole Habit of the Body, and not from any Distemper of the Lungs, or of any other Entrail; without any remarkable Fever, and is either Nervous, or the effect of Evacuations.

Of a Nervous Consumption. A Nervous *Atrophy*, or Consumption is that, which ows its Original to an ill and morbid state of the Spirits, and to the weakness, or destruction of the Tone of the Nerves, from whence as an imbecillity, and an Universal Consumption in the whole Habit of the Body upon the want of a due assimulation of the Nutritious Juice do at length proceed; so from the beginning of the Disease there is to be found a want of Appetite, and a bad Digestion in the Stomack from an imperfect Fermentation and Volatilization of the *Chyle*. Which sort of *Atrophy* may justly be reckoned one of the Fatal Symptoms of the *Scurvy*.

An

An *Atrophy* from Inanition or an Expense of the Humours, is that which derives its Original from a preternatural Defect, or Evacuation of the Nutritious Juice, and that long and habitual, which differs according to the variety of the passages formed in the Body either by Nature or Art, by which this precious Liquor either has, or may run off, and be wasted. *Of an Atrophy from Evacuations.*

A Consumption of the Lungs is an Universal wasting of the Parts of the Body, caused by some Distemper of the Lungs, as a stuffing, swellings, inflammation, and exulceration of them, and thereupon it is attended with a Cough, difficulty of Breathing, and other Symptoms of the Breast, and accompanied with a Fever, which at first is slow, and Hectical, afterwards Inflammatory, and at last Putrid and Intermitting. *Of an Original Consumption of the Lungs.*

A Symptomatical Consumption is that, which although it does immediately proceed from a Preternatural, and ill state of the Blood and Spirits, yet has a mediate dependance upon some other preceding Diseases, which had given that ill Tincture to the Spirits and Humours. And because it is necessary, if we would be successful in the Cure of this kind of Consumption, to have a respect to the Disease which the Patient first laboured under, I shall in the end of this Treatise speak of all the several kinds of this Consumption, which I have hitherto had an Opportunity to observe in my Practice; but I shall begin, and discourse first of an Original Consumption. *Of a Symptomatical Consumption.*

CHAP. I.

Of a Nervous Conſumption.

A Nervous *Atrophy*, or Conſumption is a waſting of the Body without any remarkable Fever, Cough, or ſhortneſs of Breath; but it is attended with a want of Appetite, and a bad Digeſtion, upon which there follows a Languiſhing Weakneſs of Nature, and a falling away of the Fleſh every day more and more. Which kind of Conſumption I have ſometimes obſerved in *England*, but moſt frequently amongſt thoſe that have lived in *Virginia*, after they have come over hither.

A Nervous Conſumption that which Virginians *are moſt incident to.*

In the beginning of this Diſeaſe the ſtate of the Body appears oedematous and blouted, and as it were ſtufft with diſpirited Chyle; the Face is pale and ſqualid, the Stomack loaths every thing but Liquids, the ſtrength of the Patient declines at that rate, that before the fleſhy Parts of the Body are evidently conſum'd, he is render'd plainly feeble, and almoſt always confin'd to his Bed. The Urine alſo keeps not conſtant to any colour, though for the moſt part it be high-colour'd, and but little in quantity. Yet it is ſometimes, (as it happens commonly to be in Nervous Diſtempers) though ſeldom, pale and plentiful. But there is no conſiderable Fever to be diſcovered, either by the Pulſe, or a Thirſt, or Heat, how high-colour'd ſoever the Urine appears. So that the Pathognomonick Signs, or thoſe which do

do evidently manifest the beginning of this Consumption, are a decrease of the Patient's Strength, and a loss of Appetite, without any remarkable Fever, Cough, or shortness of Breath, though in the Progress of the Distemper, when a Consumption of the Flesh has gradually affected the whole Habit of the Body, there is some difficulty and trouble in breathing to be observed, as it uses to happen to all those who are under a great Weakness.

The Causes.

The immediate cause of this Distemper I apprehend to be in the System of the Nerves proceeding from a Preternatural state of the Animal Spirits, and the destruction of the Tone of the Nerves; whereupon I have used to call this a Consumption in the Habit of the Body. For as the Appetite and Concoction are overthrown by the weak and infirm Tone of the Stomack, so also the Assimilation, the Fermentation, and Volatilization of the Nutritious Juice are hindred in the whole Habit of the Body from the distemper'd state of the Brain and Nerves.

The Causes which dispose the Patient to this Disease, I have for the most part observed to be violent Passions of the Mind, the intemperate drinking of Spirituous Liquors, and an unwholsom Air, by which it is no wonder if the Tone of the Nerves, and the Temper of the Spirits are destroy'd.

The Prognostick.

This Distemper as most other Nervous Diseases is Chronical, but very hard to be cured, unless a Physician be called at the beginning of it. At first it flatters and deceives the Patient, for which reason it happens for the most part that the Physician is consulted too late. And at last it terminates in an Hydropical and

Oedematous swelling of the Body, especially of the lower and depending Parts, in which case there remain no hopes of the Patient's Life, neither is there any thing more to be done for his Cure, than giving him some ease, whereby his Miserable Life may be lengthened for some days.

The Cure. The business of Cure, if it be so that the help of our Art is called in in due time, consists in the convenient use of *Stomack*-Medicines, and such as comfort and strengthen the Nerves; such are *Chalybeates, Antiscorbutick, Cephalick, and bitter Medicines* of all sorts. As for Example, let the Patient, if his Body be costive, take every third or fourth Morning *four Ounces of the bitter Decoction with Senna*, or every fourth Night *two Ounces of the Sacred Tincture*, or *of our Sacred Cephalick Tincture made with* Hiera Picra *infused in Rue-water, Black-Cherry-water, and strong Piony-water.*

For his common Drink, let him use Ale, in which a Bag of *Cephalick and Antiscorbutick* Ingredients has been hung. An hour before Dinner let him take xxx drops of *Elixir Proprietatis* in a draught of Wormwood-White-wine. To the Region of the Stomack let there be applyed the *Magisterial Stomack-Plaister, with some Drops of the Chymical Oyl of Cinnamon and Oyl of Wormwood.* Or let the Stomack be fomented every day with some Aromatick Bags made of the Leaves of *Mint, Wormwood, Cinnamon, Mace, Zedoary, Galingale, Cyprus-roots, Calamus Aromaticus boyl'd in Claret.* If it be in the Summer, let him use the *Chalybeate Waters:* But if it be the Winter time, let him make use of

a *Chalybeate Syrup*; or our *Chalybeate and Aromatick Wine* made *with the Filings of Steel* quenched three or four times in strong White-Wine, and *with Zedoary-roots*, *Galingale*, *Nutmegs*, *the best Cinnamon*, *Mace*, *Cubebs*, *Cloves* bruised, and steeped in the same Wine. But for Chalybeates, I do prefer *Mynsicht's Extract* before any other, which I order to be given for xx. or xxx. days in the form of a Bolus, or Pills. As for Example.

Take of *Mynsicht's Extract* half a Scruple, *Balm of Gilead* (which in this case is very proper and beneficial, because it is not a little grateful to the Stomack and Nerves) seven Drops, *Old Conserve of red Roses* a Dram, mix them, and make them up into a Bolus to be repeated every day. Or if the Patient chooses to take Pills, let the Extract be made up into that form in the manner following. Take of *Mynsicht's Extract* half a Scruple, of *Balm of Gielead* seven Drops, of *Haly's Pouder* six Grains, of *the compound Pouder of the Roots of Wake-Robin* four Grains, of *Pouder of Liquorice* so much as will make them into the due consistence of Pills, and make the Mass into Pills of a middle size; let them be gilded, and repeated once every day.

Also *Natural Balsam* by it self, as likewise *Spirit of Hartshorn*, and *Spirit of Sal Armoniack* are of use in this case, because they are good for the Nerves. As for Example: Let the Patient take viij. or x. drops of *Natural Balsam*, or *Spirit of Hartshorn* in a convenient quantity of *Sugar-candy* twice a day.

Rules for Exercise, Diet, &c.

Let the Patient endeavour to divert and make his Mind chearful by Exercise, and the Conversation of his Friends. For this Disease does almost always proceed from Sadness, and anxious Cares. Let him also enjoy the benefit of an open, clear, and very good Air, which does very much relieve the Nerves and Spirits. And because the Stomack in this Distemper is principally affected, a delicious Diet will be convenient, and the Stomack ought not to be too long accustomed to one sort of Food.

History I.

Mr. *Duke*'s Daughter in St. *Mary Axe*, in the Year 1684. and the Eighteenth Year of her Age, in the Month of *July* fell into a total suppression of her Monthly Courses from a multitude of Cares and Passions of her Mind, but without any Symptom of the Green-Sickness following upon it. From which time her Appetite began to abate, and her Digestion to be bad; her Flesh also began to be flaccid and loose, and her looks pale, with other Symptoms usual in an Universal Consumption of the Habit of the Body, and by the extream and memorable cold Weather which happened the Winter following, this Consumption did seem to be not a little improved; for that she was wont by her studying at Night, and continual poring upon Books, to expose her self both Day and Night to the injuries of the Air, which was at that time extreamly cold, not without some manifest Prejudice to the System of her Nerves. The Spring following, by the Prescription of some Emperick, she took *a*

Vomit,

Vomit, and after that I know not what *Steel* Medicines, but without any Advantage. So from that time loathing all sorts of Medicaments, she wholly neglected the care of her self for two full Years, till at last being brought to the last degree of a *Marasmus*, or Consumption, and thereupon subject to frequent Fainting Fits, she apply'd her self to me for Advice.

I do not remember that I did ever in all my Practice see one, that was conversant with the Living so much wasted with the greatest degree of a Consumption, (like a Skeleton only clad with skin) yet there was no Fever, but on the contrary a coldness of the whole Body; no Cough, or difficulty of Breathing, nor an appearance of any other Distemper of the Lungs, or of any other Entrail: No Looseness, or any other sign of a Colliquation, or Preternatural expence of the Nutritious Juices. Only her Appetite was diminished, and her Digestion uneasie, with Fainting Fits, which did frequently return upon her. Which Symptoms I did endeavour to relieve by the outward application of *Aromatick* Bags made to the Region of the Stomack, and by *Stomack-Plaisters*, as also by the internal use of *bitter* Medicines, *Chalybeates*, and Juleps made of *Cephalick* and *Antihysterick Waters*, sufficiently impregnated with *Spirit of Salt Armoniack*, and *Tincture of Castor*, and other things of that Nature. Upon the use of which she seemed to be much better, but being quickly tired with Medicines, she beg'd that the whole Affair might be committed again to Nature, whereupon consuming every day more and more, she was after three Months taken with a Fainting Fit, and dyed. *Histori*

History 2.

The Son of the Reverend Minister Mr. *Steele*, my very good Friend, about the Sixteenth Year of his Age fell gradually into a total want of Appetite, occasioned by his studying too hard, and the Passions of his Mind, and upon that into an Universal *Atrophy*, pining away more and more for the space of two Years, without any Cough, Fever, or any other Symptom of any Distemper of his Lungs, or any other Entrail; as also without a Looseness, or *Diabetes*, or any other sign of a Colliquation, or Preternatural Evacuation. And therefore I judg'd this Consumption to be Nervous, and to have its seat in the whole Habit of the Body, and to arise from the System of Nerves being distemper'd. I began, and first attempted his Cure with the use of *Anti-scorbutick*, *Bitter*, and *Chalybeate* Medicines, as well Natural as Artificial, but without any benefit; and therefore when I found that the former Method did not answer our Expectations, I advis'd him to abandon his Studies, to go into the Country Air, and to use Riding, and a Milk Diet (and especially to drink Asses Milk) for a long time. By the use of which he recover'd his Health in a great measure, though he is not yet perfectly freed from a Consumptive state; and what will be the event of this Method, does not yet plainly appear.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of a Conſumption proceeding from ſome Evacuation.

TO this ſort of Original Conſumption from the whole Habit of the Body belongs alſo another kind of Conſumption (which I have often met with in my Practice) ariſing from the empoveriſhment of the Blood, occaſioned by the Preternatural ſubſtraction and loſs of the Nutritious Juice. Whereupon the whole Maſs of Blood being deprived of the Nutritious and Oily Juice, grows ſour and too hot, affording none or very little Nouriſhment to the Muſcular Parts; and thereupon there follows a Conſumption of the whole Body, and a Hectical heat fixed in the whole Habit of it, without any conſiderable Cough, or difficulty of Breathing, or any other remarkable affection of the Lungs, at leaſt in the beginning of the Diſtemper. But it muſt be confeſt that in the Progreſs of it the Lungs ſeem to be in ſome meaſure affected, eſpecially where the Preternatural Evacuations, which are the cauſe of the Diſtemper, are ſtopt by Art without any correction or ſweetning of the Maſs of Blood, by which means it might recover its Natural, Oily, Benign Nature, and ſuch as renders it fit for Nouriſhment. In which caſe there is no reaſon to wonder if the hot and ſharp *Serum* of the Blood continually

The loſs and want of Nutritious Juice empoveriſhes the Blood, and cauſes a Conſumption.

At length the Lungs ſeem affected in ſome meaſure.

tinually paſſing, after the other Sluices of Nature are ſtopt, through the ſoft and glandulous ſubſtance of the Lungs, does at length ſtuff, inflame, yea, and at laſt exulcerate them too; whereby it comes to paſs, that this Conſumption, which was Originally in the Habit of the Body, does a little before Death end in a Conſumption of the Lungs, with a Cough, difficulty of Breathing, and other Pathognomonick Signs of that Diſtemper. And therefore I have often obſerved, that if the Appetite and Digeſtion are not reſtored by ſuch Medicines as have a peculiar quality of altering the Blood, and ſtrengthening the Stomack, ſo that the Maſs of Blood may thereupon be ſupplyed and filled with a ſweet and Oily Juice, the Conſumption is not cured, but at length is changed from a Conſumption in the Habit of the Body, to a Fatal Conſumption of the Lungs.

This Diſtemper ſometimes turns to a Conſumption of the Lungs.

This Conſumption is akin to that which is Nervous.

And this Conſumption is in truth a-kin to the Nervous Conſumption, which I have before mentioned. For as in that, which proceeds from a Preternatural ſtate of the Nervous Juice and Spirits, the Nutritious Chyle, which is continually carryed into the Blood, is rendred leſs fit for the Nouriſhment of the Parts, and thereupon as the Maſs of Blood is filled with ſtale and diſpirited Chyle, ſuch as is unfit for Nouriſhment, and not craving any new, there follows a loſs of Appetite, and a ſickneſs in the Stomack, and conſequently a Conſumption of the whole Body, and at length a fixed Hectical and Colliquative heat in the ſolid Parts from the heat of the Blood and Spirits: So in this kind of Conſumption the Nutritious Juice running off from the Maſs of Blood with a

full

full ſtream, the Muſcular Parts of the Body being thus deprived of their due Nouriſhment, fall into an *Atrophy*; whereupon likewiſe the Maſs of Blood which remains, for want of new Oily Chyle is not only diſpirited, and rendred unfit for Nouriſhment, but a preternatural, fixed, and hectical heat is kindled not only in the Blood, but alſo in the Spirits, and all the ſolid Parts; whereupon there follows a Drought and want of Appetite. Which kind of Conſumption is that, which we are now in the firſt place profeſſedly to treat of. But becauſe the Cure of this kind of Conſumption is to be altered according to the variety of the Evacuations, which are the cauſe of it, I ſhall add nothing concerning the general Cure of it, but refer that to the ſeveral kinds of Evacuations, which are the cauſe of this Diſtemper, to be ſpoken of under their proper Heads. Of which (ſo far as I have had an Opportunity to make Obſervations) I come now particularly to treat.

The Cure of this Conſumption is to be altered according as the Evacuation varies.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of a Consumption from Bleeding.

THat which here first offers it self, is a Consumption from Bleeding, whether it be at the Nose, or from the Lungs by coughing, from the Throat by hawking, from the Stomack by vomiting, from the Kidneys by the passages of Urine, from the Hæmorrhoids, or Vessels of the Womb in the ordinary Monthly Purgations, or difficult Labour, or lastly, from Wounds, where there happens a plentiful and long flux of Blood from the opening of the large Blood-Vessels. For although frequent and moderate Blood-letting (as every ignorant Fellow and Barber knows) will make one grow fat; forasmuch as the emptying the Vessels with a moderate hand does make room for a greater quantity of new Chyle, whereupon the Mass of Blood growing richer, is rendred more fit for Nourishment, and consequently the Appetite is excited: Yet every immoderate and long Bleeding impoverishes the Blood, and creates a Hectical heat in the Spirits and solid Parts, thereupon destroying the Appetite, and bringing the whole Body into a Consumption and Leanness.

Moderate and frequent bleeding makes People grow fat.

But an immoderate bleeding impoverishes the blood, and causes a Consumption.

In this case the bleeding must be stopt as soon as may be, and the return of it is to be prevented by Incrassating, Opiate, and Glutinous Medicines, of which we are to speak more fully in the Chapter of Spitting of Blood. As for

Here the bleeding must be stopt.

for Example: Let ſtrong Ligatures be made upon the Arms and Thighs, yea, if it be neceſſary, and the ſtrength of the Patient will bear it, let a Vein be opened with a Lancet, and Blood taken away frequently, but in a ſmall quantity, to divert the preſent Flux of Blood, and to prevent the return of it. If the Part where the Blood breaks out will admit of it, let *Galen's Styptick Plaiſter*, *the Royal Styptick*, *cold Oxycrate*, *Ink*, *the aſhes of Humane Hair* lightly burnt in a Retort, and made into the form of a Pultiſe with Vinegar; *true Bole*, *Dragon's Blood*, and other things of that Nature, be in a convenient manner preſently applyed, and often renewed. *The manner how this is to be done.*

Inwardly let the Patient take three or four times a day xx. or xxx. drops or more of the *Royal Styptick* in a draught of *Milk-water*. Alſo v. or vj. ſpoonfuls of the clarified Juices of *Plantain* and *Nettles*; or let him frequently take the following *Linctus* out of a Spoon.

Take of *Syrup of Purſlane three Ounces*, *true Bole*, *Dragons-Blood*, *Troches of burnt Ivory*, *ſcaled Earth*, of each two Scruples, *Japan Earth* a Dram, of *Gum Tragacanth* diſſolved in *Plantain-water*, a ſufficient quantity, mix them up into a *Linctus*. Or let him take the quantity of a Nutmeg of the following Electuary.

Take of the *Conſerve of red Roſes* an Ounce, *Troches of Amber* three Drams, *true Bole*, *Dragons-blood*, of each half a Dram, *Syrup of Myrtles* a ſufficient quantity; mix them up into an Electuary.

Let him likewiſe take every Night v. or vj. Spoonfuls of the following Julep, ſhaking the Bottle.

Take

Take of *Plantain-water* six Ounces, *small Cinnamon-water* three Ounces, *distill'd Vinegar* half an Ounce, *true Bole, Dragons-blood,* of each half a Dram, *London Laudanum* three Grains, *Syrup of Myrtles* an Ounce and half, mingle them, and make a Julep.

After the bleeding is stopt the blood must be supplyed with new Chyle.

The Flux of Blood being thus sufficiently stopt and cur'd, we are to use our most diligent Endeavours that the Blood may be quickly repleniſhed with such new Chyle as abounds with sweet and Nutritious Juice, and that the Feverish heat (if there be any) may be extinguisht, to prevent a Consumption. And therefore the Patient is to be nourished with the frequent taking of Jelly-Broaths, poached Eggs, and variety of Food that affords good Juices, and is both easie to be digested, and most grateful to the Stomack. Nevertheless he is to abstain from Wine, and from things that are salt, or have Spice in them, lest they increase the heat of the Blood, which was before too hot from the defect of its Nutritious Juice. And because this sort of Patients, as all that are upon the Confines of a Consumption, are subject to Anger, to Sadness, Hypochondriacal Oppressions, Hysterick Fits, and to a want of Appetite, whereupon they can neither take, nor digest much Food, and consequently uncapable of making up the loss of that Blood which has been spent; therefore the sick Person ought to be diverted and humour'd by his Friends, and to be sent as soon as may be into an open and wholesome Air, which in truth I have, being taught from a great deal of Experience, observed to conduce more than any thing of Medicines to the comforting and fortifying of the Nerves and Spirits,

The Patient must be diverted, and sent into the Country Air.

to

to the recovery of an Appetite, and a chearful Mind, and consequently to the preventing of an approaching Consumption.

When there is a Hectical heat, it must be taken off with the Bark.

But if the Patient seems either through his own neglect, or the sudden advances of the Distemper, to be affected with a Hectical Heat, and some degree of a Consumption from his bleeding, then let the Physician make it his whole business perfectly to put out this flame as soon as ever he can with the help of the *Peruvian Bark* given in a large quantity, the efficacy of which I have often found to be wonderful in this case. Afterwards, if it be necessary, let the Patient be put into a Milk Diet, or upon the use of the Chalybeat Waters. But he must forbear the use of all Purging Medicines. And some benefit may be reasonably expected from the giving of Crabs-Eyes, Coral, Pearl, and other such kind of altering and sweetning Medicines.

What is afterwards to be done.

A History.

Mr. *Hotchkins*, a Merchant of *London*, a Man that was Scorbutical and Hypochondriacal, was subject to a frequent bleeding at the Nose from the twentieth almost to the thirtieth Year of his Age, so that he sustain'd a great loss of Blood from the heat of his Feverish Blood at least once or twice a Month, though it did not observe any certain periods, till at length the Blood that was let out with a Lancet, or that which he bled at his Nose, did appear just like the Water that Flesh has been wash'd in. From the return of which bleeding I could not then free that Excellent Person, and my very worthy Friend, either with Phlebo-

tomy, or the temperating Juices, Opiate, and Incraſſating Medicines, a Milk Diet, Antiſcorbutick, and Chalybeate Remedies, or any other manner of Medicines. From which he firſt fell into the ſtate of an *Atrophy*, and at length into a true Conſumption of the Lungs, together with a very great difficulty of Breathing, and thereupon falling into an univerſal colliquative ſtate, he ſuffered a little before he dyed an exulceration of the Salivatory Glands after an extraordinary ſwelling of them. By the opening of which on the out-ſide there flow'd out ſo great, and ſuch a continual ſtream of the Salivatory Juice, as very much haſtened the Death of that worthy Man, that was before brought almoſt to the ſtate of a *Maraſmus* by the Conſumption of his Lungs, which was cauſed by his Bleeding. But I was extreamly troubled that I did not at that time know the Efficacy of the *Peruvian Bark*, in ſuppreſſing this effervesſence of the Blood, upon which that Bleeding, which return'd frequently, did certainly depend; for from the uſe of this Medicine we may juſtly expect more Service in the preventing of a Hæmorrhage proceeding from the effervesſence of the Blood, than from a Milk Diet, or any other manner of Medicines.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of a Consumption from a Gonorrhœa *and the Whites.*

THIS Consumption seems to have been known even to the Ancients, under the name of a Consumption of the Back, when it proceeds from a *Gonorrhœa*. *Galen* also notes the Story of the Wife of *Boethius*, a certain Nobleman of *Rome*, who fell into a Consumptive Dropsie from the Empirical suppression of the Whites, that had flow'd in too great a quantity, and a long time.

This Consumption was not unknown to the Ancients.

'Tis very true indeed that a *Gonorrhœa*, and the Whites, that are of an ill Nature, and *Venereal*, (when the Impurity proceeding from that Venom has once infected the Humors) do often terminate in a Consumption of the Lungs, unless they are timely and perfectly cur'd. But of this kind of Consumption, and of the Causes, Degrees, and Cure of it, I shall Discourse more fully in its proper place, to wit, in the latter part of this Treatise, when I shall professedly speak of a Symptomatical Consumption of the Lungs. But for the present I do from a long Experience and Observation affirm, that a Consumption does often arise from a simple or benign *Gonorrhœa* and Whites, and therefore this sort arising from the continual substraction of the Nutritious Juice by the Seminal Glands, must be reckoned under the Head of an Originary

A Venereal Gonorrhœa and Whites often end in a Consumption of the Lungs.

A Consumption sometimes proceed from a simple Gonorrhœa, &c.

Consumption. For in a *Gonorrhœa* and the Whites, sometimes the Flux is so extraordinary, and continues so long, that the Mass is thereby plainly dispirited, and rendred unfit for Nourishment, whereupon the Blood being loaded with Heterogeneous and disagreeable Particles, grows hot, and at length a Hectick Disposition is by degrees brought upon the solid Parts and the Habit of the Body, which is the same sort of Consumption that we are now treating of.

The presaging signs of this Consumption.

The Symptoms which presage this Consumption, I have for the most part observed to be these, to wit, an *Hypochondriacal* Oppression, Melancholy, and too much Thoughtfulness, with a decay of Strength, and loss of Appetite in Men that are affected with a plentiful Running of the Reins; but in Women that have been long afflicted with the Whites flowing in a great quantity, a soft and blouted Habit of the Body, a squalid and pale Countenance, together with *Hysterical* Fits, a remarkable Weariness, and decay of Strength; all which Symptoms proceed from the same cause, to wit, from the poor dispirited Nature of the Blood, caused by a want of new Chyle, whereby not only the Spirits are weakned and oppress, but also the Habit of the Body is rendred *Oedematous* from the watery disposition of the Blood, as it is full of old and dispirited Chyle. And therefore the Signs which presage this Consumption are, as I said before, *Hypochondriacal* Oppressions, *Hysterical* Affections, a decay and want of Strength, a blouted habit of the Body, and a want of Appetite. Which Symptoms in progress of time, that is, when the Distemper comes to be confirm'd, are followed also by some others, as a Thirst, a *Hectical* disposition, *Atrophy*, and wasting of the Flesh, till at

at length the Body is plainly brought to the higheſt degree of a Conſumption, and that very often without any Cough, or any other remarkable ſign of a Conſumption of the Lungs.

This Diſtemper is eaſily cured, if the antecedent cauſe of it can be removed, that is, if the *Gonorrhœa* and Whites can be cured. But when it comes once to be confirmed, it is plainly incurable. And therefore a Prudent and Honeſt Phyſician, that is carefully concern'd for his own Reputation, will not do well to undertake the Cure of it, but ought rather to take his leave, and walk off from ſuch a Patient, after he has made a Prognoſtick of his Death; and ſo he will be juſt to his Art, and may ſatisfie his Conſcience, though he loſes ſome Fees, and defrauds his own Pocket. *When confirmed, it is incurable.*

But if the Phyſician be ſent for in time, he ought to do all he can by all proper means, and a convenient Method to ſtop the *Gonorrhœa*, or Whites, which are the cauſe of this Conſumption. Which thing we ſhall ſpeak of at ſome other time, and ſhew how it is to be done in the Chapters of a *Gonorrhœa*, and of the Whites. This efflux of the Nutritious Juice being once ſtopt by Art, we muſt endeavour with all our Power to repleniſh the diſpirited and impoveriſht Blood as ſoon as may be, with new, oily, and benign Chyle. And therefore, as we hinted in the former Chapter, ſuch Food as is delicious, and affords a good Juice, and is moſt grateful to the Patient's Palate and Stomack, muſt be given often in a day, though in a little quantity at a time. And that his Appetite may be the more excited, let him be adviſed to be chearful: For there is nothing that deſtroys the Appetite, and confirms a Conſumption more than Grief and *What a Phyſician is to do in the Cure of it, when he is ſent for in time.*

Sadneſs. Let him alſo enjoy the advantage of an open and benign Air, which is very beneficial to the Nerves, and conſequently to the Appetite and Stomack. Let him likewiſe uſe Exerciſe every day, and rubbing of his Body even to the procuring of moderate Sweats (if his ſtrength will bear it) that the load of old diſpirited, and unprofitable Chyle, with which the Blood-Veſſels and Habit of the Body are ſtufft, may be ſweated out, to make more room for new and uſeful Chyle, and conſequently for the improvement of the Appetite in the Stomack.

Spirituous Liquors are to be avoided

But he muſt Religiouſly abſtain from the liberal uſe of Wine, and Spirituous Liquors, which are wont to put the Blood, which is before become too hot, into a greater flame. Let the Phyſician alſo take heed he does not preſcribe any Purges, or any Medicines whatſoever, to procure any other conſiderable Evacuation, which may create farther Expences to Nature, when ſhe is already weak. But if a Hectical heat, even in the leaſt degree be kindled in the ſolid Parts, he muſt preſently endeavour with all his Induſtry to quench this flame by the uſe of Aſſes Milk, a Milk Diet, and of ſuch Mineral Waters as are *Chalybeate*.

No conſiderable Evacuations are to be made.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of a Consumption proceeding from Apostemes *and large Ulcers.*

I Have always observed that *Apostemes*, and large Ulcers, let them happen to any part whatsoever of the Body (whether external or internal) if they continue long, and throw out much *Serum*, or wateriſh Matter, have at length rendred the Body of the Patient Consumptive, and that even to the degree of a Fatal Consumption; and I can say, I have taken notice that these kind of Ulcers do bring on a Consumption as well when they are in the Muscles of the Back, and in the Testicles, yea, in the Knee and the Foot, as when they are in the Kidneys, or Liver, or in the Lungs themselves. Besides that, I have often observed that a Consumption of the Lungs has come upon these large and old Ulcers. *Large Ulcers in any part may cause a Consumption.*

The cause of this Consumption without all question is the long and plentiful subſtraction of the Nutritious Juice continually flowing out of the Mass of Blood by the Ulcers; whereby the Blood, which remains in the Vessels being deprived of its Oily, Nutritious Juice, does grow sour, and contracts a Preternatural heat, and is thereupon rendred unfit for the Nouriſhment of the Body; whereupon a Feveriſh and Hectical heat not only is kindled in the Blood and Spirits, but also remains fixed in the Habit of the Body, and the solid Parts, together with a Thirſt, a *The reason of this Consumption.*

decay of Strength, want of Appetite, sickness of the Stomack, an *Atrophy* of the Parts, and at length a want of Sleep, Light-headedness, and the other signs of a Fever, until the sick Person, being brought into the state of a *Marasmus*, or consummate Consumption, does miserably end his days, though for the most part without a difficulty of Breathing, Cough, or any other *Pathognomonick* sign of a Consumption of the Lungs.

This Consumption may be easily cur'd, if the Ulcers are heal'd in time.

This Consumption (as we have observed of that in the foregoing Chapter) does easily admit of a Cure, if it be so that the Ulcers, which are the cause of it, can be timely cured by the internal help of Physick, and the external Applications of Surgery, that is, before the Patient is fallen into any degree of a *Marasmus*. But (alas!) the Patient too often in this case being deceived by the fair Promises and Encouragement of some ill Surgeons, does not send for the *Physician*, till such time as it is more proper to have the good Counsel of some *Divine* about the future state of his Soul, or the Advice of a *Lawyer* about making his Will.

Where the Patient is too far gone, the Physician should not undertake the Cure.

In which case it is convenient for a Prudent *Physician*, after he has foretold the Fatal Event of it, rather to take his leave of the Sick Person, than to deceive him, when he despairs of his Recovery, with the hopes of an impossible Cure.

What is to be done, when the Physician is sent for in time.

But if the *Physician* be sent for in time, before the Patient be too far gone in a Consumption, and Hectical, the Cure of the Ulcers is to be endeavoured as soon as may be, and to be pusht on with all speed by the internal help of the Physical Art. To which end a plentiful use of the *Decoction* of *Sarsa*, &c. is of great use, not only

only to give a ſoftneſs to the Blood, that the Blood being freed from its ſharpneſs and preternatural Heat, may be able more eaſily to aſſimilate to it ſelf the freſh Chyle, and to change it into its own Nature, and that the efflux and loſs of the Chyle by the Ulcers may be moderated, which does much promote the Cure of the Ulcers; for which reaſon without doubt theſe *Decoctions* are commonly called drying; but alſo to carry off that load of diſpirited, and unprofitable Juices, which lurk in the Habit of the Body, and in the Veſſels, by the pores of the Skin in ſweats, and inſenſible Breathings. It has been my Practice to uſe the following Decoction.

A Diet-drink to be uſed in this caſe.

Take *of the beſt Sarſaparilla ſliced ſix Ounces, China-roots two Ounces, Saſſafras Chips, red Saunders, ſhavings of Hartſhorn, of Ivory, of each half an Ounce, Raiſins of the Sun ſtoned a quarter of a Pound, Liquorice ſlic'd an Ounce, one Nutmeg ſlic'd. After they have been ſteep'd a convenient time in ſix quarts of Spring-water, boyl it with the Ingredients to three quarts, adding at the end of the Decoction* (if there be the leaſt ſuſpicion of any Miſchief in the Lungs from a Cough, or difficulty of Breathing) *the Leaves of Coltsfoot, Maidenhair, ſpotted Lungwort, Tunhoof, Fluellin, Flowers of great Daiſies, of each a handful; then ſtrain it,* and let the Patient drink plentifully of this Decoction for his ordinary Drink.

If the Ulcers are ſtubborn, Lime-water muſt be mix'd.

Yea, if the Ulcers are old, and hard to be cured, let the Sick Perſon alſo drink at Phyſical Hours ſix or eight Ounces of *Lime-water*, by the excellent Salt of which the ſharp and acid Particles of the Blood being precipitated, the whole Maſs becomes more mild, and thereupon does more eaſily embrace the new Chyle, and change

it

it into its own Nature, whereby the Flux of the Chyle to the ulcerated parts is rendred less, and consequently the Cure of the Ulcers by the Surgeon's Art is more quickly perform'd. For which reason this Drink is also thought to be drying. And here I shall add the Prescription for that *Lime-water* which I commonly use.

A Prescription for the making of a Lime-water.

Take *of the best Sarsaparilla slic'd six Ounces, Currans half a pound, after they have been steep'd for a convenient time in six quarts of Spring-water, boyl them till the Liquor comes to three quarts; then strain it. Then in this Decoction quench half a pound of Quick-Lime, and after it is clear'd by setling, and impregnated with the salt of the Lime, let it be poured off clear, and kept in Glass Bottles for use.*

Such Purges as are pretty strong must be given every fourth or fifth Night, unless there be a manifest Hectick heat.

Yea, if there be not a manifest Hectical Disposition, let the Patient during the use of these Decoctions be Purged every fourth or fifth day, and that not only with gentle Medicines, as a *Decoction of Senna with Manna, &c.* but also with such as are stronger, as with *half a Dram of Extractum Rudii, or a Dram of the lesser Pil. Cochiæ.* Yea, if the Patient bears Purging well, and it be necessary, he may ascend to the use of *Scammony*, and of *Rosin of Jalapp* it self, to which it is always convenient to add a Dose of *Calomelanos.* Which Medicine, by correcting and altering the disposition of the Blood, is in an extraordinary manner serviceable to the Cure of Ulcers. I have in my Practice used the following Prescription.

In the form of a Bolus.

Take *of Diagrydium*, or *Rosin of Jalapp sixteen Grains, Calomelanos five and twenty Grains, or half a Dram, Conserve of Damask-Roses, or Syrup of Buckthorn-berries a sufficient quantity:* Mix them up into a Bolus.

Or

Or let the Patient take a *Mercurial* Purge in the form of a Pouder in a Spoonful of Milk, observing the Rules which are common in a Purge. By which Medicine the load of dispirited, and unprofitable Chyle, which was retain'd in the Blood, and Habit of the Body, is in an extraordinary manner discharg'd by Stool, and thereupon the Cure of the Ulcers is hastened. *Or of a Pouder.*

Yea, if the strength of the Patient be firm, and no degree of a *Hectical* disposition has yet seized him, a *Mercurial Salivation* must be raised by the help not only of *Calomelanos*, but also (if it be necessary) of *Turbith Mineral* it self. Which in truth is the last Refuge, and a Powerful Remedy, and is also safe enough (if it be cautiously given) in the Cure of old and obstinate Ulcers. *If the strength and temper of the Patient allows it, Salivation.* *Which is the last, and most powerful Remedy.*

Here also internal Balsamick Medicines may be prescrib'd with advantage, such as the *Balsamick Syrup, Leucatella's Balsam, &c.* As for Example: Let the Patient take every Night, *Leucatella's Balsam, Conserve of red Roses, of each half a Dram, or two Scruples with three or four drops of Balsam of Peru.* Or a *spoonful of the Balsamick Syrup truly made,* twice or thrice a day, *either by it self, or dissolv'd in a draught of* Sarsa *Drink:* Or *half a Dram of Balsam of* Tolu *made up into Pills at Physical Hours, drinking a draught of the* Sarsa *Drink after it.* Or if there be no Feverish Heat, let him take *twice a day eight or ten drops of Natural Balsam mixt with a little Sugar-candy.* *Balsamick Medicines.*

But when the Ulcer comes to heal, there must be a great deal of care taken, lest a true Consumption of the Lungs follows in the room of a common Consumption from the subtraction and loss *Care must be taken, that a Consumption of the Lungs does not follow upon healing of the Ulcers.*

loss of the Chyle, which indeed does very often happen. For this passage, by which the Nutritious Juice uses to run off, being now stopt by the Surgeons and Physicians Art, if the Blood still remains dispirited, and does not recover its former Balsamick and Oily Nature, it is wont to grow more hot and sharp, and thereupon that sharp and hot Nutritious Juice (which was used before to be thrown out by the Ulcer) it usually comes now to cast off upon the substance of the Lungs, as being spungy, and apt to receive the Humours. Whereupon follows not only a stuffing of the Lungs, and upon that a difficulty of Breathing; but also a considerable swelling of the Glands, which do often enough happen in these parts, and upon that a dry and troublesome Cough, yea, a Heat and Inflammation, and thereupon a Fever, not only a Hectical one, but also a Putrid, or rather Inflammatory Fever, and at length an *Apostem*, and Ulcers, with a Thirst, and want of Appetite; all which do at last end in a fatal and confirm'd Consumption of the Lungs. And therefore as soon as ever these external and remote Ulcers begin to heal, the Physician ought to make what Observation he can, to find whether the least degree of a difficulty of Breathing, or any other sign of an Affection of the Lungs comes upon it. Yea, if the Appetite continues weak, or if but the least degree of a Preternatural Heat in the Habit of the Body does appear, which may give us the least occasion to suspect a Consumption of the Lungs, the first Attack and Progress of it ought to be prevented with all the Physician's Power, in the manner following. Let several Issues be made, the Head shaved, the use of the Balsamick Remedies before mentioned, and the *Sarsa* Drink, with

The Signs which threaten it must be attended to.

If they appear, what is to be done.

with the aforeſaid Vulnerary Herbs be continued; or for the farther temperating and altering of the Blood, let the Patient be put into a Milk Diet, and kept ſtrictly to it. For the ſame reaſon the *Chalybeate* Mineral Waters are here alſo of great uſe. Alſo the Phyſician muſt make all the haſt he can, and disburden the Lungs that are ſtufft, by Pectoral and Pulmonary *Apozems*, expectorating *Linctuſes*, and other Medicines of that Nature, which we ſhall afterwards deſcribe in the Book of a Conſumption of the Lungs, before the Tone of the Parts is injured, and a Feveriſh heat is brought on by the continual ſtagnation of hot and ſharp Juices.

Paſſions of the Mind, Cold, and violent Exerciſe are to be avoided.

Let the Patient alſo have a very great care to preſerve himſelf from Paſſions of his Mind, and Cold, and uſe no violent Exerciſes; let him alſo abſtain from the uſe of Wine, and Spirituous Liquors, which may make the motion of the Blood to and through the Lungs quicker than it ought to be, and kindle a Preternatural heat in the Blood.

What is to be done after the Ulcers are healed, when there is no ſuſpicion of the Lungs.

But if there be no ſuſpicion of the Lungs, when the Ulcer comes to be healed, let the Patient be enjoyn'd to be chearful, let him be plac'd in a benign and open Air, and eat plentifully of ſuch Food as affords a good Juice, but yet is mild, and free from a ſharpneſs; and laſtly, let him uſe moderate Exerciſe, by the uſe of all which the Blood may as ſoon as is poſſible recover its former Balſamick, Temperate, and Oily Nature, and the Appetite of the Stomack may be increaſed.

By which Method we may not only prevent a Conſumption that is coming, but alſo cure one that is begun, when it proceeds from external Ulcers, as I have before diſcours'd more largely

in

in the former Chapters of other Original Consumptions caused by the loss and want of the Nutritious Juice.

An History.

Mr. *Wheatley*'s Wife near St. *Sepulchres* in *London*, about Fifty Years old, having been tormented for the space of two Years with an intolerable pain of her Loins, first from an Inflammation, and then an Apostеme of the Muscles of the Loins following upon the Inflammation, was in progress of time by the uninterrupted pain racking her both Night and Day, and by the continual loss of the Nutritious Juice discharging it self daily and plentifully into this Common-shore, put into a Fever, and at length brought into a Consumption, and that even to the degree of a *Marasmus*, with an intolerable Thirst, a continual Weakness, want of Appetite, and want of Rest, yet without any sign of a Consumption of the Lungs; so that the poor Woman being always confin'd to her Bed, lingred a long time, crying out dreadfully, as if she were ready to expire presently. By reason of her mean Circumstances she did not ask the Advice of a Physician, but thinking her Distemper to be the Stone in the Kidneys, she miserably tormented her self every day with I know not what Medicines to break and dissolve the Stone, such as every sorry Woman, that came to see her, did with assurance warrant should do her good. But I being at length desired by the most Ingenious Dr. *Tyson* to go and see her, and together with him observing the parts of the Loins to be swell'd, and to resist a Pressure, and perceiving the fluctuation of purulent

rulent Matter under our fingers, when we preſt it, (though it lay ſomewhat deep by reaſon of the thickneſs of the Muſcles, and of the Skin) with the conſent of my moſt worthy Colleague, I ordered that after the application of a Cauſtick, the Tumour ſhould be opened in a convenient place: Which was no ſooner done, but a great quantity, firſt of clear then purulent Matter, and a great Number of little Bags filled with a very clear Water, at leaſt Five Hundred, guſht out with a great force. We brought away for three Weeks, or more, taking out the Tent every day, a great deal of Matter, and ſmall Bags filled with Water. From the firſt opening of the *Apoſtem* her pains were very much abated, and by the moderate uſe of Syrup of *Meconium*, ſhe got convenient Reſt; and by the help of Surgery outwardly adminiſtred, and the continual uſe of a Decoction of *Sarſa* given inwardly for her ordinary Drink, the Ulcer within the ſpace of a Year and half (which we did deſignedly keep open ſo long with a Silver Tent that was hollow quite thorough) was at length perfectly healed; her Hectick Fever and Thirſt went off, her Strength increaſed, her Appetite returned, and ſhe was plainly freed from the ſtate of a *Maraſmus*; and being ſent into the Country Air, ſuch as was open and benign, and put into a Milk Diet, ſhe grew fleſhy within ſix Weeks, and recovered without any ſign of a Conſumption; and being yet alive after Eight Years which are ſince paſt, enjoys her Health very well. Several Hiſtories of this Nature I do deſignedly omit for Brevity's ſake.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of a Consumption happening to Nurses from the giving of Suck beyond what their Strength will allow.

What the Milk is.

MILK is nothing but the Nutritious Juice continually separated from the Mass of Blood by the Glandules of the Breasts. And therefore if by reason of the want of an Appetite there be more Nutritious Juice suckt out of the Blood through the Breasts for a long time, than is supplyed to the Mass of Blood by the new Chyle from the Lacteal Vessels, it is impossible but an impoverishment of the Blood should follow, and thereupon an *Atrophy* of the Body (seeing it is depriv'd of due Nourishment) and consequently an Hectical heat in the Blood, Spirits, and Habit of the Body, which is another kind of Original Consumption proceeding from the substraction of the Nutritious Juice; of which we shall now treat.

When, and how the giving of Suck does cause a Consumption.

Yet a Consumptive disposition is sometimes cured by giving of Suck.

Yet I must ingeniously declare, that I have sometimes observed a Consumptive Disposition cured by giving of Suck, and that not only in my most dear Wife, but also in very many other Women. As for Example: My Neighbour Mrs. *Wilson*, who at other times is Consumptive, and goes up and down like a Ghost, does always grow fat all the time she gives Suck. Yea, Mrs. *Thompson* upon *Snow-Hill* did manifestly fall into a fatal Consumption in the Habit of

of her Body, and upon that into a Consumption of her Lungs from the sudden weaning of her Child. But at the same time it is as obvious to our Observation, that all such Nurses as grow fat in this manner from giving of Suck, have a good Stomack, yea, that during the time of their giving of Suck their Appetite is very much increased, and from thence it is very easie to give an Account for this appearance; to wit, that the Appetite being increased by the continual drawing off of the Nutritious Juice by the Child's Sucking, there is room made for a greater quantity of new and oily Chyle, by which the Blood is every day enrich'd, which does conduce more to the Cure of a Consumptive Disposition than all the Medicines in the World. But if the Appetite during the time of giving Suck grows languid, and thereupon by reason of the little Food that is taken in, a less quantity of new Juice is supplyed to the Blood, than is carried off by the Breasts, a Hectical Disposition in the Blood and Spirits must inevitably follow; and an *Atrophy*, or Consumption in the Habit of the Body, and that for the Reasons which we have just now given.

But such Nurses have always a good Stomack.

The first thing that presages the coming of this Consumption, is a want of Appetite; and therefore I give this Caution to all Nurses, that when they find their Appetite to abate for some time, they forthwith wean their Children. The second sign is a weakness and faintness of the Spirits, proceeding from a dispirited and impoverisht state of the Blood. A third sign is an *Hypochondriacal* Oppression, and frequent Fits of the Mother, and Choakings. Which appearance does not proceed from the sucking of the Child, drawing the Vapours upward (as is commonly

The presaging signs of this Consumption.

monly thought) but a too plentiful subſtraction, and too great an expence of the Nutritious Juice. By which means the Spirits themſelves become in the ſame manner as the Blood, poor and windy, by reaſon they have loſt their Natural and Original Vigour, whereupon there follows an Obſtruction, and this inordinate and ungovernable motion of the Spirits in the Nerves and Fibres of the Muſcles, and upon that Oppreſſions, and Suffocative, and Convulſive Contractions of ſome Parts, commonly called *Hypochondriacal* and *Hyſterical.*

This Conſumption often terminates in a Conſumption of the Lungs.

Theſe preſaging Symptoms in the Progreſs of the Diſtemper have an *Atrophy*, and a Hectical heat following them, (which is not ſtrange) and do often terminate in a Conſumption of the Lungs, together with a Cough, ſhortneſs of Breath, *&c.* Nevertheleſs this Conſumption is Originally in the Habit of the Body, and that from too great an expence of the Nutritious Juice. This Conſumption, when it once comes to the degree of a *Maraſmus*, and to terminate in a Conſumption of the Lungs, proves plainly fatal and incurable. But in the beginning it is eaſily cured; firſt, by the ſpeedy weaning of the Child, whereby the cauſe, which diſpos'd the Perſon to it, is removed. Secondly, by giving the Patient plentiful Nouriſhment of ſuch Food as affords a good Juice. Thirdly, by exciting and reſtoring the Appetite by chearfulneſs of Mind, the enjoyment of a benign and open Air, by moderate Exerciſe, *&c.* Yea, and laſtly, if her Hectical Diſpoſition requires it, the Sick Woman muſt be put upon the uſe of a Milk Diet, or of the *Chalybeate* Waters. But let her abſtain from Wine, and all Evacuations, but what are neceſſary, as we have already hinted

And is then fatal.

The Method of Cure.

A Caution.

in

in the Cure of a Conſumption proceeding from other Evacuations.

A Hiſtory.

The Wife of Mr. *Bird* my very good Friend, who lives in *Fetter-Lane*, being about three and thirty Years old, gave Suck to a luſty Boy for the ſpace of a Year, or more. But after ſhe had given Suck for four Months ſhe loſt her Stomack, and took very little Nouriſhment at any time, and thereupon her Strength declin'd, and ſhe was troubled with Choakings, or *Hyſterical* Paſſions, but without an *Atrophy*, or Cough, or any other Diſtemper. Being ſufficiently directed by theſe things, (I going at that time by chance to ſee her) adviſed her to wean her Child without any delay, leſt ſhe ſhould fall into a Conſumption: But ſhe however perſiſting in the giving of her Child Suck, when ſhe had loſt her Stomack, did at length fall into a Conſumption or *Atrophy* of her Body, but without a Cough, or any remarkable Fever. But yet ſhe very much, and almoſt continually complain'd of a dryneſs, and very troubleſom heat about the Tonſils and Palate of her Mouth, and the Parts which ſerve for ſwallowing (the ſame that I obſerved to happen to Mrs. *Thompſon*, and to almoſt all Women that have a Conſumption from giving of Suck.) Which appearance to me ſeemed to ariſe from the impoveriſht and heated ſtate of the Blood, by reaſon of too great an expence of the Milk. At length, though too late, following my Advice, ſhe weaned her Child, and made uſe of a Milk Diet, and the *Chalybeate Waters*, with very much benefit. But her Appetite not being reſtored by theſe means (as not

being made use of in time) she could not make up a sufficient quantity of new Chyle to recruit the Mass of Blood; and thereupon loathing all sorts of Medicines, at length (though she had the Advice of very good Physicians) falling into a Consumption of her Lungs, with a Cough, shortness of Breath, and Hectick Fever, she dyed plainly choak'd.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Of a Conſumption from a Bloody-flux, and from a Looſeneſs.

MANY times in a Scorbutical Diſpoſition of the Body, the Blood grows ſharp to that degree, that being diſturbed upon every little occaſion, it cannot aſſimilate the new Chyle to it ſelf; whereby it comes to paſs that it is thrown out by the Glands of the Inteſtines in a continual flux like a ſtream. Which Chyle, if it is benign, and more mild, forms a Diſtemper in the manner of a Looſeneſs; but if it be ſharp, and of a Malignant Nature, produces one in the form of a Bloody-flux. By this continual efflux of the Chyle, the Blood is much impoveriſht, and grows hot, ſo that although the Bloody-flux, or Looſeneſs be overcome by the uſe of *Opiates* and binding Medicines, (ſuch as are particularly to be deſcribed in a Chapter of a Bloody-flux, and Looſeneſs) yet a Hectical heat ſtill remains in the Blood, together with an *Atrophy*, and dryneſs of the Skin, ariſing from the impoveriſht and diſpirited ſtate of the Blood: As it happened to mine only, and moſt beloved Son, and to very many others. Which Conſumption does very often terminate in a Conſumption of the Lungs. But the way to prevent it is (after the Looſeneſs and Bloody-flux are cured by proper Medicines) by a long uſe of a Milk Diet, the *Peruvian Bark*, the Mineral

A ſharpneſs of the Blood often ariſes from the Scurvy.

Which in a lower degree cauſes a Looſeneſs: In a higher a Bloody-flux.

Which cauſe a Hectick heat, &c.

And this Conſumption often terminates in a Conſumption of the Lungs.

Waters, which are *Chalybeate*, and of the white Decoction for ordinary Drink. This Conſumption often happens to Children that breed their Teeth. But by the long uſe of the white Drink, of Pearl Juleps, and binding Medicines mixt with ſome little Opiate, it is eaſily cured.

It often happens to Children in breeding of their Teeth.

Hiſtory 1.

Mr. *Tindal*'s only Daughter, a very fine Young Woman, but *Scorbutical*, and ſomething *Melancholick*, about Eighteen Years of Age, upon the ſuppreſſion of her Monthly Courſes, fell into a Colliquative Looſeneſs, with Stools that came away like Water, which by degrees brought her in the ſpace of a Year into an Univerſal *Atrophy*, even to the degree of a *Maraſmus*, but without any ſenſible Fever, or Cough, or ſhortneſs of Breath, or any other ſign of any Diſtemper of the Lungs; ſo that ſhe was not at all taken for a Conſumptive Body by the Phyſician under whoſe care ſhe was before I was concern'd. Being called to go and ſee her, as one that had only a Looſeneſs, when ſhe was now by reaſon of her Weakneſs almoſt always confin'd to her Bed, I found her worn away clearly with a Conſumption, even to a *Maraſmus*, and that I plainly told her Friends, as my Opinion, although her Lungs did as yet ſeem ſound, neither was there any ſign of a Hectick Fever. But when this expenſive Looſeneſs, which the former Phyſician for want either of skill or care had ſuffered to run on ſo long, came once to be ſtopt by a due government, and the uſe of Efficacious Medicines, preſently a Hectick Flame began to be kindled in the Habit of her Body, and her Lungs alſo began to be affected with a Cough,

Cough, that was almoſt perpetual, and a ſhortneſs of Breath, which Symptoms being at length followed by Colliquative Sweats, a ſwelling of the Legs, and other ſigns of a Fatal Conſumption of the Lungs, ſoon brought the fair Virgin amidſt the Lamentation of her Friends to the laſt period of her Life. Two things were here particularly worthy of a Remark: Firſt, that the more her Looſeneſs was ſtopt, ſo much the more always were her Lungs preſently affected. And Secondly, that although this Conſumption had prevailed upon her almoſt for the ſpace of a Year, even to a *Maraſmus*, before the Lungs did ſeem to be in the leaſt touch'd, yet in the Body, when it came to be opened after 'twas dead, the Lungs appeared full of little ſwellings here and there, and that not only ſuch as were crude and hard, but alſo ſome that were ripened into Apoſtemes.

Hiſtory 2.

My only Son, before he was Eight Years old, whilſt I was out of Town, was taken with a moſt ſevere Bloody-flux, by which he ſeemed to be brought into a Conſumption, even to a *Maraſmus*, before I returned. But after the Bloody-flux was plainly overcome by the diligent uſe of all ſorts of convenient Remedies, and his Body, with reſpect to his Stools, was reduced to its Natural ſtate, there ſtill remained a Hectical heat, a dryneſs of his Skin, a quick Pulſe, with other ſigns of a Hectical heat. Moreover his Appetite failed him very much, a dry Cough came upon him, and a thickneſs of Hearing, with a dulneſs of his Brain. But yet with the

choice of a wholſom Air, the uſe of a Milk Diet, and afterwards of the *Peruvian Bark*, and of a Plentiful Nouriſhment, which afforded a good Juice, he recovered a good Colour, and his Fleſh within the ſpace of three or four Months, without any other inconvenience but only that he has been ever ſince very ſubject to an Aſthmatical Cough upon the leaſt occaſion.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of a Conſumption from a Diabetes, *or too great a Flux of Urine.*

A *Diabetes* is commonly called a Dropſie of the Chamber-pot, and it is a continual Flux of the Nutritious Juice running down through the Kidneys, which for the moſt part happens to thoſe that are very thoughtful, and to ſuch as are drinkers of *French* Wines, and *Diuretick* Liquors. Whereupon the Urine (by reaſon of the great quantity of new Chyle which flows to it, and mixes it ſelf with it) being deprived of its Saltneſs, becomes ſweet, even like Honey. By this continual efflux of the Chyle the Blood is impoveriſht, and thereupon the Strength of the Patient grows extreamly languid. By the burning Flame of the Blood a Preternatural Heat is kindled in the ſolid Parts, by which the Nerves are weakned, and upon that Convulſions, a Giddineſs, and other Affections of the Nerves do follow, and at length the Muſcular Parts being deprived of their Nutritious Juice, do fall into an *Atrophy*, or Conſumption: As it happened to Mr. *Pettit*'s Son, and to Mrs. *Wells*, and very many others. The way of Curing this Conſumption is by a long uſe of a Milk Diet, *Conſerve of red Roſes*, *Bole Armenack*, *Gum Arabick*, *Gum Tragacanth*, &c. by drinking the *Bath* or *Iſlington* Waters, or any other Mineral Water, that is *Chalybeate*, for a long

What a Diabetes *is.*

The Cauſes of it.

A Diabetes *cauſing a poorneſs of the Blood, and a Hectical heat, produces a Conſumption.*

The Method of Cure.

long time. But the Patient muſt abſtain from Wine, eſpecially *French* Wine, he muſt not Bleed, nor uſe any Purging Medicines, except *Rhubarb*, *Myrobalanes*, and other ſuch like gentle things, which have alſo ſome ſtyptick and binding Particles, of the Vertue of which in Curing this Diſtemper, I ſhall preſently give a very Remarkable Hiſtory.

Hiſtory 1.

Mr. *Pettit*'s Son, upon a *Diabetes*, which they had a long time neglected the Cure of, was not only frequently troubled with Fits of the Falling-Sickneſs, and a ſwimming in his Head, but alſo in the Progreſs of the Diſtemper became very Conſumptive. But with the uſe of *Tunbridge* Waters, a Milk Diet, and Aſtringent Electuaries, he was perfectly recovered, and is now after Ten Years in perfect Health.

Hiſtory 2.

Mr. *Pettit* himſelf, the Father of the Patient I juſt now mentioned, living in *Long-Lane*, being then about Seventy Years old, who was brought by a *Diabetes* into a high Hectick Fever, and to the utmoſt degree of a *Maraſmus*, and kept his Bed for three Weeks, got well off his *Diabetes* and Fever, and at length his Conſumption too by the uſe of a Milk Diet, which he very ſtrictly obſerved, and of Aſtringent Juleps and Electuaries, and is now, as far as I know, after five Years ſtill living.

Hiſtory

History 3.

Mr. *Wheeler*, living in *Prince's-Street*, though he has now three Girles living, and well, yet he lost all his Sons, who were taken off in their first Infancy (to wit, as soon as they began to breed their Teeth) with a Consumption from a *Diabetes*. As for the Name of the Distemper, that he was ignorant of, but when he observed that he lost all his Sons in the same manner, and that they were extreamly emaciated with a continual and unquenchable Thirst, and a strange flooding of Urine, he at length askt my Advice for his fourth, who at that time was breeding of his Teeth. And he began, just like the three former that were dead, to be very thirsty, and to make Water at the same immoderate rate, that they had done, whereby his Flesh was become very lank, and a Hectical heat began to arise. So being confirmed in my Opinion by so demonstrative an Argument as the sweetness of his Urine, being like Honey, I pronounced it a Consumption from a *Diebetes*, caused by the breeding of his Teeth; which could not possibly admit of a perfect Cure till the Child had bred all his Teeth. Within the space of a Month or two the poor Infant seemed to have a *Hippocratical* Face, and to be reduced to that degree of a Consumption, as to be come to the last Scene of his Tragedy, for that he labour'd under a Colliquation as well by a Looseness as a *Diabetes*, though he had no Cough, nor any other Affection of his Lungs. However for the present relief of the Symptoms, I order'd a Milk Diet to be strictly observed, and an Astringent Electuary, and gave Orders that for his Thirst he

should

should drink nothing but Milk mixt with *Islington* Waters all the Summer. By which means his Thirst and the Flux of his Urine seemed to be somewhat abated, and his Flesh to be recovered. But the Distemper returning by uncertain intervals with a remarkable Colliquation, and expence of the Humours, as well by Stool as by the Urinary Parts, to wit, as often as he bred any new Teeth, according to the Prognostick which I at first made; at length I order'd him vj, vij, or viij Grains of *Rhubarb* to be taken every Morning, and a little *Diascordium* at Night when he went to sleep. To the constant use of which Remedies I left the Child, and he persisted in the use of them for two Years at least, that was till all his Teeth were cut; by which means he continually gathered Strength and Flesh, and grew better every day, though he was in some measure troubled with a Thirst, and too great a Flux of Urine, till the time that he had got all his Teeth. But now being four Years old, he enjoys his perfect Health, and is a lusty Boy, as if he had never been troubled with any Distemper.

CHAP.

CHAP IX.

Of a Conſumption cauſed by Salivation, or Spitting.

Salivation is either Natural, or procur'd by Art; and both of them is a plentiful Separation of the Nutritious Juice by the Glands, which ſupply the Spittle, upon which ſecretion, and expence of the Nutritious Juice, for the Reaſons I have given in the foregoing Chapters, after a long courſe of *Salivation*, the Blood becomes ſharp, and grows hot, and the *Muſcular* Parts being deprived of their due Nouriſhment, do fall into an *Atrophy*, or Conſumption. *What a Salivation is.* *How it cauſes a Conſumption.*

A Natural *Salivation*, or Spitting, for the moſt part happens to thoſe that have the Scurvy, and that becauſe the Blood by reaſon of its Acrimony is not able to aſſimilate the new *Chyle*, and reduce it to its own Nature, and therefore as it circulates continually, throws it off by the Glands, which ſupply the Spittle. From whence it comes to paſs that even ſilly Women know, that Spitting too much inclines Men to a Conſumption; for which reaſon they do uſe well to preſcribe the ſwallowing of the Spittle to prevent a Conſumption: Whereby not only the Progreſs of the *Salivation* is hindred (for Spitting does by a certain continual drawing as it were ſuck the Glands, which afford the Spittle, and put them upon a new ſeparation of it) but alſo the *Chyle*, which is ſeparated by the Salivatory *Where a Natural Salivation happens.*

tory ducts to no purpose, is restored to Nature to make up the loss which the Mass of Blood sustains.

When a Consumptive disposition is to be expelled from an Artificial Salivation.

It is also as certainly true, that every *Salivation* procured by Art, that is, raised with *Mercurial* Medicines, (if it continues long) does bring a *Hectical* and Consumptive Disposition.

How the Patient is to be managed in this case.

In which case (the *Salivation* being ended) the Patient must be put into a Milk Diet for a long time, by which the sharpness of the Blood may be corrected, and a Consumptive Disposition may be prevented. After that he must be sent into an open and benign Air, and be nourisht with the plentiful use of such Food as affords good Juice; and besides all this (if it be necessary) he must drink the *Chalybeate* Waters.

An Observation of a Consumption from an Artificial Salivation.

I met with a very Remarkable Instance of this kind of Consumption in Mr. *Daulton* an Apothecary's Daughter, who from a *Salivation*, that was raised with *Mercury* to Cure the *Kings-Evil*, fell as soon as ever the *Salivation* was ended, into a fatal Consumption, and by reason of the great expence of the Humours caused by her spitting, she could never be restored, either by the help of the Air, or by a Milk Diet, or any other Art, but being gradually wasted away with a Consumption, after a Month or two from the end of the *Salivation*, she dyed without any sign of a Consumption of the Lungs.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of a Conſumption proceeding from a Dropſie.

A *Dropſie* is cauſed by a Rupture of the *Lymphaducts*, or of the *Chyliferous* Veſſels, whereby the Nutritious Juice (which is Naturally conveyed by theſe Veſſels as it were in certain continual Streams into the Maſs of Blood in the form either of a *Lympha*, or of *Chyle*, in order to recruit it) does now continually flow out of thoſe Veſſels, and diſtills into the cavity of the Belly and Breaſt, or into the Limbs themſelves, and Habit of the Body. By which means the Blood being deprived of its uſual recruits of *Chyle*, or *Lympha*, or of both, is very much impoveriſht, and thereupon grows ſharp and hot; upon which conſideration no one has reaſon to think it ſtrange that a Fever does ariſe with a Drought, and other *Symptoms* of that kind, as alſo a Conſumption, or *Atrophy* of the Parts, with a great Weakneſs following upon it by reaſon of the want of freſh Nutritious Juice; and finally, a difficulty of Breathing, by reaſon of the diſtention and fulneſs of the Muſcles, that ſerve for Reſpiration, from the Dropſical Humour which is contained within them.

The cauſe of a Dropſie the breaking of the Lymphatick, or Chyliferous Veſſels.

How it cauſes a Conſumption.

The moſt uſual cauſe of the breaking of theſe Veſſels, is the ſwelling of the Glands of the Belly, or of the Breaſt, or Limbs, through which, or juſt by which theſe Veſſels have their courſe,

The uſual cauſe of their rupture.

course, and by which they are propt. By which swellings those tender Vessels being streightned and compress't, they cannot give a free passage either to the *Lympha*, or the *Chyle*, and thereupon these Vessels being distended beyond their Natural *Tone* by the continual flowing in of fresh Liquor, that has its tendency to the parts of the Vessels, that are compress't, and does press on behind the Liquor, which goes before it, and stops at the compressure, are at length broken. This Distemper is very hard to be cured, neither indeed is there any possibility of doing it without healing and closing the Breaches in the *Lympheducts*, or *Lacteal* Vessels, and consequently taking down the swelling of the Glands, which causes the rupture of the small Vessels by compressing them. Therefore in this case the Indications of Cure are these which follow.

The Indications of Cure.

1. To evacuate the extravasated Humours.

First, to bring down and evacuate that load of the Nutritious Juice that is extravasated, with Cathartick Medicines, that purge off Water, as *Rosin of Jalap*, *Gum Gottæ*, and others of that sort, which are more particularly to be specified in the Chapter of a *Dropsie*; as also by *Diureticks*, as *Salt of Amber*, *Wood Lice*, &c.

2. To open the Obstructions.

Secondly, to open the Obstructions of the swell'd Glands, and to dissolve their swellings, which cause the Obstruction of the Chyle, and upon that to restore and strengthen the Tone of the Parts that were swell'd, by a long continued use of *Chalybeates*. Which being done, the Sick Person must be plentifully Nourisht with Food that affords good Juice, and at length be sent into a free and benign Air, and drink the *Chalybeate* Waters, not only for the farther temperating of the heat and sharpness of the Blood, but also in order to the perfect opening of the Obstru-

Obſtructions of the Glands. But in this caſe we muſt carefully abſtain from a Milk Diet, becauſe it does ſtuff the Glands, that are already obſtructed, more, and conſequently promote the cauſe which diſpoſes the Patient to this Diſtemper.

A Hiſtory.

The Son of *Thomas Lechmere*, Eſq; being about two Years, and breeding of his Teeth, fell into an Inflammation of his Lungs upon taking of cold, and was treated very ill by an Apothecary, who had omitted Bleeding, and other things, that were very requiſite to a true and skilful Method of Cure. But at length I and my Famous Colleague Dr. *Croon*, though we were called in late, recovered him in ſome meaſure, by taking away ſome Blood, and the application of Bliſters, and Liniments, that were convenient for his Breaſt, as alſo by giving inwardly ſuch Medicines as were proper for his Lungs: But yet he continued ſickly with a Cough and difficulty of Breathing, for the ſpace of a Twelve Month at leaſt, from which time the poor Child began to be ſeized with a Hectick Fever, which intermitted every day, which although it was ſeveral times taken off with the *Peruvian Bark*, yet ſoon return'd again, and indeed came upon him by uncertain intervals for a whole Year, even to his dying day. But at the very beginning of the Fever his Belly began to be diſtended with a Dropſical ſwelling, which increaſed ſtrangely every day; his Cough and ſhortneſs of Breath at the ſame time growing worſe: All which Symptoms were at length accompanied with an *Atrophy* of the Parts, even to

the degree of a *Marasmus*. But yet when his Body was a perfect *Skeleton*, and the *Dropsie* at a high Tide (which was very remarkable) he had a brisk and healthful look, and a lovely Countenance, without the least Tincture of a Yellowness, and a good, or rather greedy Appetite, and that to the very day he dyed. From whence I did rightly conjecture, and always told his Friends, as my Opinion, that his Dropsie was truly Chylous, caused by the Chyle flowing into the cavity of the Belly by the Lacteal Vessels, which were broke by some Accident, and that the Consumption which accompanied it was not a true Consumption of the Lungs, but such as proceeded merely from an inanition, that is, the draining of the due Nutritious Juice out of the Lacteal Vessels, upon some rupture that had been made in them; which appeared very plainly from the Event. For in Tapping of the Child's Belly, whilst he was yet alive, we took out several Pints of Milky Chyle, and very sweet, such as is found in the Duct it self, which conveys the Chyle. But when we opened the Body after he was dead, we found for all the difficulty of Breathing, and long Cough he had had, the Lungs themselves sound, without any Distemper, but only that in the hinder part near the Wind-Pipe there appeared a great many Glands, and those pretty large and hard, which made a hard and very considerable pressure upon the Chyle-duct it self, almost in that Part where it arrives at the *Subclavian Vein*; and they were of so great a weight and bulk, that it seemed very difficult, if not plainly impossible for the Chyle to pass into the Blood by reason of the pressure they had made upon the Duct, which had straightned it, as if it had been tied with

with a ſtring. And thereupon without doubt it came to paſs that the tender and thin Lacteal Veſſels which are in the Belly (the Chyle continually preſſing, and not finding a free paſſage above by the Chyle-duct) being diſtended beyond their Tone, did at length break, and ſo threw the Chyle, which was deſign'd for the reparation of the Blood, as it were in a continued ſtream into the cavity of the Belly. From what I have now ſaid, it is plain almoſt to a demonſtration, firſt, that theſe *Tubercles*, or tumify'd Glands of the Lungs did at firſt proceed from the ill Method of Curing the Inflammation of his Lungs; that is, for want of timely Bleeding and Expectoration. Secondly, that as the troubleſome and dry Cough was cauſed by the conſtriction of the Veſſels of the Lungs, which convey the Air, by theſe ſwellings, ſo the difficulty of Breathing proceeded from the preſſure of the extravaſated Chyle below the Midriff. Thirdly, that this Conſumption was not a true Conſumption of the Lungs; becauſe tho' there were *Tubercles* or Swellings in the Lungs, yet they were not like *Apoſtemes*, nor Ulcerated. But this deſperate Conſumption did really proceed from that *Chylous* Dropſie, upon which that Nutritious Juice, which ought to have been employ'd for the reparation of the Blood, and the Nutrition of the Parts, was continually ſubſtracted, and carried another way. Fourthly, that this *Dropſie* did proceed from a rupture of the ſmall Lacteal Veſſels thatare in the Belly; and laſtly, that this rupture of the ſmall Lacteal Veſſels was cauſed by that continual preſſure, which the ſwellings in the Lungs had made upon the upper part of the Chyle-duct.

CHAP. XI.

Of a Conſumption cauſed by profuſe Sweats.

Profuſe and long ſweats often turn Colliquative.

SUch Sweats as are profuſe, and laſt long, do very often become colliquative, that is, they carry off a great quantity of the Nutritious Particles, as if they were melted, and more fluid than ordinary: For by theſe Sweats not only the load of old, diſpirited, and unprofitable Chyle, but alſo a great quantity of that Chyle, which is freſh and Oily, is readily caſt out by the pores of the Skin, by reaſon the Blood cannot aſſimilate it from its own too great and Scorbutical ſharpneſs, which it had contracted by degrees. From whence it comes to paſs by reaſon of the continual impoveriſhment of the Blood, that not only the Maſs of that becomes ſharp, and grows hot with a Feveriſh and Hectick flame; but alſo the ſolid Parts of the Body being at the ſame time deprived by this means of their requiſite Nouriſhment, do by degrees fall into an *Atrophy*, and perfectly waſt.

And from hence a Conſumption ariſes.

Colliquative Sweats attend every Conſumption when deplorable.

This Colliquative Sweat, as it accompanies every Conſumption of the Lungs in the deplorable ſtate, and higheſt degrees of it, that is, when it is now haſtening to a faral period; ſo it is found in the lamentable ſtate of every Diſtemper, and the ſudden ruin of Nature always follows it: And therefore theſe Dews, or Colliquative and Oily Sweats are commonly called clammy Death-ſweats. Some-

Sometimes also, though seldom, I have observed in a Scorbutical Disposition that this kind of Colliquative Sweat has the place of an Original Distemper, by the excess of which I have seen the whole Body brought into a Hectick and Consumptive state in a few Weeks: Which comes to pass, because the Mass of Blood is by these profuse Sweats continuing long, reduced to an impoverisht state, and rendred unfit for Nourishment: Upon which there necessarily follows a Hectick heat, and an *Atrophy* of the Parts, with a great Weakness, and other usual Symptoms of a Consumption in the Habit of the Body.

In the Scurvy Colliquative Sweats the Original of an Atrophy.

I have a mind to add here to the end of this Chapter an Instance or two of this Nature, by the relating of which, the cure of this Consumption will be shewn so far as I have observed, and am able to give an Account of it.

History I.

Mr. *Luffe*, a *Presbyter*, being about *Sixty Years Old* (who was also the Father of Dr. *Luffe*, a Famous Professor of Physick at *Oxford*) a Man that had for many Years past been Scorbutical, and Melancholick, was frequently subject to a Giddiness, Palpitation of the Heart, and many other Affections of his Brain and Nerves. But above all he was wont to complain of Colliquative Sweats, that followed him continually both Night and Day, and that as well in the Winter as the Summer time. From whence it came to pass, that not only he was very subject to take cold, upon which he always felt great pains in his Nervous Parts, but also his whole Body wasted so, that he was justly to be reckoned in the number of those that were in a Consumption.

However with Issues made between his Shoulders, and the use of a Diet-drink made with Antiscorbutick Ingredients steep'd in Ale for his ordinary Drink, and especially the long use of the Mineral Waters, both the *Chalybeate* and Purging, which he took as well in the Winter as the Summer, he was perfectly freed not only from those other Distempers which affected his Nerves, but also from these Colliquative Sweats: By which means it came to pass, that he lived several Years in the latter end of his Old Age with a strong Habit of Body, an uninterrupted Health, a chearful Mind, a fresh and brisk Look, as if he began to grow Young again.

History 2.

The Wife of one Mr. *Clapton*, who lived in *Lothbury*, being about Forty Years old, a Woman that had been for many Years very Scorbutical, and Asthmatical, a Month after a Lying in, fell in the Spring-time into most violent pains a little above the Groin. To whom besides the outward application of an Anodyne Liniment, I gave a Draught, that might put her into a breathing sweat, Of *Cardans-water*, *Treacle-water*, *Venice-Treacle*, *and the Syrup of Meconium*; upon which it happen'd that she fell and dissolv'd into most profuse and very stinking Sweats, which though they took some of the Bed-cloaths off from her by degrees, did nevertheless continue for a fortnight or more, with an extraordinary decay of her Strength, and a pining Consumtion of her Body. Which when I observed, I forthwith prescrib'd such Electuaries and temperate Juleps as were binding, and proper to stop the pores of the Skin, and other things of that Nature;

Nature; whereupon her Sweats presently decreas'd, but although the pores of the Skin were then stopt by Art, yet the new Chyle, which by reason of the Acrimony that remain'd in the Blood, was not so well assimilated and united to that Mass which remain'd, being mixt with it, the fresh Nutritious Juice attempted to find out a new way, and to discharge it self by Stool, and so in the room of her Colliquative Sweats there succeeded a Looseness that was as Colliquative as they were, together with griping pains, the Habit of her Body every day running farther into a Consumption.

But this Door being in like manner barricadoed with the use of Opiates and Emplastick Medicines, the Nutritious Juice found out another by the Kidneys, whereupon the poor Woman fell into a *Diabetes*, which still promoted her Consumption, almost to the degree of a *Marasmus*.

But when the *Diabetes* was overcome with the use of *Gum Arabick*, *Astringent Electuaries*, *&c.* at length her profuse and colliquative Sweats return'd again. And therefore I resolv'd to send this Miserable and Consumptive Woman into the fresh and open Air at *Hampstead*, (the time of the Year encouraging me, it being the Spring) by which change of Air (the pores of the Skin being now suddenly stopt) the Distemper was turn'd into an extraordinary Spitting for Twenty days or more, her Consumptive Disposition still remaining, or rather increasing; but with the plentiful use of a Milk Diet, and the benefit of the open Air, the Mass of Blood being softned by little and little, and its Acrimony corrected, the colliquation also of the Nutritious Juice was by degrees overcome; and thereupon being freed not only from her Spitting, but also from the Con-

sumptive dispostion it self, she improv'd every day in her Flesh and Appetite, till she had perfectly recovered them: A large *Apostem* at length gathering upon her Groin, where the pain first seized her, which was opened and cured by a Surgeon. And by this means the Woman lived, and was well for Ten Years, or more, though she afterwards dyed of an *Asthma*.

History 3.

Mr. *Fortescue*, a Man about Sixty Years old, who had been Scorbutical for many Years before, and something Asthmatical, was for three or four Summers troubled with a continual heat and burning of his Loins and Limbs. Whereby it came to pass, that he was plainly exhausted, and brought almost into the state of a *Marasmus* by profuse and colliquative Sweats, which followed him more especially when he was in Bed. But in the Winter time he was well, being in a manner freed as well from his Heat as from his Sweats, tho' he never mended his very thin, *Hippocratical* look. But this Summer 1688, the burning in his Loins, and his profuse Sweats grew so much upon him, that he could not lie in his Bed to sleep; from whence at length it came to pass, that having lost his Appetite, he fell into a Dropsical and Oedematous swelling of his Legs. After many things had been tryed in vain by other Physicians, at length I was call'd, and quenching the flame, which was in his Blood and Spirits, by the use of the *Peruvian Bark*, I also brought his sweats within moderate bounds: By which means the sick Person lying in Bed as he ought to do, the swelling of his Legs also plainly vanisht, though he still appears lean and Consumptive.

The

The APPENDIX.

THIS general Consumption proceeding from Evacuations does often depend upon other Distempers; and therefore it may justly be called a general Symptomatical Consumption. As first, upon a *Lientery*, to wit, when the Faculty of the Stomack, which makes the Chyle, is injured by a Preternatural disposition of the Spittle, and the ill Temper of the Nervous Liquor: Whereby it comes to pass, that the Blood and Habit of the Body (since the Food that is taken is carried down through the Guts, and comes away as it went in without any alteration) cannot receive any Recruits from the Food; and from hence there necessarily follows an *Atrophy* caused by Inanition.

This Consumption from Evacuations often depends upon other Distempers, as, A Lientery.

Many times this general Consumption proceeds from a Preternatural alteration, or obstruction of the Gall and Pancreatick Juice, or else of the Juice, which is naturally, and uses to be separated by the small Glands, planted through the whole Pipe or Duct of the Intestines, and which serves for the separation of the Excrementitious parts of the Food from those, which are for Nourishment. For from hence it comes to pass, that the Chylous parts of the Food, that goes down out of the Stomack, slipping by the small mouths of the Milky Vessels, are thrust out together with the dreggy Excrements by Siege; and that either in white Stools, and such as are plainly Chylous from the defect, or preternatural disposition of the Choler, (which is the

The Celiack Passion.

the proper Liquor for separating the Chyle) as it commonly happens in the Jaundice, together with a great weakness of the Body, and wasting of the Flesh: Or else in yellow Stools, as in the *Celiack Passion*, which either is from an Obstruction of the Pancreatick Juice, and that which is separated by the Glands of the Intestines, or uses to happen from the depravation of the Nature of those Juices. In the first case the Urine is much tinged with a Yellow, or Jaundice colour, but in the latter it is quite contrary. In both of them, the Chyle not being separated from the Excrementitious parts of the Food, the Blood is depriv'd of its due recruits, upon which I have often observed that an *Atrophy*, or Consumption, and that no lingring one, has seized the sick Persons.

Scrophulous Glands in the Mesentery

Finally, this general Symptomatical Consumption is sometimes caused by many and large Scrophulous Kernels preternaturally situated in the Mesentery, by which (the Milky Veins being straightned as with a Thread, or being compress't) the passage of the Nutritious Liquor, which is separated in the Intestines, and taken in by the mouths of the Lacteal Veins into the Mass of Blood, is either totally, or in part hindred. In which case the Stools are large, and Chylous, the Belly grows hard, and is swell'd, but the Urine flows in a very little quantity, yet keeps its Natural colour. Thereupon, the Blood not being every day repleniſhed with new Chyle, the Muscular Parts are deprived of their due Nouriſhment, and daily pine away, and at length are wasted to the degree of a *Marasmus*, though the Appetite at the same time be greedy, and the Patient continues almost always free from any thing of a Fever; an Instance of which

which kind I once met with in a Boy about four Years old; the History of which, because it was a very rare case, I shall presently relate.

All these Symptomatical Consumptions are plainly incurable, unless a particular respect be first had to the Distempers upon which they depend, but if these are once remov'd by Art, this kind of Consumption ceases of its own accord; and therefore the Cure of this Consumption is to be sought for in another place, to wit, in the Cure of those Distempers which are the cause of it.

In the Cure of these Symptomatical Consumptions respect must first had to the Original Disease.

History I.

A certain Citizen's Son, in the Street commonly called *Wood-street*, being about four Years old, seem'd without any Fever or Cough to be brought by degrees to the highest degree of a *Marasmus*; but his Belly was unequally hard and swell'd, his Urine very little in quantity, yet of a good colour; his Stools frequent, large, and plainly chylous: Nevertheless his Appetite continued good, or rather greedy all the time of his ilness; whereupon I did easily conjecture that the passage of the Chyle through the Milky Veins was much hindred by the many and very large Glandulous Swellings plac'd up and down in his Belly, and that his Consumption had its Origine from the Evacuation of the Chyle caused in this manner.

I ordered the *Plaister Diasaponis to be apply'd to his whole Belly, and the following Julep to be given him plentifully, and frequently. Take Parsly-water, Fennel-water, of each four Ounces, the Magisterial Water of Earth-worms, Syrup of the five opening Roots, of each two Ounces, of the purest Salt of Amber very well freed from the Oyl, half a Dram; mix them, and make a Julep.* This

This Liquor he very greedily coveted beyond all expectation, plainly refusing any other, so that in the space of Four and Twenty Hours he drank up double the quantity of the Julep that was prescrib'd. Upon which he made Water at a strange rate, and had fewer, and less chylous Stools, the swelling of his Belly falling at the same time, and in a short space with the frequent and plentiful use of this *Julep*, and torrefied *Rhubarb* made up into the form of a *Bolus* with *Diascordium*, the little Boy was freed from his *Marasmus* beyond the expectation of all his Friends.

History 2.

Very lately (which was just after I had wrote this Treatise) I was called to go see Mr. *Gouge*'s Son at the Sign of the *Cornelian Ring* in the *Strand*, a Boy about six Years old, and perfectly reduced to a *Skeleton* by a *Marasmus*: As soon as I had made a diligent Enquiry into the cause of this Consumption, I presently found his Belly, which was very much, and unequally tumified, every where full of swellings, which were disposed here and there in clusters, which yet could not be discerned without pressing very hard with ones fingers.

His Stools also were frequent, and chylous, his Urine little, but of a Natural colour; he had no Cough, breath'd freely enough, but he had a very Melancholick and plainly dead Look, and his Countenance was squalid and pale.

I ordered him the *White Drink*, and *a Bolus with Diascordium, and torrefied Rhubarb, of each half a Scruple*, to be taken once a Week; the *Plaister Diasaponis* to be apply'd to his Belly, and the *Julep* I just now mentioned in the last History,

ſtory, which was made very ſtrong of the *Salt of Amber*, to be drank as often as he would take it.

What I have been telling of the former Patient, the ſame thing did happily fall out here in this. For the Boy refuſing all other Liquors, did covet the Julep Day and Night, ſo that he drank almoſt four and twenty Ounces every day. By which means it came to paſs, that in the ſpace of a fortnight or leſs his Stools were brought to a Natural conſiſtence, colour, and quantity. His Urine alſo flow'd plentifully. The ſwelling of his Belly went down to a Miracle. Neither could I any more perceive any Swellings that lay conceal'd within it, though I ſtrictly examin'd with my fingers. His Appetite and deſire of Drink were Natural, and as they ought to be. His Fleſh likewiſe ſeem'd gradually to increaſe every day. And now his Melancholy and Wearineſs being overcome, the Boy ſeems to recover not only the wonted vigour and activity of his Body, but alſo a good Look, and a freſh Colour in ſome meaſure; ſo that I am not at all ſollicitous about what remains to compleat the Cure.

A TREATISE OF Conſumptions.

The Second BOOK.

Of an Original Conſumption of the Lungs.

What a Conſumption of the Lungs is.

A Conſumption of the Lungs is a Conſumption of the whole Body with a Fever, proceeding firſt from an ill Affection, and at length an Exulceration of the Lungs. Which indeed is the moſt Famous Conſumption, and that which is called ſo by way of Eminence, and of which Authors uſe to treat, as if there were no other kind of Conſumption; and therefore I ſhall now ſpeak more largely of it.

It is either Original, or Symptomatical.

This Conſumption of the Lungs is either Original, which from the very beginning depends upon an ill diſpoſition, and an Exulceration of the

the Lungs: Or Secundary, and Symptomatical, when ever the Lungs receive any great Injury from preceding Distempers.

But seeing that we ought always in the Cure of a Symptomatical Consumption of the Lungs to have a particular regard to the Primary Distemper, from which this Consumption has its Origine; and the Cure of it does require a variation in some things, according to the Nature of that Distemper, I shall make it my business in the last Book of this Treatise to treat of the Cure of this kind of Consumptions, having first given in this Second Book (so far as I have been able to observe) a general Account of the Nature, Causes, Differences, Diagnostick, and Prognostick Signs, Indications of Cure, and the Method of Curing an Original Consumption of the Lungs.

CHAP.

CHAP. I.

Of the Causes of an Original Consumption of the Lungs.

The general cause of a Consumption.

THE cause of a Consumption of the Lungs in general is a vitiated disposition of the Mass of Blood, and of the Spirits in the Nerves, contracted gradually from several Procatartick or predisposing causes, in which the sharp or Malignant *Serum* or Water of the Blood being separated by the soft and Glandulous substance of the Lungs, does stuff, inflame, and at length also exulcerate the Lungs themselves, which is the immediate cause of this Distemper.

The Procatartick causes of a Consumption. First, the stopping of Evacuations.

The Procatartick causes, or those which give the first occasion to this Disease, are, First, the stopping of some usual and necessary Evacuations, as the Monthly Courses, Child-bed Purgations, Old Sores, and especially Fistula's, Issues, Sweating in the soles of the Feet, or any other parts of the Body, a *Gonorrhœa*, the Whites, and other Evacuations of that kind, when they are stopt without correcting or removing the causes upon which they depend: From whence it comes to pass that even the Blood it self is polluted and distemper'd by those Humours, which are condemned by Nature to be thrown off, or banisht, but by some Bars and Impediments lying in their way are stopt, and retain'd in the Mass of Blood longer than is convenient. Secondly,

2. Passions of the Mind.

troublesome Passions of the Mind, but especially Fear,

Fear, Grief, Anger, too much Thinking, and Sollicitude, as also unseasonable and too long Studies, with other things of this Nature; which contribute very much to this Distemper, not only by vitiating the Animal Spirits, and thereupon hindring the Natural Fermentation of the Blood, but also by fixing almost a continual Spasmodick Contraction, or Convulsion upon the soft substance of the Lungs. Thirdly, a too plentiful, and an unseasonable gorging of Meat and Drink, and also an imprudent choice of such Meats and Liquors, as abound with Excrementitious parts, and are not very easie to be digested; but especially the drinking too much Wine, and Liquors that are very Spirituous. Which when it is joyn'd with Cares and Grief, and other such-like Passions of the Mind (so far as I have been able to observe) is commonly the cause of a Consumption of the Lungs. For the Habit of the Body being from hence filled with a load of dispirited and unprofitable Humours, as it is, when it is *Oedematous*, the whole Mass of Blood is polluted, and rendred watterish and sharp, and at length is disposed to a Hectical heat. Fourthly, the neglect of due Exercise, for want of which the Excrements, which ought by the usual Law of Nature to be thrown out by the Skin, being detained in the Blood, are wont by degrees to destroy the *Crasis* or mixture of it. For want of this the Humours also are wont to stagnate in the Habit of the Body, and various Obstructions to arise here and there in the small Fibres themselves; which contribute very much to the corrupting of the Blood, and the weakning of the Spirits. Fifthly, Night-studies, and long Watchings, which not only weaken the Animal Spirits, which are necessary for the

3. *Intemperance in eating and drinking.*

4. *Want of due Exercise.*

5. *Night Studies, and long Watchings.*

Fermentation of the Blood, but also keep within the Body those Excrementitious parts, which are wont to be thrown out in the Bed by Sweat, or Perspiration; and who will think it strange, that the whole Mass is by degrees vitiated by this means? To this we may also add sleeping in the Day, and sleeping much, but especially presently after eating, which as it dispirits the Mass of Blood, and fills it with useless Chyle by hindring the Digestion of the Food (from which cause frequent and troublesome Coughs are wont to proceed:) So by putting the Animal Spirits to sleep at an unseasonable time, and thereupon hindring the Fermentation and Volatilization of the new Chyle, it makes the whole Mass of Blood too waterish and sharp. Sixthly, also a foggy and thick Air, and that which is filled with the smoak of Coals, does extreamly promote a Consumption by vitiating the Animal Spirits, which are so necessary to the Natural Fermentation of the Blood; and also by stuffing and weakning the Lungs, that serve for Respiration, which are the Seat and Theatre of this Distemper. Seventhly, An Hereditary Disposition from the Parents does very often bring a Consumption of the Lungs, when every Body knows very well, that those who come of Consumptive Parents, are apt to fall into the same Distemper. Eighthly, an ill formation of the Breast, whether it be Natural or Accidental, is another cause of this Disease. I call that Natural, where the Breast is narrow, the Neck long, and the Shoulder-blades stand out like Wings: And that I call Accidental, where there is a crookedness, or distortion of the Breast, whereby not only the parts of the Breast, and especially the Lungs being once weakned in their Tone,

Sleeping in the day.

6. An ill Air.

7. An Hereditary Disposition.

8. An ill formation of the Breast.

Tone, are rendred subject to the Flux of Rheumes; but also the Lungs wanting their necessary expansion, and being streightned, do heap up in themselves, and retain the vitiated *Serum* of the Blood, from whence it comes to pass, that at length they come to have Obstructions. Ninthly, This Disease is also propagated by Infection. For this Distemper (as I have observed by frequent Experience) like a Contagious Fever does infect those that lye with the Sick Person with a certain taint. Tenthly, also Chalky Stones, that are Preternaturally bred in the Lungs; or Nails, and other hard Bodies slipping down into the Lungs, when Persons laugh, are to be reckoned among the Causes of a Consumption of the Lungs. By which not only a troublesome Cough, provoking a Flux of the Humours is caused, but also Apostemes and Ulcers, where also for the most part a spitting of Blood preceding does dispose the Lungs to those Apostemes and Ulcers. Of which I shall afterwards give some Histories. Eleventhly, Also some particular Diseases, which corrupt and overthrow the Nature of the Blood and Spirits, do occasion this Distemper. From whence there follow a Symptomatical Consumption (of which I shall make it my business to discourse in the end of this Treatise,) as the Scurvy, Kings-Evil, Convulsive, and especially Hysterical Affections, if they have been of a long continuance; also Fevers, and especially Intermitting, and Scarlet Fevers, and such as proceed from a Surfeit; so the Small-Pox, Measles, Stone in the Kidneys, the *French Pox*, an Asthma, spitting of Blood, Inflammation of the Lungs, Pleurisie, and other Distempers of the Breast ill cured;

9. *Infection.*

10. *Chalky Stones, and such like in the Lungs.*

11. *Some preceding Distemper.*

likewise the Green-sickness, a fixt Melancholy, Gout, and Rheumatism.

The more immediate cause is taking of cold.

The Body being thus prediſpos'd to a Conſumption by theſe and other ſuch-like Procatarctick Cauſes, the more immediate cauſe of this Diſtemper is for the moſt part the taking of Cold, from whence it comes to paſs, that in the Body diſpoſed in ſuch a manner by a load of Humours, or Water continually deriv'd from the diſtemper'd Habit of the Body into the Lungs, a Cough is cauſed, that is not eaſily ſhaken off, as that is wont to be, which happens from a meer accidental Cold, where the Matter is concocted within a few days into a putrid Flegm, and upon that is all perfectly thrown out by a Cough (as I ſhall ſhew more largely in the Chapter of a Catarrh.) Moreover from a ſtock of very ſharp and Malignant Humours, which were gathered before in the Habit of the Body, (as there is a continual ſupply of new Matter from the Circulation of the Blood) there is a continual and troubleſome Cough produced, and ſticks upon the Patient to his dying day: The *Serum*, or Water of the Blood being ſeparated, as it were in a perpetual ſtream by the Glandulous parts of the Lungs, and not admitting of any Concoction until the Lungs, eſpecially the Glandulous parts of them, ſwell from their being ſtufft, and grow hard, and at length the Tone of the parts is quite deſtroyed, and they are ulcerated by the ſharpneſs of the Humour, that is ſeparated by theſe tender and ſoft ways: Which indeed is the immediate Cauſe of a Conſumption of the Lungs.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of the degrees of an Original Consumption of the Lungs, and the Signs which give us warning of it, together with the Preservatory Indications, or what we are directed to do in order to prevent it.

THE degrees of this Distemper are these which follow, to wit, first, a stuffing of the Lungs from the *Serum*, or Water of the Blood, that is plentifully separated in them. Secondly, a hard Swelling, but more especially in the Glandulous parts of the Lungs arising from the same *Serum* distending those parts too much, and not having a free passage out of them. Which Tumour I take to be the crude Tubercle mentioned by *Galen*; which Tubercles, or crude and glandulous Swellings I have often found in the dead Bodies of Consumptive Persons, when the other parts of the Lungs have been full of Apostemes and Ulcers. Thirdly, an Inflammation of the Lungs arising from the heat and sharpness of this *Serum*. And lastly, an Impostumation and Exulceration of these inflamed Parts, when the Distemper comes once to its height and extremity.

The first degree is a stuffing of the Lungs.

2. A Swelling.

3. An Inflammation.

4. An Impostumation, and Exulceration.

The signs which respect a Consumption of the Lungs, are either the Prognostick, or Diagnostick, and Pathognomonick signs: Those of the first sort are these which follow. First, the being born of Consumptive Parents; for this Distemper (so far as I have been able to observe) is more Hereditary, and oftner propagated from the Parents than any other. Secondly, an ill conformation and figure of the Breast, whether it be Natural, or Accidental. Thirdly, a Voice that is naturally small, and squeaking, or at least so by use, and a habit; as being that which proceeds either from a Natural weakness of the Lungs, or from an Obstruction of the Glandulous Coat of the Wind-pipe, and the branches of it, caused by a glutinous and tough Phlegm. But from which soever of these Causes that appearance arises, still it threatens a Consumption of the Lungs, which is afterwards like to follow. Fourthly, a white and soft Skin, together with a thin Habit of Body. Fifthly, a soft and blouted habit of the Muscular Parts, proceeding from their being much stufft with old and dispirited Nutritious Juice. Sixthly, long Hypochondriacal Oppressions about the Region of the Breast, that feel heavy like some troublesome weight, as also Hysterical Choakings, that are frequent, of long continuance, and unusual, being in the same places. Seventhly, Thoughtfulness, Anxiety, Sadness, and an unusual proneness to Anger, especially if they be without any evident cause. Eighthly, the stopping of customary Evacuations by Issues, or old Sores, so likewise of Child-bed Purgations, the Whites, and all others of this Nature. Ninthly, spitting of Blood, though it be accidental. Tenthly, the hawking of black and tough Phlegm constantly

First Prognostick Sign being born of Consumptive Parents.

2. An ill figure of the Breast.

3. A shrill squeaking Voice.

4. A white soft Skin.

5. A blouted habit of the fleshy parts.

6. Melancholick Oppressions about the Breast.

7. Thoughtfulness, and some Passions of the Mind.

8. The stopping of Customary Evacuations.

9. Spitting of Blood.

10. The hawking of black and tough Phlegm

ſtantly in a Morning, for a long time: For that it proceeds from thoſe Glands being filled with a black Humour, which are placed in the Lungs near the Wind-pipe. Which Symptom, as it is a common thing with thoſe that have the Scurvy or Kings-Evil, ſo it does in progreſs of time afford us a Proſpect of an Aſthmatical Conſumption that is like to follow. Eleventhly, a ſalt taſt of the Phlegm that is hawk'd up; which diſcovers a ſaltneſs and ſharpneſs to be in all the *Serum*, or Water of the Blood. Which, when a great deal of it paſſes through the ſoft ſubſtance of the Lungs, and is ſeparated there upon the getting of a great Cold, is apt to inflame and ulcerate them in a ſtrange manner. Twelfthly, A proneneſs to have a great flux of Spittle by the glandulous Coat of the Tongue, and by the Salivatory Ducts and Tonſils, and that whether it be with, or without any evident cauſe. Which Symptom is a thing that is very common with thoſe that have the Scurvy, and ſuch as are Hypochondriacal, and ſhews a Colliquative diſpoſition of the Blood: That is, that it cannot by reaſon of its too great and preternatural ſharpneſs, perfectly aſſimilate to it ſelf the new Nutritious Juice, nor make it duly mix with it ſelf, and therefore throws it off upon theſe Glandulous Parts, and conſequently does in progreſs of time oblige the ſoft ſubſtance of the Lungs to receive it; from whence a Conſumption commonly has its Original. 13ly, A want of Appetite, that continues long, and ſtill grows worſe without any other Diſtemper accompanying of it; ſo that the ſick Perſon, unleſs he uſes much Exerciſe, and abſtains from eating a great while, and pleaſes his own Fancy in the choice of ſuch Food, as is very grateful,

11. *A ſharp and ſalt taſt of the Phlegm.*

12. *A proneneſs to ſpit much.*

13. *A want of Appetite, that laſts long.*

cannot make a full Meal as he uſed to do without the turning of his Stomack, and making him ſick: Neither indeed can he digeſt, or diſtribute the Food, which he takes, be ſure if he eats much, without an Oppreſſion at his Stomack, and a gravative wearineſs in his Limbs. Which is the very Symptom that opens the way to a Conſumption: For it proceeds from too great a fulneſs of the Veſſels, and the whole Habit of the Body, cauſed by ſtale and diſpirited Nutritious Juice, by which means there is not room to receive new Chyle, and therefore Nature does not deſire it. Which want of Appetite does yet grow worſe, if it happens ſo that a flame is kindled in the whole Maſs of Blood by the preſent Catarrh from the continual and violent motion of the Lungs, and by reaſon of the ſerous and colliquative ſtate of the Blood. In which caſe, as the Thirſt increaſes, ſo the deſire of Food grows leſs: Or elſe there follows an univerſal want of Appetite from too great a fulneſs of the Veſſels, ſo that the ſick Perſon plainly refuſes Drink as well as Food. 14ly, A troubleſome and Chronical heat, at leaſt in the ſoles of the Feet, and the palms of the Hands, eſpecially after eating, together with a Pulſe ſomewhat quicker than it ought to be. For this Symptom ſhews an Inflammatory and Hectical ſtate of the Spirits, and conſequently a ſharp, ſerous, and colliquative diſpoſition of the Blood, from which cauſes a Conſumption of the Lungs does commonly proceed. 15ly, A ſtraightneſs and oppreſſion of the Breaſt, with ſome difficulty and ſhortneſs of Breath almoſt always joyn'd therewith. Which Symptome is very common, not only with ſuch as have the Kings-Evil, by reaſon of the ſwelling of the Glands of the Lungs; but

14. *A Chronical heat.*

15. *A ſtraightneſs of the Breaſt, and ſhortneſs of breath.*

but also with those that are Scorbutical and Hypochondriacal, by reason of the constriction of the Lungs, the Diaphragm, and other Muscles that serve for Breathing, which is from a light degree of a Convulsive Affection of the Nerves that are assign'd for their motion. 16ly, A disposition to Catarrhs, that is, when the sick Person is frequently subject to a Cough, even upon every little occasion, yea, and sometimes without any evident cause. For this Symptom shews a sharpness and colliquative state of the Blood. From whence it comes to pass that the sharp *Serum*, or Water of the Blood, supply'd from the load of Humours lurking in the Habit of the Body, uses to be almost continually separated, and thrown out by the glandulous Coat of the Wind-pipe, and by the soft substance of the Lungs. Which is a very evident sign that a Consumption of the Lungs is then just at hand, which will most certainly seize the Patient, whenever the serous part of the Blood has contracted so great a sharpness as is sufficient to inflame or exulcerate the Lungs, either from the liberal drinking of Spirituous Liquors, or from taking of great Cold, or any other cause. 17ly, All those Distempers before mentioned, as the Scurvy, Kings-Evil, a Chronical Green-sickness, an Inflammation of the Lungs, spitting of Blood, Pleurisy, Rheumatism, Asthma, *&c.* which are wont to occasion a Consumption of the Lungs. For the Body being in this manner as it were habitually predispos'd, a Consumption of the Lungs, and that many times an incurable one, does very frequently seize upon the Patient upon the next great Cold he gets. And indeed almost every Catarrh, when it afflicts the Patient, does at the same time threaten a Consumption that is like to follow. There-

16. *A disposition to Catarrhs.*

17. *Any of those Distempers preceding, which are apt to dispose to it.*

To prevent a Conſumption, the great buſineſs to be careful in the ſix non-natural things.

Therefore in the preventing of a Conſumption (which is much eaſier than the Cure of it) the great buſineſs whilſt the Patients remain in this ſickly condition, is to take all poſſible care that no Error be committed in thoſe ſix things, which we call not Natural. For in this ſo ſlippery a ſtate of Health they are wont upon every little occaſion of this Nature to fall headlong into a Fatal Conſumption. As for Example:

1. In eating and drinking.

Firſt, they ought to be Prudent in the chooſing of their Meat and Drink, that the Chylous Liquor may be made to abound with good Juice, and that the Nouriſhment may create very little trouble to Nature in digeſting and diſpenſing of it. Let them alſo take heed they do not eat too much Food, though it be ſuch as affords a good Juice, as alſo that they do not drink too much

2. Sleep.

Wine and ſtrong Liquors. Secondly, let them ſleep the fore-part of the Night: But let them avoid ſleeping in the day-time, yea, and ſleeping too long in the Morning; becauſe ſuch ſleep is wont to retain and heap up a great load of Hu-

3. Exerciſe.

mours in the Habit of the Body. Thirdly, let them every day uſe moderate Exerciſe, and rubbing for a good while together, to fetch out the diſpirited Humours from the Habit of the Body

4. Evacuations.

by the pores of the Skin. Fourthly, let them ſtrictly avoid all ſtrong Purges; foraſmuch as they not only weaken Nature, but alſo by putting the Blood into too great a motion with their ſharp Particles, they make it grow acrious and hot, and bring it into a more Serous and Colliquative ſtate; upon which a Catarrh, and a Conſumption of the Lungs are wont to follow.

5. Paſſions of the Mind.

Fifthly, let the Patient by all Lawful ways induſtriouſly lay aſide Care, Melancholy, and all poring of his Thoughts as much as ever he can,

and

and endeavour to be chearful. For I have very often observed, that a Consumption of the Lungs has had its Origine from long and grievous Passions of the Mind. Sixthly, let the Patient enjoy an open, fresh, kindly Air, and such as is free from the smoak of Coals, which may not only cherish the Animal Spirits, and comfort the Nervous Parts, and consequently restore the weak Appetite, but likewise procure quiet (at least in some measure) to the Lungs. But there must be great care taken, that he does not get new cold. For the Body being in such a manner filled with a load of Humours, every new Catarrh or Cold tends to a Consumption, and from hence come all our Sorrows. *6. The Air.*

And here I shall earnestly beg Pardon for being too quick with my Pen (if any one can resent it as prepostorous) whilst I offer something more in this Chapter (though briefly) concerning the Indications for preventing this Distemper, and that before the Methodical Thread of my Discourse brings me to the more copious subject of the Indications of Cure.

The general Indications for preventing a Consumption in this sickly state, are chiefly three. The carrying off by some way of Evacuation the dispirited Chyle, that lurks in the Habit of the Body. The tempering of the Preternatural and Hectical heat in the Blood and Spirits newly caused by the stagnation of the Humours. And lastly, the strengthening of the Tone of the Parts, and consequently freeing them from their Obstructions; which being neglected, there is all the reason to fear an ill Habit of Body, and a return of the Preternatural Heat. *The Indications of Cure.*

For

Gentle Purges to evacuate the Humors.

For this end, though ſtrong Purges (as I have before hinted) are in this caſe to be condemned, yet it is very convenient to carry off the load of Humours by Stool gently, and by degrees, with kindly and Stomatick Purges, until the Body is freed from its bloutineſs and Obſtructions, and reduc'd to its firſt and Natural ſtate.

The Purges of this Nature are, *the Stomack Pills with Gums, Aloephangin Pills, Aloes prepared with juice of Roſes, Maſtick Pills, Pill Ruffi, the bitter Draught with Senna,* &c. But I prefer the *Tinctura Sacra, and the Purging Mineral Waters* before any other ſort of Purge, which as they carry off the vappid Humours by little and little with eaſe, and without putting them into too great a motion, ſo they alſo rather temper the Heat, than kindle a new flame in the Spirits and Blood (which is often the effect of other Purges) and ſtrengthen the Tone of the Stomack, which in this caſe is weak and relaxt, and withal increaſe the Appetite. For the ſame purpoſe likewiſe ſuch Medicines as provoke Urine and Sweat, are of great uſe in order to the more effectual carrying off of the naſty *Serum* of the Blood. But in chooſing of theſe Medicines a Phyſician ought always to be very cautious and prudent, preferring thoſe which communicate the leaſt heat and ſharpneſs to the Blood before others. For Diureticks, I prefer before any others, *Wood-Lice, raw, or prepar'd, Turpentine, Leucatellas Balſam, Balſam of Sulphur, and other Preparations made of Turpentine*; but eſpecially the *Chalybeate Mineral Waters*, and amongſt them *Sadler's Waters at Iſlington*; the Vertue of which I have had the Experience of now for five Years, not only in many others, but alſo in my ſelf, with very good Succeſs, becauſe

Diureticks and Diaphoreticks for the ſame end.

But a Phyſician muſt be very prudent in the choice of theſe Medicines.

Amongſt the Diureticks the Chalybeate Waters are the beſt.

becauſe that they are impregnated with more of a Mineral Spirit than any others (that I have ever yet try'd in ſeveral Parts of *England*) by which they penetrating like Lightning the fartheſt corners of the Body, open Obſtructions, and provoke Urine very plentifully; and yet they do not affect thoſe that drink them, ſo as to make them giddy, and as it were fuddled, to oppreſs the Stomack, or to cauſe a great heat in the Hands and Feet at the end of their paſſing off, ſo much as other *Chalybeate* Waters uſe to do.

Amongſt the Diaphoreticks, a Decoction of Sarſa.

Among thoſe Medicines that are Diaphoretick, a *Decoction of Sarſa* deſerves the preference, which not only cauſes a gentle breathing by the pores of the Skin, but alſo tempers and ſoftens the Maſs of Blood: As alſo *Ceruſs of Antimony*, *Diaphoretick Antimony*, &c. which Antimonial Medicines provoke Urine as well as ſweat.

If the Blood be at all preternaturally hot, ſome muſt be taken away.

If the Blood ſeems but in the leaſt degree to grow preternaturally hot, it is convenient in the very beginning to take away a moderate quantity of it, in order to cool it, and to abate the fulneſs of the Veſſels. For although Bleeding is condemn'd in a Conſumption, when it is once confirm'd, becauſe the uſe of it at that time not only affords no benefit, but alſo procures the ſudden deſtruction of Nature: Yet nothing does conduce more to the preventing, or extinguiſhing of that Hectical Flame which is in the Blood, if it be adminiſtred time enough. By which means (other neceſſary Medicines being alſo given in a due Method) the Inflammation and Swelling, and conſequently the Exulceration of the Lungs themſelves; yea, and the Conſumption it ſelf, together with a Cough, difficulty of Breathing, and the reſt of the train of direful Symp-

Symptoms may be happily prevented. And indeed from what I have learnt by a great deal of Experience, I do not doubt but many fall into fatal Consumptions from an Inflammation of the Lungs, a Pleurisie, ordinary Catarrhs, and other Distempers of that kind, because through the carelessness of the Physician, or the Patient's fear, and the timorousness of his Friends that are about him, there was not Blood taken away in due time, or so often as there should be, or in a sufficient quantity by opening a Vein. From whence it comes to pass, that the Blood retaining a Hectical heat, the Lungs for a long time remain hotter than they ought to be, and upon that there is a conflux of the Humours flowing into the Part affected, or rather a plentiful separation of the new Chyle by the Glands of the Lungs: From which there follow violent and dry Coughs, Inflammations, and at length (when the Consumption comes to its height) Exulcerations. And therefore I never do take away so great a quantity of Blood from other Persons, that have a Fever, as from these sickly Consumptive People, whenever they happen to be Feverish, and this I have done with very good Success, so that I do not remember that I ever yet repented of doing it.

Many fall into Consumptions for want of due Bleeding.

If the Catarrh has but the least degree of a Hectical heat joyn'd with it, and the other Circumstances of the Patient allow it, the frequent use of an Opiate is also very necessary in this case, and that not only to quiet the Lungs, which at this time are heated by the continual and violent motion of the Cough, but also to temper and calm the whole Mass of Blood. So that it is plainly convenient every Night, or every other Night to give *a Grain and half of London*

If there be any Hectick heat with a Catarrh, an Opiate must be given.

London Laudanum in a little Conserve of Red Roses, or *an Ounce of the Syrup of Meconium with three Ounces of Milk-water, and three Drams of old Epidemick Water, or twenty Drops of Helmont's Liquid Laudanum in a spoonful of the Balsamick Syrup,* which I shall afterwards describe; *or half a Scruple of Hounds-tongue Pill,* or *the Pill of Styrax.*

Yea, and in this case no Purge except the Purging Mineral Waters ought to be prescrib'd without mixing an Opiate with it, lest the Cough and Heat should happen to be increased by too great a Commotion of the Humours. As for Example: *Take a Scruple or half a Dram of Aloes rosate, half a Scruple, or twelve Grains of Hounds-tongue Pill, mix them, and make them up into four Pills to be gilded, and taken when the Patient is to go to sleep.* Or, *Take two Ounces and a half, or three Ounces of the Sacred Tincture, fifteen or twenty Drops of Helmont's Liquid Laudanum.*

And in this case every Purge, excepting the Mineral Waters, should have an Opiate mixt with it.

This kind of Purges may be ordered every third or fourth Night, and two Quarts of the Purging Waters the following Mornings, either cold or boyl'd, according to the Season of the Year.

Those days the Patient does not Purge, the Physician must go another way to work, and endeavour to carry off the Humours gently by the Pores of the Skin, and by the Kidneys, and do it with the use of such Diuretick and Diaphoretick Medicines, as may rather abate than increase the Preternatural heat of the Blood. For Example:

When the Patient does not Purge, Diuretick and Diaphoreticks are to be taken.

Let the Patient take three times a day *Fifty Wood-lice bruised in small draught of Milk-water, Parsley, or Fennel-water, sweetned to the Palate with the Syrup of the five opening Roots.* Or, *Take two Drams of Wood-lice prepar'd, a Dram of Ceruss of Antimony,*

Antimony, so much Turpentine washt in Plantain-water as will make them into Pills, mix them, and make them into Pills of a middle size, to be put up in Pouder of Liquorice, of which let him take three three times a day at Medicinal hours, and drink after them half a pint of *the Decoction of Sarsa and China,* keeping himself from the open Air. But for this purpose I generally prefer the *Chalybeate* Mineral Waters before all others, it being what I have learnt from long Experience; for that they are found by precipitating the serous Liquor out of the whole Habit of the Body by the Kidneys in a great quantity, and tempering the Hectical heat of the Blood and Spirits, likewise by opening Obstructions, and restoring the due Tone of the Parts to perform every thing that is requisite to a preventive Cure, even Reason it self being Judge. Which I have also found by much Experience ever since this kind of Waters here near us (that is, at *Islington*) have first come into Publick use with the Approbation of our Famous Colledge. And by the help of these I have seen a great many preserved, and indeed others miraculously recover'd from a Consumption, such as I had plainly thought could never be cured, no, not with all that vast stock of Medicines, which are Sold either in the Apothecary's or Chymists Shops, and the most approved Method of giving them, at least that I knew, unless I had had those Waters, or at least some others like them ready for my purpose: I shall afterwards at the end of this Treatise, give a short Account of some few Histories, out of many, that are pertinent to this business.

The Chalybeate Waters are excellent in this case.

Many preserv'd and cured by them.

Here

Here also Issues made in the Arms, or between the Shoulders, are serviceable for abating the quantity of the Serous Liquor of the Blood, and consequently for comforting the Brain and Nerves, and tempering the Animal Spirits; which doubtless contribute very much to the extinguishing of the Hectical Flame, and to the prevention of a Consumption. And perhaps but little less benefit may be expected from the frequent shaving of the Head: When by this the passage of the Humours through that very thick Skin of the Head is rendred more free, the use of which thing in relieving obstinate Catarrhs, is approved almost by universal Experience.

Issues.

Shaving of the Head.

But alas! Physicians have very seldom an occasion to give their Advice about preventing this Distemper (when in the beginning perhaps it may be cured as well as other Diseases, although for the most part by neglect it proves fatal) the sick Persons seldom imploring *Æsculapius* help before the Distemper has run on so far as to be a fatal case, and then they in vain expect Miracles from the Art of Physick, when it is more convenient for them to have the good Counsel of a Minister about the future Salvation of their Souls, and the Advice of a Lawyer about making their last Will. Wherefore I shall spare that labour, which will be to so little purpose, and without any farther delay proceed to the Diagnostick and Pathognomonick Signs of this Distemper.

Physicians seldom consulted for the preventing of a Consumption.

CHAP. III.

Of the Diagnoſtick and Pathognomonick Signs of the beginning of a Pulmonary Conſumption.

The ſigns either ſhew the beginning or confirmation of a Conſumption.

THE Diagnoſtick and Pathognomonick ſigns of a preſent Conſumption, are either ſuch as diſcover it when it is but begun, or when it is once confirm'd, and deplorable. The Pathognomonick ſigns of the beginning of a Conſumption of the Lungs are, Firſt, a Cough, which one may, and that by very certain ſigns diſtinguiſh from a ſimple Catarrh, how violent ſoever, and Chronical it may be, becauſe, ſtrictly ſpeaking, the Part affected, or ſeat and ſource of both Diſtempers are not the ſame. For a Conſumptive Cough proceeds from a Glandulous Swelling, or Tubercle of the Lungs themſelves; and that with the ſenſe as it were of ſome heavy weight in the Breaſt, as alſo a difficulty of Breathing, and other Symptoms of the ſame Nature, which I ſhall by and by particularly, though briefly, run thorough. But on the contrary, a ſimple Catarrh owes its Original from a diſtillation of Rheum caſt out as it were in continual drops by the *Uvula* and Almonds, and the other Glands ſeated in the upper part of the Wind-pipe, yea, and by all the glandulous Coat of the Wind-pipe it ſelf. For the Wind-pipe by a certain Providence of Nature is covered on the inſide with a Nervous Membrane that has a very

The beginning is known by a Cough different from an ordinary Cough.

very exquisite sense, which will by no means admit of any thing but the Air it self, no, not a drop of the cleerest Water without grievous trouble and opposition, and therefore when it is tickled by the going down but of the least disagreeable Particle, it presently endeavours with all its might to throw it up again by Coughing: And indeed Nature has made this Provision for very great Reasons. For if a free and quiet passage were every day allowed but to the smallest Body, or Particles, that are heterogeneous, how soon would there be an end of Man's Life by the stuffing of the small branches of the Wind-pipe, which by reason of the straightness of the passages use sometimes to be stufft, and Asthmatically stopt even by the Air it self when it is thicker than ordinary. But how fierce soever and continual this Catarrhous Cough is, as being provok'd by a tickling from a continual Excretion and Distillation of Rheum from the Glands in the Wind-pipe, yet as it is always at the beginning moist, and joyned with a great flux of Humours; so likewise it is accompanied with no weight, or oppression of the Lungs, or shortness of Breath, which for the most part are obvious to our Observation in a Consumptive Cough, and that in the very beginning.

Therefore this I make to be the first distinguishing sign of a Consumptive Cough; to wit, that it is dry, at least in the beginning, because it proceeds from a swelling of the Lungs rather than from any thin Rheum owzing out of the Internal Membrane of the Wind-pipe, and the Glandules seated in the upper part of it. *This dry Cough from Tubercles of the Lungs.*

Yet it cannot be denyed but these Patients in the beginning of this Distemper, whenever the Lungs happen to be violently moved by an extream *Yet these Patients spit a great deal of thin Rheum.*

tream and deep Cough, ſo as to make them Vomit (either after eating, or from any other Accident.) I ſay, theſe Patients do throw out a great plenty of thin, clear Spittle from the Salivatory Ducts, and likewiſe hawk up from the Tonſils ſome Glutinous Phlegm, that is ſometimes ſalt, ſometimes inſipid, which may happen alſo to thoſe that are well ſometimes from the ſame cauſe, to wit, by reaſon the Salivatory Ducts, and Glandulous Parts ſeated in the Throat are ſqueez'd, and as it were milkt by this violent motion. But nevertheleſs this Cough is to be reckoned a dry one, becauſe there is no Rheum or Phlegm thrown out of the Wind-pipe, or the branches of it. And it is as true that this dry Cough uſes ſometimes to turn to a Catarrhous Cough, and ſuch as is attended with a flux of Rheum, as the Wind-pipe and the branches of it ſupply a continual flux of Humour, which is ſometimes crude, ſometimes in the form of concocted Phlegm (as it uſes to be in a true and genuine Catarrh.) Which comes to paſs from hence, becauſe the Glandulous Coat of the Wind-pipe it ſelf, and the branches of it being irritated by this long and violent motion of the Lungs (in the Nature of a dry Cough) cauſed by the Swellings diſperſed here and there through their whole ſubſtance, is continually emptied of its Liquor as if it were milkt, and thereupon does throw out daily an abundance of *Serum*, or Water almoſt in the ſame manner as Milk is fetcht out of the Breaſts, and Spittle from the Salivatory Ducts, by drawing them in a manner continually; or as an involuntary flux of the Seed in a ſimple *Gonorrhœa* proceeds from the Glandulous ſeminal Parts by frequent fribling. But yet this Conſumptive Cough, when it is attended with

But yet it is a dry Cough.

How it may be diſtinguiſht from a true Catarrh.

with a Catarrh, may be diſtinguiſht from a genuine Catarrh eſpecially two ways: Firſt, in that a Conſumptive Cough is from the very beginning dry for ſome Months (and ſometimes it may be for ſome Years;) whereas a ſimple Catarrh is at firſt humoroſe, as I ſaid before. Secondly, in that a ſimple Catarrh goes off in a few Days, at moſt in a few Weeks; to wit, ſo ſoon as ever that accidental Feveriſh Ferment occaſioned by taking of cold does by degrees once ceaſe to put the Maſs of Blood any longer into an extraordinary motion. Which being once done, the Glandulous Coat of the Windpipe does no more ſeparate or ſpew out any Humour, but what it does Naturally. From whence it comes to paſs, that what remains of that Rheum, which is ſeparated by theſe Glands, being no longer attenuated with a new flux of the Humours, is by degrees concocted by the Natural heat of the parts into a Phlegm that reſembles purulent Matter, and is cough'd up in that form, and thereupon the *Serum* or Humour being thrown out when it is firſt ſeparated, the Glandules quickly recover their Natural Tone without any hard Swelling, or Tubercle remaining. By which means it alſo comes to paſs, that the Cough, together with the tickling, wheeſing, ſhortneſs of Breath, *&c.* ceaſe of their own accord. But on the contrary, in a Conſumptive Cough, as the laſting and inexhauſted Fountain does ſupply a diſtempered Humour to the Glandulous Parts from the Maſs of Blood, prediſpos'd by a long abuſe of thoſe ſix things, which we call not Natural, and put continually into an inordinate motion by a Feveriſh Ferment habitually fixed in it: So from the Swellings diſperſed here and there through the ſubſtance of

the Lungs, and compressing the branches of the Wind-pipe, not without some trouble, the Wind-pipe it self is provok'd to cough by a certain continual tickling: And this causes as continual a spewing out of a sharp and distemper'd Humour all along the inside of the Wind-pipe, until at length those Tubercles growing very large begin to be inflam'd, and to turn to Apostemes. Whereupon as soon as any one of the Bags, or Cavities, which contain the Matter breaks, there is plainly in coughing (if there be a passage for it) a true and stinking Corruption thrown out from these ulcerated Swellings, mixt with some thin Humour, or Phlegm, that is plentifully supplyed from the Glandulous Coat of the Wind-pipe. Neither indeed can the Patient (when the Distemper comes to be a Fatal Case) be ever freed from this Cough by any Art, till Death effectually stops it.

But let no one admire how those Tubercles, or Swellings that are placed in the Lobes of the Lungs far from the top of the Wind-pipe, can provoke this dry Cough, together with a tickling in the upper part thereof; when he may every day observe the same kind of Chronical dry Cough caused and continued a long time by chalky stones generated in the substance of the Lungs. Yea, and once I observed the same Symptom to happen from three Nails, that slipt by chance (as the Person was laughing) through the Wind-pipe down into the Lungs, and to continue for a whole Year, the sick Person all that while being in other respects very well. And indeed the thing it self shews it, for the Wind-pipe is every where divided through all the Lobes of the Lungs into many branches, which are a great way distant from one another,

How the Tubercles, which are remote from the top of the Wind-pipe, do affect that part.

so

ſo that the very fine and ſmall Pipes of thoſe branches are propagated to the very extremities of the Lungs by the continuity of thoſe Membranes, which had their Original from the beginning or upper part of the very Wind-pipe. From whence it neceſſarily follows, that as thoſe Tubercles, in what part ſoever of the ſubſtance of the Lungs they happen to be bred, cannot but make a troubleſome compreſſion upon ſome of theſe ſmall Pipes, and ſtraighten them: So that troubleſome ſenſe, by reaſon of the continuity of the Membranes, does affect the upper extremity or beginning of the very Wind-pipe, by a conſent of parts, as we commonly ſay; whereby it provokes the Wind-pipe to caſt out its Enemy by a vain and dry Cough: Juſt as we ſee every day in a Strangury, or difficulty in making Water from a ſtone preſſing uneaſily upon the Ureter; yea, if it be the very Kidney, a great pain felt in the extremity of the Yard it ſelf, from the continuity of the Membrane: For in Nature's endeavouring to expel the Stone, there ariſes a Spaſmodick Contraction of the whole Urinary paſſage from the very Kidneys, which yet does very much affect the extremity of the Yard with a kind of heat of Urine. And even the Nature of this Conſumptive Cough does likewiſe favour much this Opinion, whilſt it yet continues to be dry (as being cauſed only by Tubercles) and before a diſpoſition to a Catarrh does in progreſs of time come upon it. For as it is dry, and without any expectoration, ſo it is not great, nor the Fits long, and is rather made of its own accord to relieve the Oppreſſion of the Lungs, then excited by a violent tickling, or accompanied with that great ſtraining, which uſually accompanies a Catarrhous and fierce

The Nature of this Cough ſhews it to be from the Tubercles.

Cough, that is cauſed by the continual excretion of a Wateriſh Humour by the Wind-pipe, and the branches of it.

A general Account of the Original of the Tubercles in the Lungs.

But if any one ſhould be inquiſitive about the Original of the Tubercles in the Lungs, which are the firſt occaſion of this dry and truly Conſumptive Cough, I ſhall give this general Anſwer: That the ſubſtance of the Lungs not only ſeems more obnoxious to a flux of Humours (as the Ancients love to Phraſe it) than any other parts of the Body, from the continual motion of theſe parts cauſed in reſpiration; but alſo by reaſon of its ſpungy ſoftneſs (becauſe it conſiſts wholly of ſmall Bladders and Veſſels) is wont to ſuck in, and retain the Humours. And therefore, when all the internal and external Parts, as well thoſe that are Muſcular, as thoſe that are Glandulous, are very often affected with ſeveral ſorts of ſuch Swellings, why ſhould it be ſtrange, if they are frequently found here alſo, as they are in other parts of the Body? Yea, when I conſider with my ſelf, how often in one Year there is cauſe enough miniſtred for producing theſe Swellings, even to thoſe that are wont to obſerve the ſtricteſt Rules of Living, I cannot ſufficiently admire that any one, at leaſt after he comes to the Flower of his Youth, can dye without a touch of a Conſumption. And without doubt the breeding of theſe Swellings is ſo frequent and common, that a Conſumption of the Lungs would neceſſarily be the common Plague of Mankind, if thoſe Swellings did not vaniſh, or were not removed by Art as eaſily as they are bred at firſt: And indeed I have been uſed to think, not without Reaſon, that as the more Benign Tubercles are wont to go off of their own accord, and that quickly, ſo none of them

The breeding of theſe ſwellings is very common.

them lay the Foundation of this great Disease, of which I am now treating, but only those, which are in some degree Malignant, and ill-natur'd, and that are wont to putrefie sooner or later from some peculiar quality in their Nature, from what part soever of the Body they have their Original.

And when they are Malignant, they occasion a Consumption.

But that I may more particularly say something of the beginning and rise of these Tubercles: As far as I have been able hitherto to learn, either from the inspection of the dead Bodies of such as have had a Consumption, or by Reasoning; a crude Tubercle or Swelling is bred from the Obstruction of some Glandulous part of the Lungs; to wit, when a greater quantity of *Serum*, or Water is separated from the Blood, than is thrown out by the Duct of the Glandule: From whence it comes to pass, that as the Part affected being too much distended by the Humour that is imprisoned in it, is deprived of its Natural Tone, and thereupon is no longer able to spew or throw out the *Serum*, or Water that flows into it, or is separated; so likewise the Humour, that is so shut up, not being any more renewed by an influx of fresh Humor, does by degrees grow dry and hard from the Natural heat of the Part: From whence arises a hardness, that resists a pressure, or a Tubercle (of which we are now speaking) which in progress of time, after the Natural Tone of the Part is in this manner destroyed, is wont to be inflam'd, and to turn to an Apostem sooner or later, according to the Nature of the *Lympha*, or included Humor, and of the Blood, from which it is separated, which indeed is the whole immediate cause of a Consumption of the Lungs, and of the dry Cough which attends it.

A particular Account of the beginning of them.

There

The causes of that Obstruction, which produces the Tubercles.

There remains yet some Enquiry to be made from what cause this Obstruction, or Stagnation of the Humour in the Glandulous parts of the Lungs does proceed. And this is sometimes from the thickness, and glutinous quality of the Lymphatick Juice, that is separated in the Glandules; from whence it comes to pass, that it is not easily driven on, nor thrown out by the very small and straight pore or passage of the Glandule: And this is wont to happen to those that have the Kings-Evil swellings, and such as have the Scurvy, by reason of the great quantity of fixt Salt, which their Blood has too much of. From whence it comes to pass, that Persons so distemper'd are more subject than other People to fixt and cold Swellings, and those in the Lungs as well as in other parts of the Body, and sometimes they dye of a very Chronical, or lingring Consumption. Sometimes also there is so great a quantity of Humour separated in the Glandules from a violent and great Catarrh, that the excerning Faculty or Power by which the Part empties it self, is plainly unable to throw it out. From whence it comes to pass, that the way by which new *Serum* should flow into it being stopt, the Water which is then retain'd within the Glandules, and stagnates there, does by the Natural heat of the Part gradually turn to a dryer Matter, and so into a substance that looks like Honey, or is of the Nature of a Suet, until the Tone of the Part being at length perfectly overthrown by being too much distended, there follows an Inflammation, and an Apostem upon it. And for this reason a Consumption of the Lungs does often succeed to a Catarrh it self, when a dry and hesky Cough comes in the room of that which was Catarrhous. Which dry Cough is caused

cauſed by a Tubercle, or Glandulous Swelling, occaſioned by a Catarrh upon taking of Cold.

Moreover it is eaſie to obſerve that a dry Cough, and a very Acute Conſumption do often come from an Inflammation of the Lungs, a Pleuriſy, or ſome other Diſeaſe of the Lungs; to wit, becauſe either through the neglect of the Phyſician, or the timorouſneſs of the Patient's Friends, ſuch timely, or frequent, or ſuch plentiful Bleeding as is neceſſary to anſwer to the greatneſs of the Inflammation, is omitted. From whence it comes to paſs, that the Tone of the Parts, eſpecially thoſe that are Glandulous, being deſtroyed, are never able to recover their Natural ſtate again; but here and there, in thoſe places where the Inflammation has before for ſome time prevailed, there are hard Tubercles to be found diſperſed up and down, together with a dry Cough, and a continual Hectick Fever; from whence ſuch Patients, being once ſeized with a very Acute Conſumption, dye within a few Weeks; for the Lungs having been before inflamed, do very quickly Apoſtemate, which brings on the laſt Scene of this Diſtemper, with all the uſual and fatal Symptoms accompanying it.

The ill Cure of a Pleuriſy, &c. ſometimes occaſions them.

There is another Error in the Cure of this kind of Diſtemper no leſs fatal, and that is, when the neceſſary clearing of the Lungs from the Phlegm, with which the Glandulous Parts eſpecially are ſtufft, is plainly omitted for want of uſing Pulmonary and Expectorating Medicines; or when theſe Remedies are adminiſtred with too ſparing a hand. And much more, when that plenty of Lymphatick Juice, which is ſeparated in the Glandules, is kept lockt up there by the unſeaſonable, and indeed fatal uſe of *Opium*, given

Sometimes from the want of Pectoral Medicines.

Or from the unſeaſonable uſe of Opiates.

given in order to eaſe the pain. From whence it comes to paſs, that although the Patient be delivered from the danger of the preſent Diſtemper, (which yet is very ſeldom the effect of it) yet by thoſe Tubercles, or Glandulous Swellings, which are left by this Method, a ready way is made to a Fatal and Acute Conſumption: Which ſhews it ſelf firſt by a Cough, ſhortneſs of Breath, and a Hectick Fever, but afterwards does quickly bring on all the direful and fatal Symptoms of this Diſeaſe.

The moſt uſual cauſe is ſome Spaſmodick contraction of the Lungs.

But the moſt uſual cauſe of theſe Tubercles is ſome little Spaſmodick, or Convulſive Contraction of the Lungs, that is long and continual, with the ſenſe of a weight and oppreſſion, cauſed by Grief, Fear, Cares, too much Thinking, and other ſuch-like Paſſions of the Mind. For as the ſoft ſubſtance of the Lungs, when they are contracted ſo long, and continually compreſt or ſqueez'd together, is wont to grow hard of its own accord; ſo likewiſe the Glandulous Parts of them being once deprived of their uſual expanſion, are not able to throw, or ſpew out, be ſure in a ſufficient quantity, that Lymphatick Liquor, which was ſeparated in them. Wherefore no body has any reaſon to wonder, that as a ſtuffing of their whole ſubſtance, ſo likewiſe a hardneſs in the Glands themſelves, that reſiſts a preſſure, follows upon it. And thereupon it is eaſie to obſerve, that as Hypochondriacal and Hyſterical Perſons are more ſubject than other People to a Conſumption, though it be a Chronical and lingring one; ſo likewiſe that Diſtemper ſeizes them for the moſt part from the occaſion of ſome Misfortune, which thing does firſt cauſe Fear, Grief, Thoughtfulneſs, or ſome other

other grievous Passions of the Mind, and that long and fixt.

Secondly, A Consumptive Cough, as it is for the most part dry, so in the beginning of the Distemper, at least in the day-time, it is mild, and without any very great and vehement irritation, and often returns by long and uncertain intervals. But a Catarrh is in the very beginning fierce, and almost continual. It must indeed be confest that both Coughs are violent and troublesome enough in the night-time; to wit, a Catarrhous Cough, because all separation of the foul *Serum* by the glandulous Coat of the Wind-pipe and its branches is more plentiful at the time of lying down in our Beds; but a Consumptive Cough, because the Lungs are more constring'd and straightned in this posture of the Body. Whereupon as the branches of the Wind-pipe being more compress by the glandulous Swellings, have upon this occasion more trouble from their compression: So likewise there is a greater quantity of glandulous Liquor at such a time prest out of the Glands into the branches of the Wind-pipe, by which the Lungs are more stufft, and thereupon are likewise more provoked to cough: And from this continual motion of the Lungs caused by the Cough, proceed those pertinacious Watchings, which contribute more than a little to the increase of the Fever, which at first depended upon the Colliquative and Tumultuos state of the Blood. Though I have sometimes observed, especially in Consumptive Persons, that have been Hypochondriacal, long and troublesome Watchings without any Cough, especially after their first sleep.

2. *A Consumptive Cough is moderate in the day time in the very beginning.*

Thirdly,

3. A Vomiting after eating, discovers a Consumptive Cough.

Thirdly, as there is almost always a want of Appetite, and a Thirstiness accompanying a Consumptive Cough, so likewise a Vomiting after eating uses commonly to follow upon it; so that usually the sick Person, when he has eaten, coughs, and never ceases, till he has vomited up the Food he has taken. Which Symptom proceeds not only from a weakness of the Stomack, by reason that the Concocting Faculty is impaired by the distempered state of that Liquor, which is continually thrown into the cavity of the Stomack by its glandulous Coat for the sake of Fermentation, and is at this time supplyed from the Mass of a Feverish Blood; but likewise from too great an agitation of the Stomack, caused by the violent motion of the Lungs coughing just by it: For as soon as ever the Lungs begin to be swell'd with a new influx of fresh Nutritious Juice conveyed into them, there begins to be a plentiful separation and excretion of the Lymphatick Liquor by the small Pipes of the Lungs, and the glandulous Coat of the Wind-pipe, and upon that a continual tickling, and a troublesome and violent Cough; by which commotion the Stomack being by reason of its Vicinity brought into a consent is also shaken, till at length the Natural motion of it being perfectly inverted, it throws up by Vomiting whatever was contained in it. From whence it comes to pass, that the stock of new Chyle being in this manner thrown out, there is no more of it for that time carryed into the Lungs, and so the Lungs being quiet upon it, as not being irritated any more by an influx of new Chyle, the Stomack is at quiet too, and so the Cough and the Vomiting come to cease together, until the Lungs begin to be irritated again from the taking in of

The Causes of it.

of new Food. And verily this disposition to Vomit being joyned with a Cough, I reckon one of the most certain Pathognomonick signs of a Consumptive Cough. For although I have known some that have been in a Consumption, who have had for the most part a good Stomack, (that is, when the Fever, that has gone along with it, has been very mild) yet I scarce ever met with any, but had this disposition to Vomit after eating joyned together with a Cough. It must indeed be confest that this Diagnostick sign is not proper to a Consumptive Cough in the fourth Mood (as the Logicians use to speak) that is, so that where-ever this is found joyned with a Cough, that Cough is a Consumptive one. For although all Persons, who are in a Consumption, are wont in that manner after eating, to vomit up what they have taken, with their coughing, yet the same thing happens likewise every day to Infants, and Children that have a Chin-Cough. However it is very easie by the Age of the Patient, the continuance of the Symptom, the fierceness of the Cough, and other Circumstances to distinguish this Catarrhous Cough from that which is truly Consumptive.

This is one of the most certain signs of a Consumptive Cough.

Though a vomiting does attend the Chin-Cough;

Yet it is easie to distinguish them.

Fourthly, Likewise a hoarse, or shrill and squeaking Voice, joyned with a Cough, if it be frequent, much more if it be continual, and Chronical, shews it to be plainly a Pulmonary and Consumptive Cough: For as the hoarseness proceeds from a roughness of the Coat which covers the inside of the Wind-pipe, which being continually moistned with a salt Rheum, puts the whole Pipe or Instrument out of Tune; so likewise the smalness of the Voice depends upon the stuffing of the small Pipes, that are clogg'd with glutinous Phlegm.

4. A hoarse, or squeaking Voice, joyn'd with a Cough is a sign that it is Consumptive.

Fifthly,

5. A weight in the breast, and difficulty of breathing shews a Consumptive Cough.

Fifthly, as this Cough is accompanyed with an Oppression of the Breast like a weight from the beginning, so likewise with some trouble, and difficulty in breathing, and a shortness of Breath, especially upon walking faster than ordinary. Which as it proceeds from crude and harden'd Tubercles scatter'd up and down through the Lungs, so likewise from the small Pipes being stufft with tough and glutinous Phlegm. But in Scrophulous, Scorbutical, and Asthmatical Persons, that are in a Consumption, this Symptom by reason of the Convulsive contraction of the Nerves of the Breast, is more remarkable, and more troublesome than it uses to be in others; and therefore a fresh and open Air, and such as is free from the smoak of Coals, is more beneficial to these Patients, than to other Consumptive Persons, as we shall shew more in its proper place.

Which shortness of breath is more remarkable in some particular Persons.

6. Fretfulness and Sadness, with a Cough discover it to be Consumptive.

Sixthly, when some of the Glandulous parts of the Lungs happen to be very much distended by the long gathering of the Humour, which could not find a way out by the small Pipes, and to become hard, there grow crude Tubercles scattered here and there in the soft substance of the Lungs. Whereupon there follows not only some difficulty of Breathing, and a shortness of Breath, but also an Oppression of the Breast, and a weight under the short Ribs, accompanyed with an unusual Fretfulness, Sadness, and Thoughtfulness. Which Symptoms, when they are joyned with a Cough, I always reckon among the Pathognomonick signs of a Consumptive Cough.

Seventhly,

Seventhly, when at length those Glandulous Parts from a long infarction or stuffing of the Lungs, that are loaded with a filthy *Serum* separated in the Glandules, are very much swelled, and grow hard in one or other of the Lobes, (this Serous Matter being then contained in large bags) that Lobe of the Lungs which is affected, is heavier than the rest, and there is a greater weight evidently perceived in that part of the Breast; from whence it comes to pass, that the Patient likewise coughs more when he lies on one side, than on the other, because the Glands that are affected, are compress't more in one posture than in the other; from the compression of which there follows a continual spewing out of *Serum*, or Whey-like Liquor into the small Pipes of the Lungs, together with an incessant tickling, and a troublesome Cough. And this likewise is always to be reckoned one of the most certain signs of a Consumptive Cough. For although I have known some, that have been affected in this manner, to have lived several Years, yet they always remain in a sickly and Consumptive state.

7. *When the Patient coughs more as he lyes on one side, then as he lyes on the other.*

The cause of this.

Eighthly, when at last those swell'd Glands of the Lungs begin to be inflam'd, and to turn to Apostemes, with a Collection of purulent Matter contained in their proper Bags, whether they are of the Nature of a *Steatoma*, where the Matter is like Fat, or of a *Meliceris*, where the Matter is of the colour and consistence of Honey, or of any other kind of Swelling whatsoever, (which variety proceeds from the different Nature of the *Serum*, or Water of the Blood, as we shall shew afterwards) then the Consumption begins to be confirmed, and to become Fatal, upon which there follows a new

8. *When the Tubercles Apostemate, there arises new Symptoms.*

company of deadly Symptoms; which are the Diagnostick signs of a confirm'd Consumption, of which I shall hasten to discourse more largely by and by, as soon as I have given some short Account of the two other signs of the beginning of a Consumption, *viz.* a Fever, and the wasting of the Solid Parts.

The Second Pathognomonick sign of a Consumption is a Fever.

The Second Pathognomonick sign of the beginning of a Consumption, is a Fever, which does, at least in some degree, accompany this Distemper, when it first seizes the Patient, together with the loss of Appetite, some Thirst, a Urine somewhat high colour'd, a quick Pulse, want of Sleep, a heat of the Parts, especially the extream Parts, and other such-like Symptomes. And by this means a Consumptive Cough may almost at any time be distinguisht from an ordinary Catarrh.

By which we may know a Consumptive Cough.

This Fever at first is sometimes moderate.

Indeed this Fever in the beginning of the Distemper is very moderate in Scorbutical and Phlegmatick Persons; however, some Preternatural heat (if they make a diligent Observation) may be discerned, especially in the palms of the Hands, and the soles of the Feet, together with a quickness of Pulse, and sometimes also a fixt redness in the Cheeks, more especially after eating. But this Fever is purely Hectical, and continues almost always alike, because it proceeds from the Solid Parts, and the disposition of the Blood, by reason the Mass of Blood has lost its due mixture, and runs a great deal of it into a Serous Matter, which is occasioned by an Acid, or sharp Ferment that is in it, and is continually disturbing, and putting it upon the fret. It is very true, this Fever is in progress of time very much increased by the continual motion of the Lungs, and they being heated with the Cough, and

Afterwards it increases.

and the want of Sleep occasioned by it; as likewise by the addition of an Inflammatory and Putrid Fever, proceeding from the Inflammation of the Tubercles of the Lungs, and the Apostemes that follow upon it: Of which we shall presently Discourse more largely when we come to speak of the Diagnostick signs of a confirm'd Consumption.

The Third Diagnostick sign of an incipient Consumption is a wasting of the Flesh.

The Third Diagnostick sign of the beginning of a Consumption, is a wasting, or extenuation of the Muscular Parts, which in the beginning of the Distemper is very slow, and almost insensible (the Parts at this time rather growing loose and flabby, than wasting) until from an Inflammation of the Tubercles, or from Apostemes, or some other Accident an Inflammatory or Putrid Fever comes to be joyn'd to the Hectick; and then as the new Fever not only spoils the Appetite and Digestion, but also melts down the Nutritious Juice, and throws it out of the Blood, the Consumption increases apace, so that within a few Weeks the Patient has a *Hippocratick* Face. From which time the Diagnostick signs of a confirm'd Consumption appear, of which we come now to speak.

CHAP IV.

Of the Pathognomonick signs of a confirm'd Consumption of the Lungs.

The signs of a confirm'd Consumption are,
1. A new Fever.
2. A greater Colliquation.

THE Pathognomonick signs of a confirm'd Consumption, are, a new Fever added to the Hectick, and that first, Peripneumonical from an Inflammation of the Lungs, and Continual, afterwards Putrid and Intermitting; and a greater colliquation of the Blood, which is mightily increased by the new Fever, and discovers it self by Prodigious Sweats, a Catarrhous Cough, a Looseness, Dropsie, Thrush, and a particular soreness of the Throat in swallowing. By which the Patient being at length brought to the last degree of a Consumption, is reckoned to be in a deplorable Condition, even by those that understand nothing of Physick. Of all which signs I intend particularly, though briefly, to subjoyn my Observations.

The causes of the second, or Inflammatory Fever.

And first, of the Inflammatory Fever, or the Fever from an Inflammation of the Lungs. This Fever has its beginning from an Inflammation of the Tubercles of the Lungs, to wit, when-ever one or more of those Tubercles happen to be inflamed by the taking of Cold, the liberal drinking of Spirituous Liquors, too much Exercise, or from any other such-like Accident, which by putting the Blood into too great a motion, may make it too hot, or else by too great a distention of the Tone of the Glands, or from the peculiar

peculiar Nature of the Humour contained in the Bags, and its disposition to ripen, this Fever (which I use properly to call a Peripneumonick, or Inflammatory Fever) cannot but arise, and that with the conjunction of a difficulty of Breathing, (the expectoration or raising being then stopt, though the Cough continues violent) and oftentimes also of a pain of the Side, a Drought, Restlessness, want of Sleep, a great and continual Heat, and other Symptoms of a Fever from an Inflammation of the Lungs. By which the Patient, so long as the height and violence of it continues, is almost always confin'd to his Bed, and many times never comes out of it again.

This Fever is to be treated like other Fevers with an Inflammation of the Lungs.

And indeed this Fever is to be treated wholly in the same manner as other Fevers that are attended with an Inflammation of the Lungs, that is, with a very thin Diet, the plentiful use of Pectoral and Expectorating Medicines, the outward application of Anodyne Fomentations and Liniments, Pearl Cordials, and Temperate Juleps, but above all, with Bleeding, and that such as is administred in due time, frequently, and plentifully, let the Patient be never so lean and Consumptive. For by this means only is it possible to prevent the fatal Event of the Distemper at this time. For the Blood being once cooled by bleeding in time, and in a sufficient quantity, the Fuel, which would maintain the Inflammation, is taken away, and the Flame, which is kindled in the Tubercles, is with the same ease extinguisht in a day or two. But if this be neglected, the Patient dies within seven days with an Inflammation upon his Lungs, and all the Fatal Symptoms of this very Acute Distemper, which many times happens from the

negligence of the Physician, of the Patient, or his Friends; or at least, though if he does not dye so quickly, yet he dyes as certainly, having an Apostеme succeeding to the Inflammation of the Tubercle about the seventh day, and from thence this Acute and Inflammatory Fever turns to a Putrid Intermitting Fever, which though it be Chronical, yet is altogether as Fatal and Incurable.

This Fever sometimes returns often in a Year.

Sometimes I have found (as in Mr. *Tibs* in *Pater-Noster-Row*, and in a certain Merchant in *Philpot-Lane*) that this Peripneumonick Fever has return'd several times in a Year, to wit, as often as any new Tubercle happened to be inflam'd, whether it were from some evident cause, or from the Natural disposition of the Tubercle it self to ripen, and become an Apostеme. For all the swell'd Glands are not disposed to an Inflammation at the same instant of time, as it was evidently apparent to me in the Body of Mr. *Davison*, who dyed of a Fatal, though a Chronical Consumption, when we came to open it. For in the Lungs of the dead Body we found at the same time some Tubercles that were turned to Apostemes, and others that were inflam'd; and lastly, some that were crude and unripe. But for the most part such Consumptive Persons dye of a Peripneumonick Fever proceeding from a new Inflammation of some Tubercle, which the Patient has not strength enough to overcome, having been weaken'd by grapling with his Distemper before.

Some Apostemes ripen sooner than others.

The degree and danger of the Fever answers to the degree of the Inflammation.

As the duration of this Fever, so the degree and danger of it is to be calculated from the Inflammation of the Tubercle, upon which it depends. For as soon as the Inflammation goes off, whether it be of its own accord, or by the help

help of Physick, this Fever likewise ceases, tho' as often as the Part that is inflam'd happens to be turned to an Apostem, there forthwith comes in the room of it a Putrid Intermitting Fever, arising from the collection of Matter. And generally speaking, according to the Nature of the Swelling, and its disposition sooner or later to ripen into purulent Matter, the Peripneumonick Fever it self, which proceeds from it, is sooner or later cured; and according to the Malignity of the Humour, and the bigness and number of the Swellings that are inflamed, it is more or less Acute and Fatal. Whereupon tho' this Fever does for the most part come to a period within the compass of seven days (for in that space of time inflamed Swellings begin to turn to Apostemes) yet Scrophulous Tubercles, as they ripen very slowly, so they bring an Inflammatory Fever, which, though it be almost insensible, and less dangerous, yet is Chronical, and ends in no certain number of days. But by how much the Fever is more Acute, so much the shorter it is; and by how much the more moderate, so much the longer it lasts.

This Fever generally terminates in seven days.

Where the Consumption is Scrophulous, the time is uncertain.

I come, Secondly, to speak of the Putrid Intermitting Fever of Persons in a Consumption.

As soon as these inflamed Swellings of the Lungs begin to be Apostems (whether it be for want of Bleeding in time, or a sufficient quantity, or from the Natural disposition of the Swellings to putrifie) this Inflammatory Fever is changed into a Putrid Intermitting Fever: Whose Fits for the most part observe no certain Order at first, but the cold and shivering Fits return often the same day, as it uses to be when purulent Matter is breeding. But when the Matter

A Description of the Putrid Fever in a Consumption.

is once perfectly made, this Fever imitates the Type of a *Quotidian*, and sometimes (though seldom) of a *Tertian*, and that at a certain time of the day, beginning with a chilness and coldness, proceeding with a great heat, and so at last ending in profuse and colliquative Night-sweats. During the time of the chilness and hot Fit, the Cough and shortness of Breath, with the other troublesom Symptoms are increased: But during the time of the Sweat, and the abatement of the Fever (the Cough and other Symptoms being mitigated) the Patient sleeps quietly, recruits his Strength, and flatters himself with the hopes, he is then ready to have, of his Recovery. And this Putrid Intermitting Fever I always reckon one of the most certain Pathognomonick signs of a confirm'd Consumption; because as it proceeds from purulent Matter bred in the Lungs, so it is an Infallible Evidence of corrupted Lungs. And from thence it comes to pass, that this Putrid Intermitting Fever uses to accompany a Consumption (whenever this Distemper happens to be Fatal) to the Patient's dying day. Whose Fits, and the Colliquations proceeding from them, are greater or lesser, longer or shorter, according to the greatness and number of the Tubercles that are ripened into Apostemes. Neither indeed can this Fever be perfectly cured with the *Peruvian Bark*, *Poterius*'s Antihectick, or any other Specifick Medicine (having often tryed what they could do in this case) nor by any other Method that I know of, unless the Ulcer be so benign, that that can be healed by the help of Balsamick Medicines given inwardly, and the Mass of Blood it self (where the fuel of the Distemper lyes) can be brought to a good state by the plentiful

This Fever not to be cured without the Cure of the Ulcer.

plentiful use of temperating and altering Medicines; or at least unless the Consumption be Symptomatical, and depends upon some other Distemper, which may admit of a perfect Cure with the use of Specificks.

Or of the Distemper upon which the Consumption depends when it is Symptomatical.

The Second Pathognomonick sign of a confirm'd Consumption, or that plainly discovers it to be such, is a great and continual colliquation or melting of the Nutritious Juice, and a continual and plentiful separation and running off of it from the Mass of Blood by all the ways of Evacuation that Nature affords; from whence it comes to pass, that a sudden sinking of strength, and a *Marasmus* with a *Hippocratick* Face follows in a short time, though it comes gradually. Indeed I must confess a Consumption has from the beginning always something of a Colliquation joyned with it proportionable to the degrees of the Hectick Fever, from which it proceeds, which discovers it self by Night-sweats, a Looseness, or some other way. Which Colliquation, though it be very hard to be cured, because it depends upon a Hectick Fever, that is incurable, yet is always moderate, and brings but a very slow, and less sensible Consumption, till first a Peripneumonick Fever from the Inflammation of the Swellings of the Lungs, and then a Putrid Intermitting Fever from the Exulceration of them, comes upon, and is joyned to the Hectick. And then indeed as the Fever, so the Colliquation which proceeds from it, is increased. For the Blood being then continually foul'd by purulent Particles communicated to it, as it circulates through the Lungs, by the Swellings that are ripened, Nature when she is so much loaded, and oppress with such Heterogeneous Particles, that she cannot bear them any longer,

The colliquation of the Nutritious Juice is another sign of a Consumption.

This Colliquation is proportionate to the degree of the Hectick Fever.

rises

riſes up againſt them, and begins a Fight (or Feveriſh Fit) in order to thruſt them out, and this Combate ſhe renews every day. In the beginning of this Conflict ſhe is too much oppreſt, and therefore is affected with a chilneſs and coldneſs; but as ſoon as ſhe rallies her Force, and begins to get the better, there is ſo great an ebullition and commotion made in the whole Maſs of Blood, that the freſh Nutritious Juice, which is then carried into the Blood-Veſſels, can no longer unite it ſelf to the Blood, but is thruſt forth, and thrown out in a large quantity together with the purulent Particles by any of the parts of the Body that are open and paſſable, as if they were melted, not without a great loſs of Strength, nor without a waſting of the Body, that is by this means continually deprived of its Food, which ſhould reſtore and nouriſh it. And the greater the Ulcers are in magnitude, and the more they are in number, the greater quantity of Heterogeneous Particles are mixed with the Blood as a Preternatural Ferment, and the more ſevere is the Feveriſh Fit, the Colliquation likewiſe is ſo much the greater, and the Conſumption makes ſo much the quicker diſpatch.

This colliquated matter runs off firſt by the Glands of the Wind-pipe and the Bronchia.

1. This ſeparation of the colliquated Matter is firſt made by the Wind-pipe and the branches of it, by which the Cough, that at firſt was dry, is now turned to ſuch a one as is attended with a great Catarrh, eſpecially when the Feveriſh Fit is going off: At which time a great quantity not only of a crude thin Matter, but likewiſe of concocted Phlegm, either purulent, or like Pus or Matter, and of ſeveral colours is thrown out of the Lungs by Coughing, until the Maſs of Blood, having thrown out that heterogeneous and purulent Ferment, or Leaven, does by degrees

grees cool, and come to be quiet. And this Calm lasts no longer than till this deceitful and uncertain Truce happens to be broke by a new Fit.

Then by the Pores of the Skin.

Secondly, this separation of the colliquated Humours is made likewise by the pores of the Skin in large and colliquative Sweats.

For these Sweats differ in their degree, to wit, according to the different degree of the Colliquation of the Blood, and of the Fever Fit, which precedes, and is the cause of it. For the Sweats always come on, when the Putrid Fever is going off, to wit, after Midnight. For this Fever (whether it be a *Tertian* or *Quotidian*) comes like other Intermitting Fevers at a certain hour (which is about Noon, or a little after) with a manifest chilness, but then proceeding for some hours with a burning Heat, Drought, Restlessness, Vomiting, shortness of Breath, a continual, fierce, and violent Cough, want of Sleep, yea, sometimes also Light-headedness, and a very red colour in the Cheeks, proceeding from the Oppression of the Lungs, and those parts that are seated under the short Ribs: But at length, to wit, about Midnight, it ends in vast and colliquative Sweats. At which time the Patient sleeps quietly, breaths not so short as before, and plentifully coughs up concocted Phlegm without any difficulty or pains, having the Symptoms of the Fever all gone off altogether of their own accord. For at this time the stream of the colliquated Humour is turned from the Lungs, and carried to the Pores of the Skin. And by that means the Patient seems all the Morning to be free from a Fever, his Heat is moderate, and his Pulse low, until at length another new Fit seizes him, and breaks the Treacherous Peace.

And

And from theſe remiſſions of their Fits it often happens that theſe kind of Conſumptive People, even when they are lookt upon as deplorable by others, flatter themſelves extreamly with the hopes of their Recovery; ſo that the ſame Perſons that at Night uſe to think themſelves irrecoverable, and tell thoſe about them they ſhould certainly dye, yet the next Morning they always pluck up their Courage, and in vain entertain the hopes of living long.

The ſtopping of theſe Sweats does no ways relieve the Patient, but thereupon the Matter runs off from the Blood ſome other way.

'Tis true indeed, theſe Colliquative Sweats cauſing a great expence of the Nutritious Juice, do commonly ſpur on the Patient's Conſumption, and quickly make him a Skeleton. And yet he muſt not expect any relief or benefit from the violent ſtopping of them, either by the change of Air, or riſing out of Bed in the Night; which I have often ſeen prov'd true by Experience. For the Blood thereupon growing hot, does not melt or diſſolve ere the leſs, but when this paſſage of the colliquated Humour is once ſtopt by Art, Nature preſently opens ſome new Sluces to carry that troubleſome Load another way, (though it may be more inconvenient) as either into the cavity of the Breaſt, from whence there follows a Dropſie of the Breaſt, with an increaſe of their Cough, and an intolerable difficulty of Breathing; or into the cavity of the Belly, and into the Legs and Thighs, in the Nature of a Dropſie in thoſe parts; or elſe by the Glandules of the Guts, whereupon there ariſes a violent Looſeneſs, that is no leſs Colliquative than the Sweats themſelves: Yea, and ſometimes even a Bloody-flux (if the colliquated Humour be very ſharp) attended with dreadful Convulſions and Torments of the Bowels, which bids defiance to all the Medicines that are uſed

As into the cavity of the Breaſt or Belly, &c.

to

to cure a Dysentery; as I found in the deplorable case of Mr. *Lechmere*, and likewise some other Persons that have been in a Consumption, who being by that Symptom thrown into the last degree of a Consumption, with a *Hippocratick* Face, dyed as quickly as they did miserably. But this Thread of my Discourse has unexpectedly brought me to the other Diagnostick signs of a confirm'd Consumption, of which I must likewise say something briefly.

The colliquated Matter when the Consumption is confirm'd is exern'd by the Guts.

Thirdly, This Colliquation (as soon as the Consumption comes once to be confirmed) is often made by the Glands of the Guts, in the Nature of a thin and waterish Looseness, or else of a Bloody-Flux. For the Blood when it cannot in this colliquative state assimilate the fresh Nutritious Juice to it self, nor unite it to the solid Parts, by reason of its own Preternatural Heat and Sharpness, does frequently endeavour to drive it down, and throw it out as an unprofitable Burden by these Glandules likewise. But Nature does not use to endeavour the expulsion of her Enemy this way, unless it be either for want of Care, or designedly that the High-way by the Pores of the Skin is stopt, or at least, when this way alone is not sufficient to serve her purpose, by reason of the greatness of the Colliquation. And therefore a Looseness is justly to be reckoned, for the most part, one of the last and fatal Diagnostick signs of a confirm'd Consumption. For excepting only the case of such Persons as have the Scurvy with their Consumption, who are always subject to Colliquations of the *Serum* by the Glands of the Guts, and Salivatory Glands, a Looseness is wont to arise, and joyn it self to a Consumption not long before the Patient dyes. For as it shews Nature to be

in

in a very great flame, ſo it ſtrangely haſtens and promotes its farther Deſtruction.

This Looſeneſs is proportionate to the preſent ſtate of the colliquated Blood.

This Looſeneſs is ſometimes moderate, in as much as it is always proportionate to the preſent ſtate of the colliquated Blood, but in others it is violent, and accompanied with racking pains, which uſually defies the power of Opiates, and all manner of Aſtringent Medicines; or at leaſt returns upon taking of the leaſt Cold, or drinking a draught of Beer, or omitting the uſe of Opiate Medicines. And ſo long as the Looſeneſs is ſtopt by the Narcotick Power of Medicines, we uſually have a difficulty of Breathing, in which the Patient is almoſt choak'd, or a Dropſie, or ſome other Symptoms no leſs troubleſome, nor leſs dangerous ariſe. For the Blood being once brought by degrees to an irreparable and incurable ſtate of Colliquation, the crude Nutritious Juice, that is continually carried about in the Maſs of Blood, does, when one Door is ſhut, find ſome other, and it may be one that is more prejudicial and troubleſome to the Patient.

The colliquated Humours producing a Dropſie, is another ſign of a confirm'd Conſumption.

Fourthly, But when in this colliquative, or melting ſtate of the Blood, the Nutritious Chyle that is quite diſpirited, does not find a convenient paſſage through the Glands of the Skin, by reaſon they are ſtopt by the cold of the ambient Air, or by the Glands of the Guts being ſhut up by the uſe of too many Opiates, either a Dropſie of the Breaſt, or elſe of the Belly, and the lower Limbs does uſually follow. Yea, a blouted ſwelling in the whole Habit of the Body, if the paſſages into the aforeſaid Cavities of the Body, and the lower Limbs, are either by Art or Accident ſtopt. And in plain terms, a Dropſie coming upon a Conſumption, of what kind ſoever

soever it be, is to be reckoned amongst the signs not only of a confirm'd, but likewise of a deplorable and incurable Consumption. And that not only because it shews a very great flame in the Blood, and that the state of it is extreamly colliquative; but likewise because the Patient by reason of his too great weakness is not able to bear such an Evacuation of the extravasated *Serous*-water, as is necessary, by such Medicines as purge forth Water. And for Diureticks, they are plainly of no use in this case, because even the strongest of them cannot promote a Flux of Urine, but rather cause a greater Colliquation in the Blood, by attenuating, and heating of it more. Whereupon there is caused a greater and quicker flux of the Water into the cavities of the Body, and into the lower Limbs, where it has a free passage, so as to increase the Dropsie.

And not only of a confirm'd but of a deplorable Consumption.

Fifthly, and lastly, In this universal Colliquation Nature sinking a little before the Person dyes, makes it her business to throw out the *Serum*, or Juice that is full of distempered and purulent Particles, by the Tonsils, and other Glands, that are seated in the Throat, as also by the Salivatory Ducts of the Mouth. From whence there are wont to arise two new Symptoms, and they very troublesome ones; to wit, a great heat about the Tonsils, and the Parts that serve for swallowing. Whereby it comes to pass, that the Patient can scarce swallow any thing but with grievous pain. Which Symptom is wont to proceed from a light Inflammation of these parts, caused not only by the perpetual agitation of them by the Cough and external Cold; but likewise by the separation and spewing out of the Feverish *Serum* and sharp Matter. Secondly, long and troublesome Thrushes disperst through

At last the colliquated Humours are thrown out by the glands of the Throat.

From whence arises,
1. *A heat in the Throat.*

2. *A Thrush.*

through the whole Mouth, which arise from the distemper'd state of the Spittle: But especially if the Looseness that they have been followed with, has been violently stopt with Opiates, and Astringent Medicines. For hereupon Nature (when the Door by which the *Serum* uses to pass, is once stopt) endeavours, though in vain, to force out her Enemy by the passages of the Spittle. By which means it comes to pass, that the parts of the Mouth being tinged with that sharp Humour, happen to be inflam'd and ulcerated with the Acrimony of that distemper'd and feverish *Serum*, which is separated and thrown out by the Glandulous Membrane of the Mouth. Which indeed is the immediate cause of this Symptom, which how troublesome soever it is, does nevertheless plainly defie whatever either Art or Nature can do, because the stock and fuel of it, that is heaped up in the Mass of Blood, cannot be spent. Thirdly, this universal Colliquation, through what Sluces soever of the Body it happens to be made, uses very quickly to bring a *Marasmus*, with a *Hippocratick* Face, which is a total Consumption of the Muscular Flesh, from the defect of the new Nutritious Juice, which by adhering to the Solid Parts might repair the continual loss that they sustain. And when the thing is at length come to this pass, there are no hopes of the Patient's Life. And therefore this Symptom has ever been reckoned by all Persons one of the most certain signs, not only of a confirm'd, but likewise of a deplorable Consumption.

This universal Colliquation quickly brings a Marasmus.

Observations Besides these Diagnostick signs, which I have already mentioned, it may perhaps be beneficial to add likewise my Observations concerning the Pulse, the Urine, and the Matter which they bring

bring up in their coughing, in the several degrees of this grand and stubborn Distemper.

And first, of the Pulse: In the beginning of a Consumption, whilst there is no other Fever but a Hectick, as the preternatural heat is continual and moderate, so likewise the Pulse is somewhat quicker than it ought to be, according to the degree of the Fever; yet for the most part it always observes the same strokes, and is always alike, but only that after eating, as a feverish Heat, so likewise a quickness of the Pulse may more easily be discerned. And indeed some Persons in a Consumption, that are more cold and Phlegmatick, do use to perceive nothing amiss, either in their Pulse or Temper at any time but only then. But as soon as ever the Peripneumonick Fever, with an Inflammation of the Lungs seizes them, the Pulse, as it uses to happen in other Peripneumonies, is not only quick, but also hard and strong, yea, likewise rises up more in one place than in another, so as to feel somewhat like a Saw, when one feels it with several Fingers together. Though sometimes, by reason of the violence of the Spasmodick pain caused by the Inflammation of the Tubercles, it is no rare thing to observe a weak Pulse, together with a coldness of the Extream Parts for a time, which may employ the Sagacity of the most Skilful Physician, to know whether he ought to prescribe Bleeding, or no. For as the taking away of Blood does suddenly destroy Nature, and ruin the Patient whenever the weakness of the Pulse, and the coldness of the Extream Parts proceed from an habitual Weakness: So Bleeding by abating the Inflammation, makes the Pulse stronger, and restores heat to the Extream Parts, whenever this Weakness proceeds

1. *Of the Pulse. When there is only a Hectick Fever.*

When there is an Inflammatory Fever.

accidentally from a painful Spaſm of the Lungs, cauſed only by an Inflammation, which is often immediately relieved by Bleeding.

When there is a Putrid Intermitting Fever.

But when in the progreſs of the Diſtemper a Putrid Intermitting Fever comes on from the gathering of Matter in the Lungs, the Pulſe is very uncertain, to wit, in the Morning before the Fit it is ſomewhat quick, and weak; quick from the Hectick Feveriſh diſpoſition of the Blood; but weak from the exhauſted and impoveriſht Habit of the Body at this time for want of the reparation, which ſhould be made by due and ſufficient Nouriſhment: But in the Fit it is quick and ſtrong; quick from the Hectick Fever, ſtrong from the preſent Orgaſm, or preternatural Commotion of the Blood. But when the Sweat begins to come on, both the preternatural quickneſs and the ſtrength of the Pulſe are by little and little abated, until the ſtrength of it is renewed by the next Fit.

2. Obſervations of the Urine.

Secondly, the Urine, when the Diſtemper firſt ſeizes the Patient, is in ſome degree leſs than uſual, and ſomewhat high-coloured, according to the degree of the Hectick Fever, and being expoſed to the Air, turns thick with ſome ſettling at the bottom, as abounding with more Chylous Particles than it ſhould do. But when the Tubercles begin once to be inflam'd, it is very red, and high-colour'd: But as ſoon as the Putrid Fever from the Apoſtemes of thoſe Tubercles ſucceeding the Inflammation of them comes to be one of the Symptoms, it is high-colour'd, as it uſes to be in Intermitting Fevers, and thick, and at length being expoſed to the external cold, has a white ſettling like Meal, and ſometimes a little red; for the Blood in this Colliquative ſtate ſeparates the Nutritious Juice by the Glands

of

of the Kidneys as well as by other Glands. Though it must be confest, that Persons in a Consumption, that are Scorbutical, and Hypochondriacal, but especially where the Nerves are affected, or upon drinking of *French* Wine, or other Diuretick Liquors, do make a good quantity of Urine that is like Water, thin, and pale at some times, after which there presently follows a high-colour'd and thick Urine.

3. Observations of the Matter that Consumptive Persons spit.

Thirdly, that which Persons in a Consumption spit at first (that is, when the stuffing of the Lungs gives the first occasion of it) is plentiful, sometimes crude, sometimes concocted, as it uses to be in a common Catarrh. Or else it is thin and watery, because for the most part (to wit, whilst the Cough is dry) it is thrown out of the Salivatory Glands from the extraordinary shaking of them by Coughing, excepting some little quantity of viscid Phlegm, which is wont to be hawk'd out of the Tonsils. But in the progress of the Distemper, especially when it is concocted by sleep, or the use of Opiates, it is of an ash-colour, or yellow, or greenish; the like Concoction to which the *Serum* admits in the Glands of the Nose, or Wind-pipe, in the latter end of a Catarrh. But after the Lungs are ulcerated, if the purulent Matter not being contained in a proper *Cystis*, be thrown into the branches of the Wind-pipe, that which they spit is purulent, and stinks, and is sometimes also mixt with streaks of Blood, like that which uses to run out of old and foul Ulcers.

We must not judge of purulent Matter by the yellow or greenish colour of it.

But we must not make a Judgment of the spitting of purulent Matter, from the yellow or greenish colour of it: For this kind of colour not only the *Serum*, that comes from the Glands of the Lungs has, but likewise that which is

separated by the Glands of the Nose in the end of a Catarrh, to wit, as soon as it comes to be concocted. Neither is that that Persons spit to be presently taken for purulent because it sinks, or dissolves in warm water. For the spitting of Scorbutical Persons, because it is much impregnated with Salt, and thereupon glutinous, and heavy, is wont to dissolve, and to subside in hot Water, though the Lungs are sound. But true *Pus* or Matter may be known by these three signs. First, it affects the Nose with a stinking smell. Secondly, though it be something thick, yet it is not at all glutinous, but fluid, having no strings or ropiness. Thirdly, it is of several colours, to wit, yellow, greenish, *&c.* but for the most part of an ash-colour, and something black.

Nor by its sinking and dissolving in warm water.

How true Pus may be known.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of the differences of an Original Consumption of the Lungs.

HEre I could eaſily make ſeveral Diviſions of a Conſumption of the Lungs, and thoſe ſuch as are confirm'd by daily Experience; but, becauſe they neither afford any light to the forming of a true Notion of this Diſtemper in general, nor help us to a clearer, or more diſtinct Underſtanding of the general Prognoſtick Signs and Indications of Cure, I ſhall not ſo much as mention them, at leaſt in this place. But yet there is one Diviſion of a Conſumption of the Lungs, which is into an Acute, and a Chronical Conſumption, without the knowledge of which, a Phyſician muſt needs be very often miſtaken, as well in the making of his Prognoſticks, as in the diſcovery of the Indications of Cure. And therefore no one ought to think it improper, if I here add with what Brevity I can, my Obſervations for a fuller explication of it. For as I have ſeen ſome taken away by this Diſtemper within the ſpace of one, or at moſt of a few Months, ſo I have obſerved a great many others, that were far gone in a Conſumption, by due care, and by making uſe of proper means, who have lived, though in a ſickly and crazy ſtate, for many Years; as for Example, Mr. *Haither*, who after the Cure of a ſpitting of Blood, which he had been ſeized

The Diviſion of a Conſumption into Acute and Chronical.

withal when he was a Youth, is yet living in the fiftieth Year of his Age, though in the whole course of this time he has been lean, troubled with a Cough, and often had touches of a Fever, and been freed from several Putrid Fevers by our Art. And thus my dear Father, who himself was a very skilful Physician, though he was troubled with a continual Cough, a difficulty of Breathing, frequent Putrid Fevers, a light degree of a Hectical Heat, though continual, did nevertheless by this means spin out his Life, though he continued sickly, from the thirtieth to the sixtieth Year of his Age; and at last did not dye of a Consumption of his Lungs, (from which he seemed for the last three Years of his Life to be more free than he had been before) but of that Epidemical, that continued Putrid Fever, which reigned publickly all over *England* in the Year 1658. The same thing I observed in Mrs. *Davison*, a Merchant's Wife in *London*, for the space of fifteen Years, and in a certain Merchant that lived in *Philpot-Lane*, who after several Inflammatory Fevers, that returned often in a Year from every little occasion, at length happened to have such an extraordinary exulceration of his Lungs, that he dyed of it, together with a Dropsie, and the other usual Symptoms of a Fatal Consumption of the Lungs, when he was about Sixty Years old. I could likewise give several Histories of this Nature, but at present I study brevity. As for the cause of this difference, to me it seems to proceed from the different disposition of the Blood, and of that Humour, which is supplyed to the Tubercles of the Lungs, and differs according to the various dyscrasy of the Blood. For if the stuffing of the Lungs, and the Tubercles, which arise

The cause of this difference.

arise from it, by reason of some peculiar dyscrasy of the Blood, have their Original from some malignant or cancrous Humour, or a Humour that is apt to cause a Gangreen, (as I remember it has sometimes happened) the Distemper is not only certainly Mortal, but also quick, and very Acute, and such as carries off the Patient in a few Months, and it may be Weeks. But if they arise from some benign, mild, and cold Humour, such as is less apt for Inflammation and Putrefaction, the Patient gains a longer, though a miserable Truce for his Life. But if the Mass, that is contained in the hardned Glands, be (as it is often seen in some Scorbutical Persons, and much more in those that are Scrophulous) either not at all, or at least but more slowly disposed to an Inflammation and Putrefaction, the Distemper is very Chronical, and the Patient living in a Consumptive and Sickly state for many Years, is at length sometimes seized, and carryed off by some other Disease, as appears plainly from the instances I have before mentioned. For so long as the Lungs are only stufft, or the Tubercles, that arise from that stuffing, remain in a crude state, the Person's Life, though it be miserable, yet is not brought into any sudden danger, though he is troubled with an Oppression of his Breast, some difficulty of Breathing, and a frequent Cough; all which Symptoms are wont to be increased even from the taking of the least Cold, or the committing of any Error in his Diet, and that with the addition of an uncertain Fever for a time. Likewise some degree of a continual Hectical Heat may be perceived in the Solid Parts, but especially in the palms of the Hands, and the soles of the Feet; as also a redness in the

Cheeks, especially after eating, and the drinking of Wine. The Pulse also is something quick, and sometimes intermitting; the Appetite unconstant, and for the most part weak, at least upon the taking of cold. There is likewise rather a lankness of the Muscular Flesh, than a plain Consumption. That which they spit is sometimes viscid, and black, or of an ash-colour, according to the colour of the Matter contained in the swelled Glands. Many times too a spitting of Blood uses to return pretty often upon the least occasion. Which are the Symptoms, or Diagnostick signs of a lingring Consumption of the Lungs, which notwithstanding a Person, though he must expect to be always crazy and sickly, may many times live a long time; but 'twill not be safe for him to indulge himself in the free use of Wine and Meats without any distinction, and the choice of such as are most convenient, nor of several other things, that conduce to the pleasure of Humane Life, as others do. But as soon as a new Inflammatory, or Putrid, and Colliquative Fever is produced by the Inflammation and Apostemation of these Tubercles, all the Symptoms of a confirmed and deplorable Consumption are wont to follow; which are more or less certainly and suddenly, according to the Nature of the Swellings, as they are more or less disposed to an Inflammation, and a quick Exulceration. And here perhaps it may be worth the while to add farther some particular Observations. As for Example.

Observation 1. *The Nature of the Swelling makes the Fever more or less Acute.*

First, As the Inflammatory Fever, or the Putrid which arises from it, is more or less acute and dangerous, according to the Nature of the Swellings, as they are more or less Malignant, and disposed

disposed to an Inflammation, and an Exulceration; so likewise the Consumption from thence grows more or less quick, and incurable.

Observ. 2. Taking of Cold, &c. make a Consumption more Acute.

Secondly, The frequent taking of Cold, and often committing of Errors in their Diet, Exercise, and Passions of the Mind, *&c.* do by bringing Inflammatory and Putrid Fevers, that return in the same manner, upon the Hectick Heat they had before, bring this Distemper sooner to a fatal end, making that Acute, yea, very Acute, which otherwise would have been in its own Nature Chronical.

Observ. 3. A Consumption more Acute in young than in old Persons.

Thirdly, The Consumption of Young Men, that are in the Flower of their Age, when the heat of the Blood is yet brisk, and therefore more disposed to a Feverish Fermentation, is for the most part Acute. But in Old Men, where the Natural Heat is decayed, it is more Chronical.

Observ. 4. When 'tis from Acute Distempers, it is Acute.

Fourthly, A Consumption that proceeds from Fevers, especially such as are from an Inflammation of the Lungs, or from the Suppression of Malignant Ulcers, is almost always Acute: But when it depends upon a Scrophulous and Scorbutical disposition, so in a cold and phlegmatick Temper, it is Chronical.

Observ. 5. For want of Bleeding in the Inflammatory Fever makes a Consumption to be Acute.

Fifthly, The omission of Bleeding, or taking away too little Blood, or bleeding too late in the Inflammatory Fever of such as have a lingring Consumption, makes that Consumption, which otherwise was in its own Nature slow and lingring, very Acute, and presently Mortal; because the parts of the Lungs, that are stufft and harden'd, having been heated for some time, do from that grow more apt to be inflamed, to putrefie, and to be exulcerated.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Prognostick signs of an Original Consumption of the Lungs.

WHat will be the Event of this Distemper, does plainly appear in the several Stages or Degrees of it, as well to our very Reason, as to Experience, from what I have already said; and therefore I shall not propose my Prognosticks, though found out by much Practice and Experience, after the usual manner, that is, like a Dictator, and Magisteriously, any further than as they are confirmed by Reason, and proved the Nature of the thing it self. As for instance,

Every Consumption of the Lungs is Chronical.

First, Every Original Consumption of the Lungs, strictly speaking, is Chronical, though when we compare them, one Consumption may be more quick than another, and in that respect may be said to be Acute. But let it be whither it will, it is always very hard to Cure, because it depends upon a load of Humours, and a stock of them heaped together in the Habit of the Body, which cannot be emptied, or drawn out by any sudden Crisis, like a Fever and other Distempers, that are properly called Acute.

A Consumption in the beginning is curable.

Secondly, But yet in the beginning, when the Lungs are only stufft, yea, in the Second degree of this Distemper, when the Tubercles are already bred from a long stuffing, and whilst they remain crude, and not so subject to be inflam'd and ulcerated, a Consumption does admit

of

of a Cure as well as other Distempers, but especially in the Spring-time, which is wont mightily to conduce to this Cure, whilst the Sun is advancing towards us. It admits of a Cure, I say, either true, or at least palliative, according to the Nature of the Swelling, and the present state of the Blood, from which there arises a Swelling more or less Malignant, and apt to be inflam'd and ulcerated: To wit, a true Cure, as often as these Swellings (being but few and benign) happen to be dissolved by the Art of Physick: And a palliative Cure so long as those Swellings can but be kept from an Inflammation and Exulceration, by the help of Balsamick and other such-like Medicines. By which means it comes to pass, that the Patient, though he is sickly, and subject to Fevers, even upon every little occasion, yet is able to do his ordinary business, and many times lives to grow Old. And this Distemper comes to be reckoned such a stubborn and incurable Disease, either because the Patient being deceived by the flattering Nature of the Distemper, or through carelessness, and the fear of Charges (who commonly sets a lower Price upon himself than any thing else) comes to desire the Physician's Advice too late (which very often happens;) or else lastly, through the Ignorance of the Physician, who not having a true Understanding of this Distemper in the several degrees of it, knows not therefore how to treat it in a due Method.

Though the Cure is sometimes only palliative.

The Reasons why it is thought incurable.

Thirdly, but a confirm'd Consumption, together with the Putrid Fever that is added to it, caused by an Inflammation, or Exulceration of the Lungs, does very rarely admit of a perfect Cure. But yet if it be but a small part of the Lungs that is ulcerated, and the Matter be benign, and

A confirm'd Consumption rarely cured.

and contained in a proper Bag, the Life of the Patient may be preserved many Years by the careful management of himself, and the use of proper Medicines; but he will be always sickly, and subject to a Putrid Fever even upon the least occasion.

The more Acute, the harder to Cure.

Fourthly, A confirm'd Consumption, by how much the more Acute it is, by so much the more difficult it is to cure, because it depends upon more Malignant Tubercles, and is accompanyed with a greater Colliquation, and likewise a quicker decay, and loss of strength.

An hereditary, &c. Consumption generally Mortal.

Fifthly, If a Consumption be Hereditary, or proceeds from an ill conformation or make of the Breast, for the most part it is Mortal, because the cause which produces it, lyes beyond the reach and power of our Art.

Very hard to Cure, when 'tis got by Infection.

Sixthly, A Consumption that is got by Infection, but especially whenever that Infection is derived from one that has an Acute and Malignant Consumption, is, when all other Circumstances are alike, more difficult to cure, and for the most part more Acute and Fatal than other Consumptions.

A Consumption in young Persons is very hard to Cure.

Seventhly, A Consumption in Young Persons (by reason it is more Acute, and apt to bring a Putrid Fever sooner) is harder to cure, than when it falls upon one that is of a greater Age, where the Blood as it is less disposed to be hot, so it threatens a slower Fever, and not so sudden a destruction as in the flower of their Age, where all the Essays of Nature are made with strength and violence.

It cannot be cured in the Autumn, or Winter.

Eigthly, A Consumption in the Autumn, or Winter, though it may be relieved by a careful management, and the convenient use of Medicines, yet it can never be perfectly cured without

out the benefit of the Spring, and of the approaching Sun. For as the vesiculous substance of the Lungs is almost continually penetrated by the Air, and by the Decree of Nature is blown up in the fartheſt corners of it by the continual succession of new Air, that is driven in and out by Respiration, so the present state of the Air must necessarily be of very great moment, seeing it may either hinder or promote the Cure of this Distemper, as it is found to be wholsomly dry and warm, or unwholsom by being cold and cloudy. So that the due constitution of the Air contributes not only to the Preservation of the Lungs, when they are out of Order, but also to their Cure more than the most pompous heap of Medicines, which cannot be conveyed into the Blood, and the Part affected so continually, or in the same quantity as the Air is. And therefore 'tis usually in vain to expect the Cure of a Consumption in the Winter-time, and in Autumn, to wit, whilst the state of the Air being cold, thick, and moist, and consequently unwholsom, does continually promote the Distemper more than a store even of the most proper Medicines can stop and check it, when the edge of the most Powerful Remedies is taken off, and their Efficacy weakned in this manner by the extreamly incommodious state of the Air.

Every Putrid Fever promotes a Consumption.

Ninthly, Every Putrid Fever, though it proceeds meerly from an accidental Catarrh, or taking of Cold, does by heating the Lungs, mightily promote a Consumption; but especially if Bleeding be omitted in the beginning.

An Original Consumption is harder to cure than one that is Symptomatical.

Tenthly, An Original Consumption of the Lungs is for the most part harder to cure than a Symptomatical Consumption, because this last seems to arise not so much from the Habit of the

the Body, as by Accident; and many times the Original Distemper, from which it takes its beginning, is easily cured. Though I must confess, that whenever a Consumption happens to arise from a Peripneumony, or any other Distemper of the Breast ill cured, from the drying up of old external Sores, or the running of internal Ulcers, it is a very hard thing to cure it.

Every Consumption when 'tis cured is apt to return.

Eleventhly, Every Consumption though it be cured, is apt to return, and he that has once been in a Consumption, unless he governs himself very regularly, falls back into the same condition, even upon the least occasion. For not only the Lungs, being already impaired by a former Attack from the Distemper, are the more apt to receive a new impression, but there is likewise found a greater inclination and disposition to this Distemper from the Habit of the Body it self in these, than in other Persons. Yea, moreover, even after the most perfect Cure of a Consumption, there is reason to suspect that there are some crude Tubercles yet remaining, which at length may by often meeting with an occasion be inflamed, and ripen into Apostemes, and so at last become Ulcers.

The sooner the Cure of a Consumption is begun, the easier it is.

Twelfthly, The sooner the cure of a Consumption is begun, the better it usually succeeds; and from hence this Distemper especially proves fatal, because the Physician is consulted when 'tis too late; it being a common thing for Patients to neglect our Advice so long, till they are not capable of any of those Evacuations, and several other Medicines that are very necessary to this Cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Indications of Cure in an Original Conſumption of the Lungs.

IN the beginning of this Diſtemper, to wit, whilſt the Lungs are only ſtufft, and being filled with diſpirited Chyle, and obſtructed (with the Habit of the whole Body at the ſame paſs) they have a Hectical Heat, and ſpew out a great quantity of *Serum* (which does often happen in a Conſumption proceeding from a Catarrh, and taking of Cold, that is, where the Body has been ſo prediſpoſed, and indeed continues a long time before the Tubercles, and the dry Cough, that proceeds from them, are produced.) I ſay, at this time the Indications are plainly theſe.

The firſt Indication is to temper the heat of the Spirits, &c. This is to be done by alterative Medicines.

Firſt, To temper the heated diſpoſition of the Spirits, by procuring a quiet and chearful Mind, and to mend the Maſs of Blood, that has been by degrees reduced to a ſharp and hectical ſtate, by the plentiful uſe of alterative Medicines. And ſuch we muſt reckon not only a Milk Diet, the Chalybeate Mineral Waters, and thoſe Medicines that are commonly called Pectoral, as being ſoft and mucilaginous, and ſo obtunding the ſharpneſs of the Humours, but alſo Balſamicks, and Specificks, which have a reſpect to the proper Conſtitution of the Patient. But the Remedies of this Nature muſt be taken plentifully, and ſo muſt be given (as much as can be) in the manner of a Diet, and they muſt perſiſt in the

the use of them for a long time: For the sharp and distempered state of the Humours, which has been contracted by little and little, is not corrected without a long and plentiful use of proper Medicines.

The second Indication is to carry off the ill Humours by Evacuations.

Secondly, Gently to carry off the load of the dispirited and diseased Humours lodged in the Habit of the Body, with convenient Medicines, as Vomits, Purges, Diuretick, and Sweating Medicines. But all manner of care must be taken in the choice of these kind of Remedies; to wit, that they be very gentle and benign, lest that by heating the Blood, and putting it into too great a commotion, and by that means bringing it farther into a colliquative and watersh state, they should by Accident increase the Distemper.

Which must be always gentle.

The third Indication is to open Obstructions, &c.

Thirdly, To remove Obstructions, and to strengthen the Tone of the Parts, especially of the Lungs, that are weakned by the Humours they have imbibed, and disposed to a Convulsive Contraction, by the use of Steel prepared either by Art or Nature, of Balsamick Medicines, of good and agreeable Air, of Volatile Salts, and other things of this kind.

The fourth is to correct the Colliquative state of the Blood.

Fourthly, To prevent the Hectick and Colliquative Heat, or Catarrhous state of the Blood, or at least to lessen it by timely and plentiful Bleeding; which, although it may do mischief sometimes in a confirm'd Consumption, yet in the beginning of one it is very beneficial: And I do not at all doubt but the Tubercles for the most part are occasioned by the neglect of it, or for want of Bleeding to a sufficient quantity in the beginning of the Distemper, whereby the Consumption uses to run presently into the second, and more fatal degree.

Fifthly,

Fifthly, To take all the care that we possibly can of the Part affected, to wit, the Lungs, by hastening (as much as may be) the concoction of the thin Rheum, that flows continually into them, whereby the troublesome Cough it self, together with the cause of it, may be wholly removed. Which is done not only by alterative and mucilaginous Medicines, commonly called Pectorals (which being taken plentifully, do by taking off the sharp disposition of the Blood and Humours, hinder any farther colliquation and heat in them, by which means the new influx of them being once rendred less, the Humours, that are already sticking in the Lungs, may be more easily and sooner concocted by the Natural heat of the Part:) But likewise by gentle evacuating Medicines, which by diverting the Humours from the Lungs, do for the Reason already mentioned, conduce very much to the more speedy concoction of those, which had been before collected. But above all by the prudent and alternate use of cleansing and inciding Medicines, as there shall be occasion. For as Incrassating and Opiate Medicines prudently given, do much promote the concoction of the Humour, that is already fixt in the Lungs, by stopping the influx of fresh Humours into them, at least for a time; so likewise by that respite, which they procure to the Lungs from coughing, the Lungs themselves, not being for that time so much distended beyond their Tone, and recovering their Natural strength, are very much comforted. But by the use of Oily and Lubricating Medicines, the Humours that are lodged in the Lungs, and concocted, are more easily brought up by Expectoration. And if in their concoction they happen to grow more hard and

The fifth is to concoct and thicken the Rheume in the Lungs.

What Medicines are convenient for this purpose.

tough than they ſhould be, they may with the help of cutting, and cleanſing Medicines be brought up without violent ſtraining, or force of their Cough, which, if it happens, may raiſe a new Flux (and that a very troubleſome one) of thin Rheum, from the Glandules of the Wind-pipe and Lungs, like the ſucking of a Pump.

In the ſecond degree of a Conſumption the Indications are almoſt the ſame as thoſe above mentioned.

In the Second degree of this Diſtemper, that is, when the Tubercles are firſt bred in the Lungs, with a dry and troubleſome Cough, and ſo long as they remain crude, without any great Inflammation and Exulceration, the Indications are almoſt the ſame as before, excepting that they muſt inſiſt more diligently upon a very plentiful uſe of altering Medicines, according as the degree of the Hectick heat is increaſed; but according as their Weakneſs, and the Colliquation of the Humours are greater, all manner of Evacuations muſt be made more cautiouſly and ſparingly; but eſpecially we muſt endeavour all we can to diſſolve thoſe Swellings with the uſe of *Balſamicks, Chalybeates, Antiſcorbutick Medicines, of Wood-lice*, and other things of that kind.

But in the laſt degree of a Conſumption there are new Indications.

But as ſoon as the Diſtemper comes by the Inflammation, and ripening of the Tubercles, at length to the laſt, and for the moſt part fatal degree of a confirm'd Conſumption, (which commonly ſhews it ſelf not only by the vaſt increaſe of the Colliquation, and the acceſſion of a new Fever, not only an Inflammatory, or Peripneumonick, but likewiſe a Putrid Intermitting Fever) there preſently ariſe new Indications of Cure.

1. For when the Lungs are affected with an Inflammation of the Tubercles in the manner of a Peripneumony, as there is an Indication of timely

timely Bleeding, and of Temperate and Cordial Juleps to ſoften the Blood, and to keep up their Strength, ſo alſo of a very thin Diet, and a plentiful uſe of Pectoral Medicines (but eſpecially ſuch as are Oily and Mucilaginous) to take off the Convulſive contraction of the Lungs, by their Anodyne Power, and to facilitate and promote the bringing up, or expectoration of the Phlegm out of the ſtufft Pipes.

In the Putrid Intermitting Fever all Evacuations are to be avoided.

But as ſoon as the Peripneumonick Fever happens to be ſucceeded by a Putrid Intermitting, and extream Colliquative Fever, together with a ſudden decay of Strength after the Inflammation of the Tubercles turns once to an Exulceration; as all Evacuations are contradicted by that Weakneſs, ſo there is an Indication for the uſe of Temperate Pectoral Cordials, Pectorals, Opiates, Slippery, and Cleanſing Medicines. We muſt likewiſe endeavour to root out the Putrid Fever, which, although ſome deceitful Truce may be gained with the uſe of the *Peruvian* Bark, yet does never admit of a perfect Cure without the Ulcers are healed, which, when they are ſmall and benign, is not altogether impoſſible with the help of a convenient Diet, and good Air, and the uſe of Balſamick Medicines. But however that may be, we may endeavour to give ſome check to the Colliquation, by mitigating the Fever Fit, and to alleviate the fatal Symptoms, which ariſe on every hand from the Colliquation. Of which I ſhall ſpeak more largely by and by in the Method of Cure.

The Peruvian Bark muſt be given.

What Purging Medicines are convenient in a Conſumption.

The Medicines that are proper in this Diſeaſe, are, Firſt, Purging Medicines, which ought always to be mild and benign, as *Manna, Lenitive Electuary, the greater Compound Pouder of Senna, Aloes prepared with the Juice of Roſes, Maſtick*

Pills, Pills of Amber, Alæphangine Pills, Stomack-Pills with Gums, my Magisterial Stomack-Pills (by the Prudent use of which at due distances my most dear Father, who was himself a very Skilful Physician, for the space of Thirty Years, lived till he was an Old Man, though in a Consumptive and Sickly state) the description of which I am willing to publish out of his own Manuscript, for the Publick Good.

Take of the finest Aloes an Ounce, the best Myrrh, Mastick, of each half an Ounce, Cinnamon, Saffron, of each two Drams, Cloves, Roman Wormwood, Red Roses, Nutmeg, Mace, Calamus Aromaticus, of each a Dram, of the best Rhubarb two Drams, Galingale, Schænanthus, Yellow Saunders, Wood of Aloes, the lesser Cardamoms, of each half a Dram, of Oriental Musk four Grains, with a sufficient quanty of Syrup of Wormwood. Make them up into a Mass for Pills, according to Art.

Likewise the Purging Mineral Waters, and in general all gentle Purgers, that are grateful to the Stomack and Nerves, and which cause as little heat as may be in the Blood and Spirits, are of use here.

What Vomits may be given. To this Head we must also refer Vomits, as *Honey of Squills*, and in the beginning of a Consumption especially, when it is from a Surfeit, the Infusion of *Crocus Metallorum*.

What Diuretick Medicines are proper. *Secondly*, Diureticks, as the *Mineral Waters, both Chalybeate, and Purging, Wood-lice both crude and prepared, the four greater cold Seeds, common Turpentine, Natural Balsam, Balsam of Tolu, of Peru*; and Compound Medicines made of these, as *Balsam of Sulphur made with Oyl of Turpentine, and with Oyl of Aniseeds*, Dr. *Goddard*'s *Balsamick Syrup, both the Simple and the Anodyne*; *the Roots of Fennel, Parsley, Eringo, and those either raw or candied,*

died, of Elecampane, the Seeds of Mallows, of Marsh-mallows, Plantain-leaves, Juniper-berries, Elder-berries, simple Honey, Honey of Violets, Craw-fish, Syrup of Marsh-mallows, Sweet Almonds, &c.

Thirdly, *Diaphoreticks*, As *Sarsaparilla-roots and China, in decoctions, Venice-Treacle, Laudanum, both liquid and solid, Mithridate, Confection of Alkermes, Saffron, Sassafras-wood, Lignum Vitæ, Saunders, yellow or red.* *The Diaphoretick Medicines that proper.*

Fourthly, Pectorals, to which Head I use to refer, First, all Simple and Compound Medicines, which by taking off the Acrimony of the Humours, do abate the Colliquative state of the Blood, whereby it comes to pass, that the Rheum is not separated so plentifully by the Wind-pipe and Glands of the Lungs. As for Example, *Coltsfoot, Maiden-hair, Alehoof, Brook-lime, Water-Cresses, Pine-tops, Scabious, spotted Lungwort, the Flowers of the great Daisie, of Rosemary, Betony, Sage, Violets, of Borrage, Bugloss, Lilly of the Vallies, the Roots of Polypody, the Leaves of Yarrow, Mouse-ear, Burnet, Dandelion, Plantain, Self-heal, Sanicle, Fluellin*; and such mild Plants abounding with a Volatile Salt; with Syrups, and other Compound Medicines made of those Simples; *the Leaves of the Oak of Jerusalem, of Sun-dew, Golden Maiden-hair,* and other Herbs commonly called Vulnerary, which by altering the Mass of Blood, do very much help the Concoction of the Humours, that are lodged in the Lungs. Likewise the *Balsam of Tolu, of Peru, Natural Balsam, Storax, Benjamin, Gum Elemi, Balsam Capivi, with other Gums and Balsams; Brimstone, and the several Preparations of it; Crabs-eys, Egg-shells, Chalk, Coral, Pearl, Wood-lice; the four greater cold Seeds, the Seeds of Mallows, Marsh-mallows, and Lettuce: the Roots of* *The several sorts of Pectoral Medicines, As those that are soft.*

China, Sarsaparilla, the shavings of Hartshern and Ivory, with the Compound Medicines made of them, such as *Haly's Pouder, the Analeptick, or Restorative Antidote, the Pectoral Decoction, the Decoction of Sarsa, and China*; *Pectoral and Antiscorbutick Ingredients in their ordinary Drink, Emulsions of the four cold Seeds made with Barley-water, a Milk Diet, but especially Asses Milk, things made with Barley, the Chalybeate Waters, Oysters, Snails, and Medicines made of these.*

Those that are lubricating and inciding.

Secondly, Lubricating and cutting Medicines, which promote the Expectoration of the Humours, that stick in the Lungs; as *Liquorice, Honey, Mead, common Oyl, Oyl of Sweet Almonds, but especially Linseed-Oyl fresh drawn without fire, Turpentine, Natural Balsam, fresh and sweet Butter, Almonds, Figs, Raisins of the Sun, Dates, Sebestens, Jujubes, Juice of Liquorice, Gum Ammoniack, Benjamin, Balsam of Tolu, Lohoch Sanum, & expertum, Lohoch of Foxes Lungs, of Coltsfoot*; *Sugar-candy, or Loaf-Sugar,* with several *Linctuses,* and other Medicines in which that is an Ingredient, such as the *Syrups of Hedg-Mustard, Maiden-hair, Coltsfoot, simple Syrup of Horehound, Syrup of the Flowers of St. John's wort, of the five opening Roots, the Balsamick Syrup, Syrup of Jerusalem Oak, of Liquorice, Hyssop, Horehound, Marsh-mallows, Jujubes, Violets, as also Honey of Violets, the Compound Pouder of Orrice, Haly's Pouder, Trochisci Bechici, or Cough-Lozenges, both white and black.*

Those that are Carminative.

Thirdly, *Carminatives,* which by comforting the Nerves, and freeing them from Obstructions, do remove the Convulsie Constriction of the Lungs, upon which there follows a freer Respiration, and consequently a more easie Expectoration; as *Aqua Mirabilis, Spirit of Hartshorn, of*

Salt

Salt Armoniack, the Compound Waters of Briony and Piony, Aniseeds, Fennel-seeds, Elecampane and Orrice-Roots, Orange-flowers, Rosemary-flowers; the Leaves of Hyssop, Sun-dew, with the Waters and Syrups made of them; Orange and Citron Pills candied, Bay-berries, Juniper-berries, Honey, Civet, Gum Ammoniack, Benjamin, Cinnamon, Nutmeg, Mace, Balsam of Peru, Natural Balsam, Syrup of Hedg-Mustard, of Hyssop, the Compound Pouders of Orrice, of Calamint, Treacle, Mithridate, Laudanum, and others of that kind, which yet must be used very cautiously, and sparingly, and not without urgent Necessity, if there be any considerable Fever.

Those that are Incrassating and agglutinating.

Fourthly, Incrassating and Agglutinating Medicines, which conduce very much to the speedy Concoction, and consequently the Expectoration of the *Serum* that flows into the Lungs; as *Comfrey, Alehoof, Yarrow, Dandelyon, Mouse-ear, Plantain, Self-heal, Sanicle, Scabious,* and in general all Vulnerary Herbs; *the Flowers of Red Roses, of Red Poppies, English Saffron, Liquorice, Saunders, yellow and red*; Pectoral Fruits, as *Raisins of the Sun, Figs, Dates, Jujubes, Sebestens, Sweet Prunes, Pine-Kernels, Fistick-Nuts, white* Poppy-seeds, *the four greater cold Seeds, Seed of Henbane, with the Emulsions and Syrups made of them*; *Sugar penidate, Sugar of Roses, old Conserve of Red Roses, Juice of Liquorice, Starch, Honey, Olibanum, Gum Arabick, Tragacanth, Syrups of Comfrey, Marsh-mallows, dryed Roses, and of Liquorice, Lohoch of Fleawort-seed, of Coleworts, Poppies, Purslane, of Pines, Sanum, & expertum, and of Raisins, Jelly Broths made of Calves-feet,* &c. *Jellies of Hartshorn and Ivory, the species Diatragacanthi frigidæ, Haly's Pouder, the black Lozenges for a Cough, Mithridate, Diascordium, Venice-Treacle, Syrup of white* Poppy-heads, and in general

neral all *Opiates*, as *Laudanum, both ſolid and liquid, Hounds-tongue-pill*, *Styrax* Pill, *Philonium Perſicum*, and *Romanum*, &c. Which by ſtopping the preſent influx of the Humours into the Lungs (as the Ancients love to ſpeak) do likewiſe contribute very much to the Coction of the Humours, which had been lodg'd in the Lungs before. And therefore without the cautious and prudent uſe of them there is no great matter to be done in the Cure of a Conſumption.

And laſtly, Deobſtruents. Fifthly, Such Medicines as open Obſtructions, which by freeing the ſtufft Glands from their ſtoppages, do leſſen them. As the *Roots of Orice, Sarſa, China, Saſſafras-wood*, Saunders, *Bay-berries, Juniper-berries, Gum Ammoniack, Benjamin, Balſam of Tolu, of* Sulphur, *of Peru*, *Opobalſam*, *Steel*, either of Nature's Preparation in the *Mineral Waters*, or prepared by Art in the form of a *Syrup*, or *Electuary*, or of *Pills*, &c. *Wood-lice*; with many other *Antiſcorbutick* and *Antiſcrophulous* Medicines.

From this Treaſure of Simple and Compound Medicines, a Prudent Phyſician ought with the Direction of his Judgment and Experience, to compoſe and preſcribe divers Medicines in the ſeveral degrees of the Diſtemper, and according to the Exigence of the Symptoms, as there ſhall be occaſion, in that form which ſhall be moſt grateful to the Patient, that he may be always able to anſwer the preſent Indications in the whole courſe of the Diſtemper, and not inſiſt, like a Quack, upon one ſingle Medicine, as a Charm for the Diſeaſe. The Method of which Rational Cure in the various ſtate and Symptoms of this Diſtemper as it proceeds, I ſhall immediately propoſe.

The

The Chirurgical Remedies in this Distemper are *Issues*, *Blisters*, *Shaving of the Head*, *the application of the Head-Plaister*, *Betony-Plaister*, or any other of the like Nature as also *Bleeding*; of the Use, and Reason of which I shall Discourse more largely in the following Method of Cure. *What are the Chirurgical Remedies.*

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Method of Cure in an Original Consumption of the Lungs.

In the Cure of a Consumption in the beginning the influx of Rheum into the Lungs must be stopt.

IN the beginning of this Distemper (to wit, when the Lungs, the Wind-pipe, and Glandules that are dispersed through all that Pipe, and the branches of it, are at first only stufft by the constant spewing out of the *Serum*, that is separated from the Mass of Blood, and they are troubled with a continual Cough, especially in the Night, proceeding from thence) the new influx of Catarrhous Rheum into these parts is to be stopt by all proper means, and the Humours that are already lodg'd there, must be concocted as soon as may be. And therefore,

First, Some Blood must be taken away.

First, There must be some Blood taken from the Arm, (especially if the Patient has a fulness of Blood, and has before been accustomed to Bleed) to the quantity of Six, Seven, Eight, or Ten Ounces; not only to abate the Effervescence, and consequently the Colliquation of the Blood; but likewise to prevent the Swelling and Inflammation of the Lungs themselves, and to take away the Feverish Heat, which is usually caused by the continual agitation of the parts of the Breast by the Cough, and by the want of Rest, which follows upon it. This opening of a Vein (where the Indications require it) is to be done once, twice, or thrice, at due intervals; especially where there is a flux of colliquated *Serum*, in the form of a suffocative Catarrh,

This must sometimes be done more than once.

together

together with a plentiful Expectoration of crude Phlegm, that comes near to the Nature of a Rheum; or where there is a very Asthmatical difficulty of Breathing, a pain of the Side, or any signs of a Rheumatick, Pleuritick, or Peripneumonick disposition; or lastly, where a Surfeit, or a too plentiful drinking of Wine, or other Spirituous Liquors have preceded. And indeed I do not at all doubt but Catarrhs, and ordinary Coughs do very often turn to a Consumption of the Lungs for want of due Bleeding and fanning of the Blood in the beginning of this Distemper: And moreover we have reason to suspect that the Concretion, or hard knots in the Glandulous parts of the Lungs, and the Hectick Heat proceed from thence.

For want of this, ordinary Coughs sometimes turn to a Consumption.

Secondly, After Bleeding it is very necessary, especially if the Distemper had its beginning from a Surfeit; or if there be a nauseating and disposition to Vomit joyned with it, to prescribe a gentle Vomit of *Honey of Squills*, or *Oxymel of Squills*; yea, and sometimes of the Infusion of *Crocus Metallorum*, to be taken in a moderate quantity. By which Vomiting not only the Stomack, that was oppresst with a load of Humours, may be eased, and the sickness of the Stomack arising from thence, may be removed, and the Digestion restored (all which are to be highly valued;) but likewise the heap of Humours which were before lodged in the Lungs, uses by the exagitation or shaking of these parts in Vomiting, to be expectorated very considerably, not without a remarkable easing of that heavy weight, which was caused by that load. And I have not only seen several Empericks boast, and that not without good Success, that they could cure any incipient Consumption this way, but

After bleeding a Vomit is necessary.

but likewiſe I my ſelf, by the Direction of Reaſon, and the Encouragement of Experience, have many times in the ſame manner ſtopt the Progreſs of a Conſumption in the beginning of it, in a very ſhort time.

And is ſometimes to be repeated. This Vomiting (eſpecially if the Patient bears it well, and finds Relief by it, and if it be neceſſary) may be repeated every third or fourth day, for three or four times.

The moſt convenient time to give a Vomit. The moſt convenient time to give a Vomit in this caſe, is a little before the Evening, but they ought to bleed firſt the day before, for fear the Blood ſhould be heated by the violent agitation of the Parts, and by that means a Fever ſhould be brought on, or increaſed if there was one before: And likewiſe to prevent a ſpitting of Blood, which is wont to ariſe from the more vehement ſtraining of the parts of the Breaſt cauſed at this time by Vomiting before the Blood-Veſſels have been emptied. It is alſo very convenient when the Vomit has done working, to Order ſome *Opiate*, not only to temper the heat of the Blood excited by the ſtraining and agitation, but likewiſe to hinder a new influx of Rheum into the Lungs, which uſes to ariſe from this violent agitation of the parts.

When the Vomit has done working we muſt give an Opiate.

The forms of the Vomits and Opiates, which I commonly uſe in this caſe, are theſe which follow.

Take of Honey of Squills half an Ounce; let it be given in a Draught of Poſſet-drink, and repeated twice or thrice in an hour, if the Patient does not Vomit ſufficiently. Which is a Vomit mighty proper for Children and Young People, being gentle, and very grateful. Or,

Take Oxymel of Squills, Oyl of ſweet Almonds, of each an Ounce. Mix them. Let the Patient take

take it dissolved in a large draught of Posset-drink, and repeat it twice or thrice in an hour (if it be necessary) to promote his Vomiting. Or,

Take of the Infusion of Crocus Metallorum seven Drams, Syrup of Violets two Drams: mix them for a Vomit. And in the time of its working (if it be needful) give *Oyl of sweet Almonds, and Oxymel of Squills, of each half an Ounce, in a draught of Posset-drink once or twice.*

Salt of Vitriol is not so convenient, because it continually twitches, and irritates with its stypticity the Glandulous parts about the Throat, and so uses to cause a greater flux of Rheum, and so a troublesom and long Cough after the Vomiting is over.

The forms of the *Opiates* to be given after Vomiting, are these which follow.

Take Cordial Milk-water, Carduus-water, of each an Ounce; of Barley Cinnamon-water half an Ounce, Syrup of white Poppies six Drams. Mix them for a Draught. Or,

Take of the clear Pectoral Decoction four Ounces, of Tincture of Saffron two Drams, of Helmont's Liquid Laudanum fifteen drops, of Syrup of Violets two Drams. Mix them for a Draught. Or,

Take of Coltsfoot-water two Ounces, Oyl of sweet Almonds fresh drawn, Syrup of white Poppies, of each an Ounce. Mix them. Or if the Patient likes the form of a *Bolus* better,

Take old Conserve of Red Roses, Mithridate, or Venice-Treacle, Conserve of Wood-Sorrel, of each half a Dram, of London Laudanum half a Grain. Mix them into the form of a *Bolus*. Or, let him take in the form of Pills, *half a Scruple of the Cynogloss Pill, or as much of the Storax Pill.*

Thirdly,

Gentle Purges are convenient.

Thirdly, it is convenient also gently to carry down the load of Humours by Stool and Stomack-Purges, and others of that Nature, such as may cause but a very little Effervescence, and Colliquation of the Blood. As for Example.

Take the best Manna, Oyl of sweet Almonds, of each an Ounce and half, or two Ounces, dissolve them in a Pint of hot Ptisane. Let the Patient drink half of it in his Bed, the other half, half an hour after rising out of his Bed. Or,

Take of the best Senna two Drams, Cassia broken with the Canes, Tamarinds, of each half an Ounce, of Coriander-seed prepared, half a Dram; boyl them in a sufficient quantity of Spring-water, or Barnet, or any other Purging Water, to half a pint. Dissolve in the Liquor strained an Ounce of the best Manna, half a Dram of Salt of Prunella. Mix them. Let the Patient take half of this Potion in the Morning, and the rest half an hour after, with due care.

After the working of a Purge, we must give an Opiate that Night.

But whenever he takes a Purge, that Night after it has done working there must be an Opiate given, as after the Vomits, to calm the Commotions in the Blood, and to give the Lungs some quiet, for fear there should arise a new influx of Humours into the Lungs from the agitation of the Blood by the Purges.

And for the same Reason it is convenient to mix some Opiate with Stomachick Purges, to be taken just before they go to sleep. As for Example.

Take of Rose-Aloes a Scruple, or five and twenty Grains, of Hounds-Tongue Pill half a Scruple. Mix them, and make them into four Pills to be gilt; which must be repeated every other Night, after the Patient has been duly blooded. This Pill commonly goes by the Name of the *Catarrh Pill* amongst

amongſt Apothecaries, becauſe it not only carries the Humours down by ſtool, but alſo hinders a new influx of them into the Lungs. Or,

Take of the Stomack-Pill with Gums, Aloephangine, Maſtick Pill, or Pills of Amber, half a dram, or two Scruples, of London Laudanum one Grain; mix, and make them up into four Pills, to be gilt, which muſt be repeated every third Night, for three times.

Yea, if the flux of Rheum be violent, and a ſhortneſs of Breath, or weight, or ſtraightneſs of the Breaſt does not follow upon the uſe of them, ſome Opiate muſt be given every Night; becauſe it may not only procure ſleep, and ſo hinder the Efferveſcence of the Humours and Blood; but alſo by ſtopping a new influx of the Humours into the Lungs, may promote the Incraſſation, Concoction, and Expectoration of thoſe Humours, which are already lodged there. So that I can from Experience confidently affirm, that although Opiates are for the moſt part of ſome uſe in the whole courſe of the Cure of a Conſumption, yet they are more ſafe, beneficial, and neceſſary in the beginning, and without the uſe of them no great matter can be done in preventing the progreſs of this Diſtemper. *An Opiate muſt be given every Night conditionally.*

Fourthly, in this ſtate of the Diſeaſe Diaphoretick Medicines are likewiſe very profitable, becauſe they plentifully carry off the *Serum*, which is continually colliquated from the Blood, by the Pores of the Skin, whereby it comes to paſs that the flux of it into the Lungs being leſſened, that which was fixed there before, is more eaſily concocted. *Diaphoreticks are very uſeful.*

But yet in the uſe of Sudorifick Medicines, we muſt diligently obſerve theſe following Rules.

1. That

But in the use of them, 1. An Opiate must be always mixt with them.

1. That Diaphoretick Medicines have always something of an Opiate in them, left by a new Colliquation caused in the Mass of Blood by them a fresh stream of colliquated *Serum* (by the Lungs as well as the Pores of the Skin) should be produced, and the Cough too thereupon should be increased. Which I have always observed to happen from the imprudent use of Diaphoreticks, that have been given by Women, and Quacks in this case without mixing an Opiate with them. But now with a convenient quantity of *Laudanum* mixt with a Diaphoretick, the Lungs are quiet so long as the Sweat lasts. Whereby it comes to pass, that the stream of the *Lympha* of the Blood is turned from the Lungs by the Pores of the Skin with great benefit, the Cough is then easie, and the *Serum* that is lodged in the Lungs is concocted.

2. We choose such as are least hot.

2. We must choose such Diaphoreticks as have the least heat, such as may cause the least Effervescence, or new Commotion in the Blood, that the old load of Humours that had been collected before, may be evacuated by the Pores of the Skin without breeding more of them by a new Effervescence.

3. We must not give them before convenient Evacuations by bleeding, &c.

3. We must never give Diaphoretick Medicines before the use of Bleeding, Vomits, and Purges, whenever these are necessary. For I have always observed a new Colliquation to arise from a Commotion of the Blood, that has been made before the Vessels have been emptied, together with an increase of the Cough, and other Symptoms, that depend upon it; yea, and sometimes with new Accidents of a spitting of Blood, of Rheumatick and Pleuritick Pains, and other dreadful Symptoms. The Diaphoretick Medicines that I commonly use, are these which follow. *Take*

Take of Venice-Treacle half a Dram, or two Scruples, of Old Conserve of Red Roses half a Dram; mix them for a *Bolus*. Or,

Take Diascordium, Conserve of Wood-Sorrel, of each a Dram. Mix them together. Or,

Take of Matthew's Pills fifteen Grains, make them into two Pills, to be gilt, and taken when the Patient should go to sleep. Or,

Take of the Cynogloss Pill twelve Grains, of Antimonium Diaphoreticum a Scruple, of the Tincture of Saffron a sufficient quantity. Make them into four Pills, to be gilt.

What is the best time to give Diaphoreticks.

The most seasonable time to give these Diaphoreticks is at Night, and that presently after an Evacuation by Bleeding, Purging, or Vomiting, because they procure sleep. The Patient also must be freed from his Sweats with a great deal of care, lest by the Pores being suddenly stopt in this colliquated state of the Blood, he should take new Cold, and thereupon the Cough and other Symptoms should be increased.

Whilst these Evacuations are making, there are other things to be done.

During the use of these kind of Evacuations, the Application of Vesicatories to the Arms, and between the Shoulders is very beneficial for diverting the violent flux of the Humours from the Lungs. But when we are making these Evacuations (which are very useful for lessening the colliquated *Serum* of the Blood, and so for the Concoction of the Humours, that are already lodged in the Lungs) we must not by any means neglect the frequent use of those Medicines which are commonly called Pectoral, or Pulmonary, which in the time between Evacuations must be given very plentifully, as it were in the manner of a Diet, but always in such a form, as is most grateful to the Patient. For there must always be a peculiar respect had to the Stomack, (which

Pectoral Medicines must be given plentifully.

in this Distemper is commonly affected with a Sickness, want of Appetite, and Vomiting) lest being offended with the form, and tired with the great quantity of them, it should be used to a Habit of nauseating, and throw up not only the Medicines, but also the most grateful Food.

What of this sort are best in the beginning.

The best Medicines in the beginning of this Distemper are such as are Incrassating and Lubricating, which by softning the *Serum* of the Blood, conduce very much not only to the allaying of the Cough, but likewise to the Concoction and Expectoration of the Humours, that cause the Cough.

But these Incrassating and Expectorating Medicines may be given sometimes separately, but for the most part mixt together in a compound form, that we may answer both Indications at once. So for Incrassating Medicines, let the Patient be enjoyn'd the frequent use of *Sugar-candy*, *Saccharum Penidiatum*, and *Sugar of Roses*, as also *Old Conserve of Red Roses*, *Juice of Liquorice*, *the black Lozenges for a Cough*, which must be often and gently swallowed down, that they may retund the Acrimony of the Humours, that ouze out by the Wind-pipe, by their soft, mucilaginous, and incrassating quality, and so mitigate the troublesome Cough.

For Lubricating Medicines, let the Patient plentifully use *New Butter*, that has not been salted, in all his Spoon-meat, *Butter'd-Ale*, and (if he bears it well) common *Sweet Oyl*, or rather *Oyl of Sweet Almonds*, but especially *Linseed-Oyl* fresh drawn without Fire, of which let him take a Spoonful every hour, unless there be a Looseness, or some other Symptom that forbids it. Let him also chew *Raisins of the Sun*, *Figgs*, &c.

But

But the Medicines compounded of Lubricating and Incraſſating Ingredients, and which ſatisfie both Indications now mentioned, are thoſe which are commonly called Pectorals, and Expectorating, the more neat forms of which I ſhall very willingly ſubjoyn.

Take Oyl of Sweet Almonds, Syrup of Maiden-hair, Jujubes, Violets, or of Marſh-mallows, of each an Ounce and half, of white Sugar-candy a Dram and half; mix them very well for a *Linctus*, of which let the Patient take a Spoonful every four hours, and drink four Ounces of the following *Apozeme* warm after it.

Take of the Pectoral Decoction when 'tis clear, a pint and half, Tincture of Saffron extracted with Treacle-water, Syrup of Maiden-hair, Scabious, or Jujubes, of each an Ounce; mix them, and make an *Apozeme*.

If you have a mind to incraſſate more, *Take Oyl of ſweet Almonds freſh drawn, Syrup of Comfrey, red Poppies, or of dryed Roſes, of each an Ounce and half, of Syrup of Meconium half an Ounce, of Sugar of Roſes a Dram and half*; mix them, and make a *Linctus*.

But if you have a mind to lubricate more, *Take Linſeed-Oyl freſh drawn without fire, Syrup of Liquorice, or Honey of Violets, of each an Ounce and half, of white Sugar-candy a Dram and half*; mix them exactly for a *Linctus*, to be taken either by it ſelf, or diſſolved in a Draught of the *Apozeme* above-mentioned.

If a Feveriſh Heat ſhould forbid the uſe of *Hyſſop*, or of the *Tincture of Saffron*, let them be omitted in the *Apozeme*. *If there is a feveriſh heat, hot things muſt be omitted.*

If there be a Looſeneſs, ſuch things as will make them laxative muſt be omitted.

If a Looſeneſs, or any other Symptom forbid their uſe, let the Pectoral Fruits be left out of the *Apozeme*, and the Oyl out of the *Linctus's*; or elſe inſtead of the Medicines juſt now mentioned, let theſe be ſubſtituted, which follow.

Take the Lohoch of Poppies, Sanans, of each an Ounce and half, Syrup of Purſlane, of dryed Roſes, of each an Ounce, the cold ſpecies of Gum Tragacanth, Haly's Pouder, of each a Dram, Saccharum Penidiatum, or Sugar of Roſes, three Drams. Mix them, and make a *Linctus*, to be taken in a Spoon, or with a Liquorice-ſtick every four hours, or oftner if the Cough requires it, ſwallowing it gently, and drinking after it a quarter of a pint of the following *Emulſion* warm.

Take the four greater cold Seeds, of each a Dram, white Poppy-ſeeds, Lettuce-ſeeds, of each two Drams, Pine-Kernels, Fiſtick-Nuts, of each three Drams, with a pint of the Water of Red Poppies, Red Roſe-water, Barley Cinnamon-water, of each three Ounces. Make an *Emulſion* according to Art, to be ſweetned with *Saccharum Penidiatum.* Or,

Take the Lohochs of Foxes Lungs, of Colts-foot, of Purſlane, of each an Ounce, the Syrups of Jujubes, Maiden-hair, of each an Ounce and half, of Flower of Brimſtone two Drams, of the Tincture of Saffron half an Ounce, the cold ſpecies of Tragacanth, the could ſpecies of Pearl, Haly's Pouder, of each a Dram, Saccharum Penidiatum half an Ounce. Mix them, and make a *Linctus*, to be taken as before.

Take Tacamahac, Balſam of Tolu, of each a Dram, a ſufficient quantity of the Ingredients of the Pectoral Drink; boyl them in a ſufficient quantity of Spring-water to a pint and half, with the Liquor ſtrained, and a Dram of each of the four greater cold Seeds, two Drams of white Poppy ſeeds, and as much Henbane ſeed, ſeven ſweet Almonds blanch'd, Make an

Emulſion

Emulsion according to Art, to be sweetned to the Palate with *Saccharum Penidiatum.*

But if there be a greater difficulty of Breathing than ordinary from the toughness of the Phlegm, let the following *Linctus* be prescribed.

Take the Lohochs of Raisins, of Squills, of each an Ounce and half, the Syrups of Hedg-Mustard, of Hyssop, of Hore-hound, of each an Ounce and half, the species of Orrise, of Calamint, Flower of Brimstone, of each a Dram and half, of the Tincture of Saffron half an Ounce, of white Sugar-candy six Drams: Mix them, and make a *Linctus*, to be taken as before. Yea, if this Symptom be very urgent, there may be added a Dram of *Gum Ammoniack* depurated, and a Dram and a half of *Flowers of Benjamin*, to the *Linctus.*

These Intentions (to wit, the speedy Concoction of that Mass which is lodg'd in the Lungs, and the preventing of a new influx of it) are likewise satisfied by Compositions made of Balsamick and Agglutinating Medicines. As for Example.

Take the Pulp of Conserve of Red Roses, of Wood-Sorrel, of each an Ounce and half, of Olibanum three Drams, of Natural Balsam two Scruples; mix them, and make an Electuary, of which let the Patient take the quantity of a Wallnut three times a day at Physical hours, and drink after it a quarter of a Pint of the following *Apozeme* warm.

Take the Leaves of Yarrow, Mouse-ear, Burnet, Dandelion, spotted Lung-wort, Jerusalem Oak, Scabious, of each a handful, Flowers of St. John's wort, Violets, great Daisies, red Poppies, of each half a handful, Jujubes, Dates, of each six pair, of Saffron tyed up in a Cloath half a dram, Anise-seeds, Juniper-berries, of each three drams; steep them in

a due manner, and boyl them in a ſufficient quantity of Spring-water to three pints. In the Liquor when it is ſtrained, diſſolve a quarter of a pound of the Conſerve of Red Roſes (which being in this manner added to the *Apozeme*, gives it a Balſamick, and very grateful taſte,) *ſtrain it again, and then add Syrup of Corals, of Jeruſalem Oak, of Maiden-hair, of each an Ounce*; mix them, and make an *Apozeme* for uſe.

Or inſtead of the former Electuary, let this be preſcribed which follows.

Take of the Pulp of the Conſerve of Red Roſes ſtrained through a ſieve, two Ounces, of the Conſerve of the Fruit of the Dog-Roſe an Ounce, of Haly's Pouder a Dram, of Leucatellus Balſam half an Ounce, a ſufficient quantity of the Balſamick Syrup; mix them, and make an *Electuary*, to be taken as before.

Let the Patient likewiſe take often in a day a Spoonful or two of the *Balſamick Syrup*, (which is very grateful to the Stomack) and a Scruple of *Balſam of Tolu*, made up into little Pills, with every Doſe of the Syrup.

Every Night an Opiate muſt be given.

Alſo every Night, when there are not ſome other Medicines to be taken (if nothing forbids it) it is convenient to give *xv.* or *xx.* Drops of *Helmont's Liquid Laudanum* in a Spoonful of the *Balſamick Syrup*. For this end likewiſe 'twill be well to preſcribe a Dram of the *Flower of Brimſtone* in a potch'd Egg, or a ſufficient quantity of *Honey of Roſemary-flowers*.

If a tickling Cough, by reaſon of the Acrimony, and thinneſs of the Humour ſeparated by the Wind-pipe, and the branches of it, be very troubleſome to the Patient, ſo that 'tis to be feared the Catarrhous Cough being irritated after the manner of Suction, or drawing the Humour

mour more into those parts, will be increased, let the following Lozenges be always at hand, to be taken at pleasure, and swallowed gently to quiet the Cough.

Take of the Pulp of Marsh-mallow-Roots prest through a sieve, an Ounce, Sugar of Pearl, Gum Arabick, Tragacanth, white Starch, all dissolved in red Poppy-water, of each two Drams, of Saccharum Penidiatum dissolved in Rose-water a sufficient quantity; mix them, and make them into Lozenges of a Dram weight.

Likewise when the Cough is very troublesome, let the Patient take often, or at pleasure, a piece of *Sugar of Pearl, of Roses, Penidiate, or Loaf-Sugar*, letting it dissolve, and go down gently. The Juice and Root of *Liquorice* are likewise serviceable to this end.

If the Cough continues obstinate, we must use Balsamicks.

But if the Cough be long and violent, and does not yield to the former Remedies, so that from the Lungs being long stufft there is reason to suspect that Tubercles will at length breed; then there must be a recourse had to the use of Balsamicks. As for Example: Let the Patient take three times a day at Physical hours three of the following Pills (the good success of which in Consumptive Coughs I have now experienced for many Years) in a Spoonful or two of some convenient *Linctus*, drinking after them a draught of the Pectoral *Apozeme* already described, warm.

Take of the Pouder of Wood-lice prepared three Drams, of the finest Gum Ammoniack a Dram and half, of the Flowers of Benjamin two Scruples, or a Dram, Extract of Saffron, Balsam of Peru, of each half a Scruple, of Balsam of Sulphur Terebinthinate or Anisate, a sufficient quantity. Mix them, and

make them up into Pills of a middle size, to be gilt, or put up in Pouder of Liquorice.

These Pills do mightily promote the Cure of this Disease, not only in the beginning, but also in the progress of it, in the lingring Consumption of such as are Scorbutical, or have the *Kings-Evil* (which are Consumptions that are very frequent) where the Fever (if there be any) is very moderate, and the Phlegm, that is spit up, is somewhat tough, like that in Asthmatical people, as I shall shew more at large, under the Heads of a Scorbutical Consumption, and a Consumption from the *Kings-Evil.*

A Physician must give Directions about the Air, Eating, and Drinking, &c.

But a Skilful Physician ought in this Distemper to give Directions about the Air, Eating, and Drinking, the Passions of the Mind, and the other things that belong to the Government of the Patient, with as much care as about the Medicines. For without a careful Ordering, and a cautious Use of them, the most Noble Remedies signifie nothing in the Cure of a Consumption.

What Air is proper.

And therefore let him choose an Air that is moderately hot and dry, and likewise somewhat thin. For that which is foggy, moist, or polluted with the smoak of Coals, by continually filling the Blood with unwholsom Particles, and causing a Commotion in it, does keep it in its Colliquative state, whereby it comes to pass, that a Catarrhous Flux of Rheum does perpetually fall upon the Lungs, and upon the Glandulous Coat of the Wind-pipe; and thereupon these parts being continually shaken by the troublesome Cough, the Distemper is always increased, notwithstanding the use of the most Efficacious Medicines. For no Medicines can work a Cure by the way of a Charm.

Let

Let the Food be such as affords a good Juice, by which as few Excrementitious Particles as can be, may be heaped up in the Blood; such as Mutton, Veal, Mountain-Birds, Fish, that are fryable, and easily broke into pieces, Craw-fish, *&c.* Let the Patient likewise eat Flesh only at Dinner, and content himself with Panadoe, Water-gruel, Broths, potch'd Eggs, *&c.* at Night. Let the quantity of his Food also be moderate, and let him avoid Gorging till he can eat no more. Let him drink sparingly, and let that be not too strong, but such as may cause the least effervescence and heat of the Blood, as small Beer, *&c.* Let him forbear Wine, and Spirituous Liquors, but especially a Debauch, and Surfeit proceeding from over-charging the Stomack with them. It also helps to promote the Cure of this Distemper, to alter and impregnate ordinary Beer with Pectoral Herbs, and other Ingredients, which have a respect to the Distemper, from whence this Consumption had its Original (if there has been any such one.) For this way a great quantity of Medicines are conveyed into the Blood in the manner of a Diet, without making the Stomack loath them, or spoyling the Appetite; to which a prudent Physician ought always to have a special regard. For Example. *What kind of Food is to be ordered.*

Take of the best Sarsa sliced eight Ounces, of China cut into slices four Ounces, Polypody of the Oak, Maiden-hair, Tunhoof, spotted Lungwort, Coltsfoot, Scabious, Jerusalem Oak, of each two Handfuls, Flowers of Scabious, of Water-Lillies, Rosemary, great Daisies, St. John's wort, of each a handful, of Juniper-berries four Ounces, of Raisins of the Sun stoned six Ounces, of Liquorice sliced an Ounce, of Aniseeds two Drams. Make a Bag for four Gallons of midling Ale, and let the Patient use it for ordinary

nary Drink. In a Scorbutical and Scrophulous disposition, the mild, and more gentle sort of Simples, that are proper for the *Kings-Evil* and *Scurvy*, must also be added, of which I shall afterwards speak.

The Patient must use moderate Exercise every day.

Let the Patient use moderate Exercise, and Rubbing every day, but especially before Meat; yet he must by all means have a care he does not get any new cold, which is the greatest of mischiefs in this case.

He must avoid all troublesome Passions.

Let the Patient be diverted as much as may be from Anger, Grief, much Thinking, and all other troublesome Passions of the Mind, and that not only by Admonitions and Advice, but also by Society, and the Conversation of pleasant Friends. Let him also carefully avoid unseasonable Studies, and Watching, always sleeping (as much as is possible) the first part of the Night.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Cure of a Conſumption in the ſecond degree of it, to wit, when from the want of a due Expectoration, and from the Matter, that was lodg'd in the Lungs, thereupon ſtaying long in them, ſome crude Tubercles ariſing from the knotty Swelling of the Glands of the Lungs, happen to come upon a long Cough.

Conſumptive Perſons ſeldom ask a Phyſician's Advice in the beginning of the Diſtemper.

IT often ſo happens to Conſumptive Perſons, that either from Want, Covetouſneſs, or elſe an averſeneſs to Phyſick, taking the beginning of a Conſumption for an ordinary Cold, that will go away of its own accord, they very ſeldom ask the Advice of Phyſicians in the firſt degree of the Diſtemper, when it may be eaſily cured by Evacuations, and the reſt of that Method, which we have already deſcribed. But contenting themſelves with I know not what Receipts of Old Women and Empiricks, they ſquander away their precious Time, ſcarce deſiring the Aſſiſtance of a Phyſician, until by reaſon of the increaſe of the Hectick Fever, and the loſs of their ſtrength, they are plainly uncapable of the Evacuations, which we have before preſcribed, which yet are very neceſſary to the juſt and regular Cure of this Diſtemper.

From

Throughtheir neglect, their Lungs come to be knotted.

From which neglect it often comes to pass, that the Matter having stuck a long time in the Lungs, Tubercles or Glandulous Swellings are by degrees bred in them, whereby the Cure in this second degree of the Distemper is rendred not only more difficult, but likewise more uncertain; the Disease admitting no Cure, or at least but a palliative one. And from hence it comes to pass, that a Consumption has so ill a Name, as if it were a Distemper altogether incurable in its own Nature, when (as far as I apprehend from what I have been taught by Experience) it does admit of as certain a Cure as other Diseases, so it be timely treated in a due Method. Though it must be confest that as other evil Affections of the Body, so likewise a Consumption where it seizes the Patient by Inheritance, if it arises from an ill conformation of the Breast, or depends upon an inexhaustible stock of Humours, contracted by a long and habitual use of the six things, which we call not Natural: Or lastly, where it proceeds from a peculiar Malignity, a Cancrous, or Gangrenous dispositon of the Blood, or something in the Nature of it, that makes it apt to be quickly inflam'd, it does not use to yield to any Regular Method of Cure, though it be observed never so early: But every day it runs on with speed to the third degree of a Consumption, notwithstanding the use even of the most Generous Medicines. But this second degree of the Distemper is to be reckoned from the first beginning of the Tubercles, until those Swellings in the Lungs happen to be very much inflamed, and to putrifie; that is, so long as they remain in a crude state. For these Tubercles are not all of the same Nature, but they assume a various, and very different disposition; for sometimes

At first a Consumption is easily cured.

Unless in some particular cases.

The time from whence the second degree of a Consumption is to be reckoned.

The Tubercles are not all of the same Nature.

times they are Malignant, of a Cancrous Nature, apt to Gangreen, and threaten a ſudden Deſtruction: But ſometimes though they are more benign, yet they are of the Nature of Inflammations, Boyls, or a St. *Anthony's* Fire, accompanied with a pain, and Inflammatory heat, and ſubject to a ſudden putrefaction, and thereupon from their firſt breeding they cauſe a Peripneumonick Fever, and have a very quick tendency to Apoſtemes. So that as in this quick kind of Conſumption ariſing from Tubercles of this Nature, there is no room for this ſecond degree of the Diſeaſe; ſo I ſhall not here ſay any thing more of it. For whatever relates to the Cure of it, is to be ſpoken of in the third degree of this Diſtemper, to wit, when I ſhall particularly make it my buſineſs to treat of the Peripneumonick and putrid Colliquative Fevers of Conſumptive perſons.

Some quickly Apoſtemate, and theſe make a quick tranſition to the third degree.

But for the moſt part theſe Tubercles are Glandulous Tumours of a Chronical and cold Nature, and ſomewhat like *Kings-Evil* Swellings, having their Original from the glutinouſneſs of the Humour, or from an Obſtruction of the pore or duct of the Glandules; from whence it comes to paſs that the Humour ſtagnating within them, is gradually concocted by the Natural heat of the part into the form of Chalk, or into a ſubſtance like Suet, or like Honey, and yet is always contained in its proper Bag; and thereupon ariſes immediately that hard Swelling, which I call a crude Tubercle; which although in progreſs of time it may grow to a conſiderable bigneſs, yet is not preſently inflam'd, and turn'd to Corruption, until from the Acrimony contracted by the Humour in its Bag, or from the Tone of the part being too much diſtended, there comes on from

For the moſt part they are Chronical, and of a cold Nature.

from ſome Accident an Inflammation, and upon that an Apoſteme.

So long as this crude ſtate of the Tubercles of the Lungs laſts, the Conſumption remains in its ſecond degree. The Diagnoſtick ſigns whereof are eſpecially to be taken, Firſt, from the remarkable increaſe of the Hectick Fever, which at this time does often begin in ſome meaſure to imitate a Putrid Intermitting Fever, by reaſon of the Acrimony that is at length procured to the Matter contained in the Bags. Secondly, from the notable increaſe of the waſting, or Conſumption of the Muſcular Fleſh, which now at leaſt begins to grow lank. Thirdly, from the dryneſs of the Cough, which how frequent and troubleſome ſoever it is, yet is not accompanied with a Catarrh, and ſuch a frequent ſpitting, as before. Fourthly, from the heavy weight and oppreſſion which are always felt in the Breaſt. To which alſo for the moſt part there uſe to be joyned a difficulty, ſhortneſs, and trouble in Breathing. In this degree of the Diſtemper all Evacuations by Stool, by Vomit, or by Sweat are miſchievous, becauſe they promote the Fever, and quicken the pace of the Conſumption.

The Diagnoſtick ſigns of Tubercles in the Lungs, are, 1. An increaſe of the Hectick Fever.

2. A remarkable waſting of the Muſcular parts.

3. A dry Cough.

Purges, Vomits, and Diaphoreticks are hurtful at this time.

Neither indeed is it convenient at this time to bleed, unleſs it be to prevent an Inflammation of the Lungs; that is, as often as a Pleuritick pain, the liberal drinking of Spirituous Liquors, the taking of new Cold, and other ſuch-like Occaſions give a Sagacious Phyſician ground to ſuſpect that ſuch an Inflammation is at hand. And then too by reaſon of the preſent Conſumption and Weakneſs, the Blood muſt rather be cooled by drawing it off with a ſparing Hand, than taken away in a large quantity. But yet he

Neither is Bleeding convenient, unleſs for ſome particular Reaſons.

he must diligently persist in the use of those Altering and Pectoral Medicines, which have been already described (so far as the Stomack can bear them.) But the chiefest benefit is to be expected from the long use of Balsamick Medicines, as of my Balsamick Pills before prescribed, and of other things of the like kind (so there be no considerable Fever:) And by this means I have (with the Blessing of God) recovered a great many Consumptive Persons (whose Tubercles seemed to be of a cold Nature, and crude, and so the Consumption slow, and Chronical) to a former state of Health, and the Lives of some I have preserved several Years, though they have continued sickly. In a Scorbutical and Hypochondriacal disposition it is proper also to mix *Mynsycht's Extract*, or some other *Chalybeates*, and mild *Antiscorbuticks* with these Balsamick Medicines; as likewise Remedies against the *King's-Evil* in a Scrophulous disposition: Of which I shall speak more afterwards under their proper Heads.

But Balsamicks are especially proper.

But now besides the altering Medicines (already described) which are given in a little quantity, and at certain hours, we must do all we can to temper the Feverish Heat of the Blood, and to eradicate the inexhausted stock of Humours lurking in the Habit of the Body, together with the Colliquation arising from it, by making the Patient take them plentifully, and continually in the manner of a Diet. And therefore we must not only diligently make choice of such Food as affords good Juice, and corrects the sharpness of the Humours, as Partridges, and Mountain-Birds, potch'd Eggs, Oysters, the Feet of Animals, together with Gelly-Broths, and Gellies made of them; also Craw-fish, and other Testa-

The altering Medicines.

Teſtaceous Fiſhes, with Broths artificially made of them; ſome forms of which I ſhall afterwards ſubjoyn; but alſo the *Chalybeate* Mineral Waters, a Pectoral Mead, a Milk Diet, Aſſes Milk, Milk-water, Pig-water, Snail-water, and other Liquors, that ſoften and take off the ſharpneſs of the Blood, muſt be ordered to be taken plentifully in the manner of Drink: Likewiſe Iſſues, ſhaving of the Head, and the application of proper Plaiſters are of great advantage. Of the uſe of which, and the Cautions that are to be taken in the uſe of them, I ſhall briefly and particularly propoſe my own Obſervations.

If the Hectick heat is ſmall, we muſt uſe the Chalybeate Waters

And firſt, if the Hectical Heat be moderate, and almoſt inſenſible, from whence we may conjecture that thoſe fixt Swellings of the Lungs are crude, or at leaſt ſcrophulous, and of a cold Nature, that they are ſtufft with a chalky, fatty, or any other ſuch kind of Matter; the Patient muſt by all means be put upon the uſe of the *Chalybeate* Mineral Waters in the Summer time. And by this means I have relieved a great many of this kind of Conſumptive Perſons for many Years, reſtoring their Appetite, their Fleſh, and Strength, abating their Hectick Heat, and Cough, and giving then a greater freedom of Breathing; and that not only during the time of their drinking the Waters, but alſo all the next Winter. From whence we have reaſon to conclude, that thoſe Swellings, if they are not perfectly eradicated by the uſe of the Waters, at leaſt are leſſened, and the Maſs of Blood mightily temper'd by them. And this palliative Cure (if we cannot obtain a perfect one) is of ſome moment. For although the Patient prolongs his Life in a ſtate ſomewhat ſickly, yet ſtill he lives, and by taking due care is able to do his uſual Buſineſs, and

and to have a moderate Enjoyment of the common Delights of Humane Life. But I have seen some perfectly recovered from an evident Consumption by the use of these Waters, and made sound again without a Relapse; a History or two of whom I shall faithfully and briefly relate in the Chapter of a Hypochondriacal Consumption. But for the use of the *Chalybeate Waters*, I would recommend the following Rules strictly to be observed by all Consumptive Persons.

Rules to be observed in the use of the Chalybeate Waters.

First, in an Acute Consumption, to wit, where the Lungs are evidently putrefied, and where the Fever is advanced beyond the degree of a Hectick; as also in an extream Chronical Consumption, where the Patient is come to some degree of a *Marasmus*, together with Colliquative Sweats, a Looseness, or Dropsie, the Waters must be avoided, which most certainly in this case are not only mischievous, but also deadly. Secondly, those that are sick of a Consumption, though they ought to spend a long time, to wit, the greatest part of the Summer, in the use of the Waters, that the *Crasis* of the Blood, which is almost quite destroyed, may by degrees be restored by the long use of them, yet they must drink them sparingly every day, and in a less quantity than others are wont to do, that is, four, five, or six Pints at a time, lest by too great a distention of the tender Vessels of the Lungs, there comes at length a spitting of Blood. Thirdly, during the use of the Waters, they ought to take more care, lest they get cold, and commit any Errors in their Diet, than many Persons, that are sick of other Distempers, commonly do. Fourthly, it is convenient for Consumptive People to repeat the use of the Waters for several Years in the Summer-time, though after they

have been uſed to them it is not neceſſary to drink them ſo long every Year, as at firſt. Fifthly, neither are Conſumptive Perſons to be purged during the uſe of them, as other Water-drinkers uſe to be. But if they are ſubject to be more coſtive than they ſhould be, it is convenient before they fall upon the uſe of the *Chalybeate* Waters, and after they have made an end of drinking them, to give them the Purging Mineral Waters in a moderate quantity, and to repeat them every three or four days, till they have taken them three or four times. Sixthly, if the Waters do not paſs off in a ſufficient quantity by Urine, much more if they cauſe a Looſeneſs, they muſt not perſiſt any long time in the uſe of them, unleſs we can by Art provide ſufficiently againſt theſe Inconveniences. To take off, and prevent a Looſeneſs, I uſe to order the quantity of a Wallnut of the following Electuary every Night, when they go to Bed.

Take the pulp of Old Conſerve of Red Roſes, Marmalade of Quinces, of each half an Ounce, of Troches of Amber three Drams, Bole, Dragons-blood, of each half a Dram, of London Laudanum three Grains, of Syrup of Myrtils enough to make an Electuary.

To promote the paſſing of the Waters by Urine, they muſt diſſolve a Scruple of the fineſt *Salt of Amber* very well cleared from the Oyl in the firſt draught of the Waters. Seventhly, it likewiſe does very well, during the uſe of the *Chalybeate* Waters, to order their ordinary Drink to be impregnated with a Bag of Pectoral Ingredients; to which may alſo be added ſuch as are proper for the Scurvy and the Kings-Evil, that are mild, if the Original Diſtemper requires it.

Secondly,

Secondly, but if the Hectick Heat be conſiderable, and thereupon the Conſumption quick in its Progreſs, it is better to temper the heat with a Milk Diet, than with the Waters. But about a Milk Diet we muſt obſerve theſe following Rules. Firſt, In the uſe of this Diet nothing muſt be either allowed, or taken for Meat and Drink, but Milk, and things made of Milk (except Bread.) But they muſt take this Food in a good quantity, and frequently, for fear the parts ſhould be deprived of their due Nouriſhment, by reaſon of the thinneſs of it. Secondly, a Courſe of the Milk Diet ought to be continued a Month or two. Thirdly, the Spring is the moſt convenient time of all for this Diet, that is, when the Flowers and Herbs, with which the Beaſts are fed, are freſh.

If the Hectick heat is great, and the Conſumption quick, we muſt rather make uſe of a Milk Diet. The Rules that are to be obſerved in a Milk Diet.

Thirdly, But if there be too Acid a Ferment in the Stomack that turns common Milk into a hard Curd, and makes it uncapable of being concocted, (as it ſometimes happens) from whence their commonly follow Vomitings, Gripes, and a Looſeneſs, it is better to abſtain from the uſe of common Milk, and to endeavour to temper the Blood with Aſſe's Milk; concerning the uſe of which theſe following things are alſo to be obſerved. Firſt, That the moſt convenient time to give the Aſſe's Milk is early in the Morning, ſo that the Patient may ſleep in his Bed afterwards, and then again at five a Clock in the Afternoon. Secondly, That nothing elſe of a different Nature is to be taken into the Stomack either in the form of Food, or of Medicine before the Milk is concocted. Thirdly, The Quantity, or Doſe of Milk for one time is from half a Pint to a Pint, or there-abouts. For the Stomack can neither receive nor digeſt a

If common Milk will not agree, we muſt uſe only Aſſe's Milk.

The Rules to be obſerved in the uſe of Aſſe's Milk.

great quantity of this, as neither of common Milk, but uſes preſently to caſt it out, either by Vomiting, or Stool, and that to the great Prejudice of the Patient. And therefore it is Prudently adviſed by Phyſicians, that the Stomack be by little and little accuſtomed to this kind of Nouriſhment, beginning at half a Pint, and increaſing the quantity every day, till they riſe to a Pint. Fourthly, If the Patient, by reaſon of the Acid Ferment of his Stomack, be ſubject to a Looſeneſs from the uſe of Aſſe's Milk, (which often happens) the Milk muſt be ſweetned with *Sugar of Roſes*, and milkt upon a ſprig or two of *Mint*. Yea, if it be neceſſary, and nothing contraindicates, let the Patient every Night take a Grain of *London Laudanum*, or a Doſe of the *Aſtringent Electuary*, which I have already mentioned. Fifthly, This Milk ought always to be given in its own Natural Heat as it comes from the Aſs. For if it has been once cold, and is warmed again, it is not only made leſs grateful to the taſte, and to the Stomack, but alſo by loſing its Spirituous part, it loſes ſome of its Vertue. Sixthly, During the uſe of the Aſſe's Milk, they muſt abſtain from all other Medicines, (which is a Rule ought to be preſcrib'd as well in every Milk Diet) excepting *Opiates* and *Aſtringents*, if they ſhould be neceſſary to prevent a Looſeneſs, or to quiet the violent Cough in the Night-time. Seventhly, But if a Looſeneſs that is cauſed by the Milk ſhould not be ſtopt with the uſe of *Laudanum*, and *Aſtringent* Medicines; or if a Vomiting, or at leaſt a continual Sickneſs, and gravative Oppreſſion of the Stomack ſucceed to the ſtopping of the Looſeneſs (which are certain ſigns that the milk curdles in the Stomack.) Or laſtly, if there are ſigns of

a Schirrous, and very obſtructed Liver, (which is no rare thing in Scorbutical and Hypochondriacal Perſons in a Chronical Conſumption) then they muſt carefully abſtain from all ſorts of milk: For the uſe of milk is wont by increaſing the Obſtructions of the Liver, to bring the Jaundice and a Dropſie upon the Conſumption, whereby the Original Diſtemper becomes plainly deplorable.

If Aſſe's Milk diſagrees with them too, then we muſt uſe Shell-fiſh, Teſtaceous Medicines, &c.

Fourthly, Therefore in theſe caſes it is better to alter the Blood, and to correct the Acrimony of it with the plentiful uſe of Shell-fiſh, and of Teſtaceous Medicines; as alſo with Jelly Broths made of the Feet of Animals, and drinking a good quantity of Compound Waters made with Milk, of a Capon, a Pig, Snails, and other things of that Nature. Although what I have already hinted concerning the uſe of milk, is alſo true of theſe Phlegmatick Waters, to wit, that as often as the Liver happens to be before obſtructed, a Jaundies and Dropſie are wont to follow upon the plentiful drinking of them. Therefore in this kind of Icterical, and Hydropical Perſons it is more convenient to endeavour to ſweeten the Blood in the manner following: Let them feed plentifully upon River, and Sea Craw-fiſh, Lobſters, and in general all ſorts of Shell-fiſh. Which ſort of Food being taken plentifully, does very much temper the ſour ſtate of the Blood, and correct the Acid Ferment of the Stomack. And of theſe Shell-fiſh may be made by Art very pleaſant Broths, which muſt be given in good quantities.

The Phlegmatick Waters of Snails, &c. muſt not be uſed, where there is an Obſtruction of the Liver.

Take of Craw-fiſh an Hundred, beat them to pieces alive, and then boyl them in two Quarts of Spring-water, adding when they are almoſt boyled enough, two or three blades of Mace, one Nutmeg

Preſcripts for making of Broths.

ſliced, and half a pint of Malaga Wine. Let the Broth be ſtrained for uſe. Amongſt theſe may be reckoned Jellies, and High Broths. As for Example:

Take ſhavings of Harts-horn, of Ivory, of each four Ounces, two blades of Mace, the candied peel of an Orange ſliced; boyl them in two Quarts of Spring-water to a Quart, or a Pint and half. Strain it, and let the Patient, when he pleaſes, take three or four ſpoonfuls by it ſelf, or with warm'd Broths. Theſe kind of Jellies may be made grateful to the Patient's Palate, by adding at the time when they take it, a little *Syrup of Baum, of Cloves, of Rasberries, Oranges, or Lemons.* Though it muſt be confeſt that Acid Syrups do not ſo well agree with Jellies, becauſe they do in ſome meaſure ſpoil their Vertue.

Acids do not well agree with Jellies.

For an Example of a Jelly Broth, take this which follows.

Take one Capon drawn, and cut to pieces, two pair of Sheeps-feet, two pair of Calves-feet, ſhavings of Ivory, of Harts-horn, of each half an Ounce, two blades of Mace, one Nutmeg ſliced, of yellow Saunders three Drams, or half an Ounce. Boyl them all gently in a Gallon of Spring-water *to two Quarts, adding when they are almoſt boyled enough, of right Malaga Wine a pint, the Flowers of great Daiſies, Colts-foot, Maiden-hair, ſpotted Lungwort, of each a handful, of fat Dates eight pair, of Jujubes twelve pair, of Sebeſtens ten pair, of Raiſins of the Sun ſtoned three Ounces. Strain it, and let the Patient take a large Draught of this Broth two or three times a day.* For the farther tempering of the ſharpneſs of the Blood, it is alſo very good for this ſort of Conſumptive Perſons, that are troubled with Obſtructions, to uſe prepared *Coral, Woodlice, Pearl, Crabs-eyes prepared, the ſimple Pouder of*

of Crabs-claws, and other ſuch-like Teſtaceous Medicines, which muſt be taken in a good quantity, and often in a day. As for Example:

Take of the Cordial Milk-water, Carduus-water, or Black-Cherry-water a pint, of ſmall Cinnamon-water half a pint, of prepared Pearl half an Ounce, of Loaf-Sugar two Ounces; mix them, and make a Julep, of which let the Patient take a quarter of a Pint (ſhaking the Bottle firſt) three or four times a day, adding (if his Stomack ſhould require it) an Ounce or two of *Epidemick-water*, *Aqua Mirabilis*, *Dr. Stephens's*, or ſome other *Spirituous Water*. Or,

Take Wood-lice prepared, Crabs-eyes prepared, the ſimple Pouder of Crabs-claws, red Coral, of each a Dram, of the Pouder of white Amber half a Dram. Mix them, and divide them into nine Papers, of which let him take one three times a day in a Spoonful of the Pearl Julep juſt now deſcribed, or of ſome other ſuch-like Julep, drinking a Draught after it. Fifthly, If the Patient ſhould ſeem to be plainly free from Obſtructions of his Liver, and ſo be neither in an Hydropical, nor an Icterical ſtate; but yet the Milk Diet before deſcribed ſhould not be very convenient, by reaſon of a Looſeneſs, and the Acid Ferment of the Stomack, beſides the altering Medicines before deſcribed, for the farther tempering of the ſharpneſs of the Humours, the plentiful uſe of a Compound diſtilled *Milk-water*, *Capon-water*, *Snail-water*, *Pig-water*, &c. may be enjoyned with Advantage, of which I ſhall in the next place give ſome Preſcriptions.

A Milk-Water.

Take the Leaves of Maiden-hair, Colts-foot, ſpotted Lungwort, Fluellin, of each three handfuls, Hyſſop, Goats-rue, Minth, Wormwood, of each two handfuls, Flowers of St. John's wort, Scabious, of each two handfuls, of Engliſh Saffron a Dram, three Nutmegs ſliced, Dates, fat Figs, of each a pound, of Raiſins of the Sun ſtoned a pound; let them be all cut, and ſteep'd in three Gallons of new Cow's-milk, and three Quarts of Malaga Wine, and diſtil them in an ordinary Still, ſo that half of the Liquor may come over: And let all that is diſtilled be mingled, and reſerved for Uſe. If it be a Scorbutical Conſumption, let *Pine-tops, Brook-lime, Water-Creſſes, Tun-hoof*, with others of the milder ſort of Antiſcorbuticks be added in the Diſtillation; and inſtead of *Malaga* Wine put in *Brunſwick* Mum. But if it be a Scrophulous Conſumption, put in three Pints of *Wood-lice* bruiſed with the Herbs, and likewiſe other Ingredients that are proper for the *Kings-Evil.* If you would make this Water not only Alterative, ſuch as may alter the Blood, but likewiſe Reſtaurative, you may add a Capon, or a Pig in a ſecond Diſtillation. As for Example:

Take a Capon drawn, or a Pig with the Bowels taken out, and cut it to pieces, of the Milk-water above deſcribed a Gallon, and diſtill them ſo that three parts of the Liquor may come over.

A Snail-Water.

Take Three Hundred Garden Snails cleanſed with Salt, of common Milk, or rather of the Milk-water before deſcribed, three Gallons; diſtil them in an ordinary

ordinary Still with a gentle fire, until an Acid Liquor begins to come off.

I think the following Magisterial Water of Snails likewise also, which I use to make, is not to be despised, because it may be kept for Use a long time.

Take of New-Milk two Gallons, distil it with Mint, Roman Wormwood, of each two handfuls, to a Gallon. Then

Take of Garden Snails washed first in common Water, and then in Small-beer, half a Peck, of Earth-Worms slit and wash'd a pint, of Angelica a handful and half, Agrimony, Betony, Rue, of each a handful. Put the Herbs in the bottom; upon these lay the Snails and Earth-Worms, and upon the top of all lay of shavings of Hartshorn half a pound, of Cloves an Ounce, of Saffron three Drams. Infuse them in two Quarts of Syder, and a Quart of the best Malaga Sack, and then distil them in an ordinary Still.

The Water of Snails, &c. where it is used, must be drank freely.

These Liquors must be drank plentifully, and that even for ordinary Drink, mixt with an equal quantity of Milk, if the Stomack will bear it, and it will quench the Patient's Thirst enough. If you like the form of a Julep best, it may be given in the following manner.

Take of the Pig-water, or Capon-water before described, a pint, of Loaf-Sugar a sufficient quantity. Boyl them up into the form of a Syrup.

Take of the Milk-water, or Snail-water a pint and half, of the Magisterial Syrup just now described four Ounces. Mingle them, and make a Julep, of which let the Patient drink freely whenever he pleases. Or,

Take of the Milk-water, or Magisterial Snail-water a Quart, of Sugar of Pearl ten Drams, or an Ounce and half. Mix them, and make a Julep,

of

of which let him drink plentifully, and frequently.

If there be a difficulty of Breathing, rather than a Hectical Heat, we must use a Pectoral Mead.

But if it be not so much a Hectical Heat, as a difficulty of Breathing that troubles the Patient, (as it often happens in those that have a Scorbutical Consumption) a Pectoral Mead is more convenient for his ordinary Drink, than distilled Waters, that have a great deal of Phlegm. Of which we have an Excellent Recept in *Riverius*, in his Chapter of a Consumption; and every where else amongst Authors. And therefore I shall add no other Description of it in this place.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of the Cure of an Original Conſumption of the Lungs in the third degree of it, to wit, when the Patient is reduc'd by the Inflammation, the Apoſtemes, and Exulceration of the Glandulous parts of the Lungs, to the ſtate of a Maraſmus, *together with an extraordinary Weakneſs, a Conſumption of his Fleſh, an increaſe of his Hectick Fever, and likewiſe the Addition of a Peripneumonick and Putrid Fever, and the other direful Symptoms, which are wont to accompany the fatal ſtate of a Conſumption.*

A Conſumption in the third degree is very ſeldom cured.

WHEN he comes once to this Third Degree of a Conſumption, the Patient (unleſs the Ulcers are very ſmall, and benign) very ſeldom is cured, or lives long. And therefore though a Prudent and Honeſt Phyſician, when he is called to Conſumptive Patients in this degree of the Diſtemper, ought as much as it is in his Power to mitigate and relieve the Symptoms that afflict ſuch poor Wretches, and

ſhould

ſhould make it his buſineſs likewiſe to preſcribe ſuch Antiphthiſical Medicines, as may beſt anſwer the preſent Indications, and be moſt agreeable to the preſent ſtate of the Patient; yet he ought by no means, though there ſhould be ſome hopes from the abatement of the Symptoms to flatter him, to injure the Reputation of Phyſick, and his own too, by promiſing a Recovery of his Health to the Patient, or to his Friends too confidently: But what good ſoever he ſhould with the greateſt Commiſeration and Diligence do the Patient, yet he muſt always pronounce a Fatal Prognoſtick of his Life, and not ſuffer himſelf to be deceived with the vain hopes of his Friends, and thoſe that are about him: And by this means he will ſecure as well the Art of Phyſick as himſelf from Reflexions.

Therefore a Phyſician muſt be very careful how he promiſes a Cure.

The Intentions of Cure.

The Intentions of Cure in this degree of the Diſtemper are theſe four. Firſt, we muſt take care of the Lungs by the uſe of Pectoral and Antiphthiſical Medicines; and promote the Cure of the Ulcers (if they are ſmall, benign, and curable) to wit, ſo far as the preſent weak and low condition of the Patient can bear. Secondly, the Peripneumonick, or Inflammatory Fever muſt be taken off as often as it happens, together with the direful Symptoms of it. Thirdly, the Putrid Fever ariſing from the Purulent Matter in the Lungs, muſt be relieved. Fourthly, and laſtly, we muſt help thoſe troubleſome Symptoms ariſing from the Putrid Fever by the Colliquation; that the Patient, if he does dye, may at leaſt obtain an eaſie paſſage out of this World.

What we muſt give with reſpect to the Lungs.

As for what concerns the firſt, the Medicines proper in this degree of the Conſumption, are ſuch as are Altering, Expectorating, and Balſamick,

ſamick or Healing; not too hot (becauſe of the intenſe degree of the Fever) but always Cordial, becauſe of the Patient's Weakneſs. Such alſo muſt be made choice of as are moſt grateful, and may be given in the leaſt quantity, becauſe of the weakneſs of their Stomack, and their aptitude to Vomit. As for Example:

Take the old Conſerve of Red Roſes preſs'd through a Sieve, of Wood-ſorrel, Leucatellus's Balſam, of each an Ounce. Mix them, and make an Electuary, of which let him take the quantity of a Nutmeg in Wafers Morning and Evening. Or, let him take three of the Balſamick Pills already deſcribed, twice a day.

Take of the Cordial Milk-water, or the Pectoral Milk-water already deſcribed, eight Ounces, Magiſterial Water of Snails, Barley Cinnamon-water, of each three Ounces, of Aqua Mirabilis an Ounce, of prepared Pearl two Drams, of the fineſt Chalk a Dram, of white Sugar-candy an Ounce, or ten Drams. Mingle them, and make a Julep, of which let the Patient take four or five Spoonfuls after every Doſe of the Electuary, and of the Pills, and likewiſe at any time when he pleaſes, if he be faint.

Take of the Balſamick Syrup (which is very grateful to the Stomack) *three Ounces, of the Tincture of Saffron made with Treacle-water two Drams.* Mix them, and let him take a Spoonful of it often. In a Spoonful or two of this Mixture may likewiſe be given ſix or ſeven Drops of Opobalſam twice a day.

If the Cough, and want of Reſt be very urging, let him alſo take ſometimes, when he ſhould go to Reſt, Twelve Drops of *Helmont's Liquid Laudanum.* But yet when the Patient is in this weak condition, *Opium* muſt be given very cautiouſly, *Sometimes we muſt give Opiates;* *But very cautiouſly.*

tiously, sparingly, and at due intervals; and indeed not at all, unless there be a great Necessity, lest a sudden and unexpected Death should follow, and so bring a Scandal upon Physick. Or,

Take of Syrup of Maiden-hair four Ounces, of Aqua Mirabilis half an Ounce, or six Drams. Mix them, and let him take some out of a Spoon, or with a Liquorice-stick often, but especially when his Cough is troublesome. Here likewise Jellies, and Jelly-Broths are to be prescribed; and indeed in this deplorable state we must fetch our Remedies rather out of the Kitchen, than out of the Apothecary's Shop.

An Account of the Peripneumonick Fever.

As for the Peripneumonick Fever, that always proceeds from a great Inflammation of the Tubercles of the Lungs; and therefore it is wont to return often, and to be renewed; to wit, as often as any new Tubercle happens to be inflamed, either of its own accord, and from its own Nature, or from taking of Cold, or any other Error committed in their management. So long as the Inflammation lasts this Fever constantly remains, and many times puts a sudden and unexpected end to the Patient's Life, being attended with the successions of a Chilness, that comes at uncertain times, and a great Burning, with Watchings, Restlessness, Light-headedness, Shortness of Breath, a difficult Expectoration, and with violent and wandring Pains of the Side, Breast, and Shoulders. But as soon as the Inflammation begins to be changed into an Apostеme which (if the Patient lives so long) commonly happens about the seventh day of the Fever, that continual Inflammatory Fever is succeeded by a Putrid Intermitting Fever, a *Quotidian*, or *Tertian*, which is a certain sign that

that the Tubercles are turned into purulent Matter, and without the healing of them, it is impossible perfectly to eradicate that.

This Inflammatory Fever, as all others of the same Nature requires a very thin Diet, together with a due Government in their Beds, that the Body be kept open, Cordial and Temperate Juleps, Pectoral Apozemes, with Lubricating and Inciding Lambitives must be given plentifully to facilitate the Expectoration, or raising of the Phlegm too much thickned by the Feverish heat, to take off the painful compression of the Lungs, and thereupon to quiet the insignificant and troublesome Cough: Likewise Diaphoreticks, that are a little Opiate, must be exhibited at due intervals, to promote the extrusion of the Feverish Matter by the Pores of the Skin: Also Blistering-Plaisters must be laid on, and external Applications made for the relief of the Brain, and Systeм of the Nerves, which otherwise are wont in a short time to suffer much from this kind of Fevers. Also Liniments, and outward Fomentations, that are Anodyne, to relieve the painful and Spasmodick contraction of the Muscles, and Membranes of the Breast: But above all Bleeding, and that in due time, to a good quantity, and (if there be occasion) repeated, according to the strength of the Patient, and the present Effervescence of the Blood; which it may be a Consumptive state requires more than that which is Robust. And by this means I have seen Mr. *Tibs*, Dr. *Owen*, and our Famous Colleague Dr. *Staines*, and several others, even in their very Old Age recovered from several of this kind of Fevers, returning sometimes twice or thrice a Year (though it has been only to their former sickly state;) and that

What is requisite in this Fever.

Bleeding especially is necessary.

that as easily, and as quickly, as if they had not been at all Consumptive. When on the contrary, it is as well known how dangerous this kind of Peripneumonick Fevers very often are to the strongest Men, let them have never so good a Habit, where due Bleeding, and any other part of a right management has been omitted.

The Peripneumonick Fever may be as easily cured as an ordinary Peripneumony.

Therefore though a Physician must make a Fatal Prognostick of the Consumption it self, (which without doubt is much promoted by every Fever of this Nature) yet he may set himself about the Cure of the Peripneumony with as much hopes (if he be but sent for in time) as if the Patient were not at all Consumptive, and that in the manner following. *Let him be ordered a Diet of Water-gruel, Ptisans, roasted Apples, Posset-Ale, with Raisins of the Sun stoned, and Liquorice boyled in it, midling Beer warm'd with a Toast, and such-like.* But in the first declension of the Fever, let it be of *Chicken-Broth, potch'd Eggs*, &c.

He must likewise (if there is occasion) presently have a Stool procured with a Clyster made of Milk, in which Camomile-flowers have been boyled, sweetned with brown Sugar, which (as often as it shall be necessary) must be repeated. Then let Eight or Ten Ounces of Blood be taken from the Arm of that side where the pain is; which Bleeding must be boldly repeated every day, or every other day, according to the Effervescence of the Blood, and the violence of the pain in the Side, and the difficulty of Breathing, so far as the strength of the Patient will bear it, that the progress of the Inflammation to a ripening and an Apostеme (if it be possible) may be prevented.

In

In the mean time all along the course of the Disease let a Spoonful of the following *Linctus* be given dissolved in four Ounces of the Pectoral Decoction warm'd, every third, or at least every fourth hour. *All the time of this Fever we must use Pectoral Medicines.*

Take Oyl of sweet Almonds new drawn, Syrup of Maiden-hair, of each an Ounce and half, of white Sugar-candy a Dram and half. Mix them very well, and make a *Linctus.*

Yea, if the toughness of the Phlegm, the difficulty of Breathing, and the increase of the Pain arising thereupon require it, and there be no Looseness to forbid it, let new Linseed-Oyl fresh drawn without any Fire, be put in the stead of the Oyl of sweet Almonds, and Syrup of Hedg-Mustard, or of the five opening Roots, in the room of the Syrup of Maiden-hair. Moreover let two or three Ounces of Linseed-Oyl be likewise ordered to be taken by itself every four hours, because it is wonderfully endowed not only with a Lubricating, but likewise an Anodyne Quality.

Take of the clear Pectoral Drink a Pint and half, Tincture of Saffron made with Treacle-water, and Syrup of Maiden-hair, of each an Ounce: Mix them, and make an *Apozeme* for the Use before mentioned.

For refreshing their Spirits, and tempering the heat of the Blood, let four or five Spoonfuls of the following Julep be ordered to be taken. *Something must be done to comfort them.*

Take of the Cordial Milk-water eight Ounces, Barley Cinnamon-water, Epidemick Water, of each two Ounces, of Pearl prepared a Dram and half, of Loaf-Sugar six Drams; mix them for a Julep. At the time they should go to Rest let the following Anodyne and Diaphoretick *Bolus* be ordered to be taken with a draught of the Pearl Julep, but

especially if their Body be too loose, which often happens in this state of the Distemper.

Take of Venice-Treacle half a Dram, of Gascoin Pouder a Scruple, of Syrup of Clove-gilly-flowers a sufficient quantity; mix them, and make a Bolus.

Something to preserve the Brain.

For the security of the Brain, and the System of the Nerves, presently after Bleeding let Blistering-Plaisters be applyed to the hinder part of the Neck, to the inside of the Arms and Legs; and the Cephalick Plaister with *Euphorbium* to the soles of the Feet.

What is to be done when there is a pain in the Side.

For the relieving of the pain in the side, caused by the Spasms of the Muscles, and Membranes of the Breast, let the following Fomentation and Liniment be alternately applyed to the Parts affected.

Take the Roots of Parsley, of Fennel, Linseed, Fœnugreek seed, of each two Ounces, Camomile flowers, Melilot-flowers, of each two handfuls; mix them together, and boyl them in a sufficient quantity of Spring-water, let the Liquor, being strained, be put into a new Ox's Bladder, till it is half full, and let it be applyed hot to the Parts affected, when the pain is violent. When the Bladder is removed, lay on a warm Flannel with some of the following Liniment. *Take of the Oyntment of Marsh-mallows half an Ounce, Oyl of white Lillies, Oyl of Bricks, of each three Drams*; mix them, and make a *Liniment* for use.

For the farther tempering of the Effervescence of the Blood, and the heat of the Lungs, the following Pouder may be ordered with Advantage.

Take of the finest Salt-Petre two Drams, of white Sugar-candy half an Ounce; mix them, and then divide them into Eight Papers, and let one of them be dissolved in every draught of Beer the Patient

Patient drinks. As for the other things, they must be left to the Judgment of the Physician that is with him, to be prescribed as there shall be occasion.

As for what concerns the Putrid Fever of Consumptive Patients, we must take notice, that although they being treated in the foregoing Method, do not dye of a Peripneumony, yet the Inflammation of the Tubercles of the Lungs at this time turning to an Ulcer (which very often happens) at the end of the Inflammatory Fever, there presently arises a Putrid Intermitting Fever, which returns at certain periods every day, or every other day, with a Chilness, a hot Fit, and then Sweats succeeding one another; for the Blood in its Circulation passing now through these purulent Parts, is filled and oppress with Heterogeneous and disagreeable Particles, by which Nature being irritated, is rouzed, and forms a Feverish Fit every day, or every other day, to expel her Enemy. Which Fever (so far as I understand) it is impossible perfectly to eradicate with the help of Pectoral and Balsamick Medicines, without healing (as often as they are small and benign) the Ulcers, from which that Fever proceeds. Yet I have very often found with very good Success the efficacy of the *Peruvian* Bark, in taking off these Fever Fits, at least for a time, being frequently repeated, and at due intervals: So that I have seen the Lives of some Consumptive Persons, that have been lookt upon as deplorable, by the frequent use of it prolonged not only some months, but likewise some years; who, though they were never perfectly recovered from a sickly state, yet being once freed from their Fever by the use of the Bark, could do their ordinary business

A Description of the Putrid Fever

Unless we can heal the Ulcers, Pectoral Medicines will not Cure this Fever.

The Peruvian Bark *will many times do great Service.*

well enough. Wherefore I look upon this as the only Febrifuge in this case, that has hitherto been found out. For although by this means there is only a Treacherous and uncertain Truce obtained, because the Fever is wont to return of its own accord, or upon the least occasion, yet by this temporary suppression of the Fever, the Patient is not only immediately freed from many troublesome and grievous Symptoms for a time, but likewise recovers his lost Strength in some measure, and moreover gains some Opportunity for the use of Balsamick and Pectoral Medicines, which by healing the ulcerated Tubercles, may work a perfect and eradicative Cure of the Fever. And therefore it is very convenient not only to insist diligently upon the use of this kind of Balsamick Medicines at those times the Patient is free from his Fever; but likewise to mix them with the Bark it self, whenever you have a mind to repeat it, in the manner following.

We must mix Balsamicks with the Bark.

Take of the Peruvian Bark beat into a very fine Pouder half a Dram, of the Balsamick Syrup a sufficient quantity; mix them up into a *Bolus*, and let the Patient take it in the Morning, and repeat it every six hours for three days one after another, drinking three or four Ounces of the following *Apozeme* after it.

Take of the Peruvian Bark grosly pouder'd three Ounces, of Balsam of Tolu two Drams, English Saffron, Cochinel, of each a Scruple; boyl them in a pint of the clear Pectoral Decoction to six Ounces. Then strain it, and pour on another pint of the same Decoction, so repeating the Operation thus for three times: And then mix all the strained Liquors together, and add Malaga Wine, the Balsamick Syrup, of each four Ounces. Mix them, and make an *Apozeme*.

Let

Let the uſe of this Febrifuge be repeated in the manner juſt now preſcribed twice a month, or oftner, if it ſhall ſeem neceſſary. But in the intervals the diligent uſe of Balſamick and Pectoral Medicines ought to be enjoyn'd, which muſt be varied according to the Temperament of the Patient, and the Nature of the Diſeaſe under the care of a Judicious Phyſician. If the Belly ſhould be too looſe, a Grain of *Laudanum* may be added to every Night-*Bolus*, or inſtead of the *Boluſes*, a Phyſician may make uſe of Pills made of *Diaſcordium*, and the Pouder of the *Peruvian* Bark, ſo that every Doſe may contain half a Dram of the Pouder. And in this manner I ſaw Mr. *Houghton* an Apothecary's Wife, that was emaciated with a deplorable Conſumption, preſerved a Year or two, and very often recovered from a Putrid Fever cauſed by her Conſumption, by the care of my Famous Colleague Dr. *Tyſon*; as alſo the Wife of Mr. *Walker*, a Merchant of *London*, and Mr. *Blakey* the Miniſter's Son reſtored from a Putrid Conſumptive Fever almoſt to a perfect Health by my care, recovering their Strength and Appetite; and ſo ſeveral others, whoſe Hiſtories it would be too tedious to give an Account of in this place.

The Bark muſt be repeated. Balſamick and Pectoral Medicines muſt be given in the intervals.

Yet I will ingenuouſly confeſs, that I have not obſerved the Bark to anſwer its end ſo certainly and conſtantly in a Conſumptive Intermitting Fever, as in a plain Ague proceeding meerly from a morbid diſpoſition of the Blood: But where I have found it to do little or no good, I have always ſuſpected that the Brain, and Syſtem of the Nerves have been injured, and that the Patient has been more apt to be light-headed, and more ſubject to Spaſms than he had been before.

The Bark does not anſwer ſo well here, as in Agues.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Relief of the Symptoms of a Consumption in the Third Degree of it.

AS Nature is wont to be irritated by the mixture of purulent and heterogeneous Particles with the Blood (to wit, as soon as the Tubercles of the Lungs happen once to ripen, and to become Apostemes) and to endeavour the extrusion of them in the Periodick Fits of an Intermitting Fever, by the Bowels, the Cutaneous Glands, Salivatory Ducts, Stomack, Windpipe, *&c.* by what passage soever there is a vent opened, according to the Nature of the Humours, and the tendency of Nature, together with an extraordinary Colliquation, and a sudden sinking of their Strength: So it often happens, that Nature being then spurr'd on too far by that irritation, does in expelling the colliquated and sharp *Serum* in a greater quantity, than is convenient, form some new Distempers, or at least some new Symptoms, that are more sharp, and more dreadful than the Original Disease it self; such as a Looseness and Bloody-flux, with violent Torture in the Bowels, a Cough, and pertinacious Watchings, profuse and colliquative Sweats, almost perpetual Vomitings, Hiccough, Thrush, *&c.* For the Relief of which Symptoms the Art of Physick may do something, though it should be unable to gratifie the Patient with a perfect Cure.

Nature in her violent efforts makes new Symptoms.

But

But by what means, and by what Rules a Physician ought to help these kind of Symptoms, I shall endeavour particularly to shew in what follows. And first,

Of the manner of Relieving a Looseness, Bloody-flux, and Racking Pains of the Belly.

All the time this Necessity continues Opiate Medicines must be given, not only frequently, but likewise in a good quantity. For as these dreadful Symptoms cannot be relieved by any other Medicine, so likewise, as long as these Symptoms last, as the Cough is commonly more moderate, so their Breath is more free and easie, (as I sometime since observed in Mr. *Lechmere*, Mr. *Chadwel*, and several others) the Matter, which used to irritate and load the Lungs, being then translated to other parts for a time, and thereupon the use of Opiates is not contraindicated, or forbidden by any present Symptom; from whence it comes to pass, that they can bear a convenient Dose of *Opium* without any prejudice or danger.

In case of a Looseness, Opiates must be given.

In this case the Patients will bear them.

As long as these Symptoms last the Patient must abstain from the use of all sorts of Beer, and content himself with the white Drink, and Milk boyled with Water, instead of it. Let him also take every four hours (if it be needful) the quantity of a Wallnut of my Astringent Electuary, already described when we spoke of the use of Asse's Milk; or let him take Twelve Drops of *Helmont*'s liquid *Laudanum* in a draught of the Pearl Julep.

To Correct also the sharpness of the irritating Humour, that is wont to be thrown out by the Glandulous Coat of the thick Guts, and to restore

the Tone of the Parts that are weaken'd by it; let there be a Clyster given every day (as a Fomentation to the Parts) of Chicken-broth, or the Broth of a Sheeps-Head boyled in Water with the Wool upon it; or else this which follows:

Take of Milk wherein Steel has been quenched several times, and in which some Red Roses have been boyled six Ounces, of Diascordium half an Ounce; mix them, and make a Clyster.

When the Looseness is moderate we must give but little Opium.

But where the Looseness is moderate, and where the Pains are not great, but especially if there be a difficulty of Breathing, *Opium* must be ordered seldom, and not much, in any form. Because for the most part upon the giving of it, as the Breast uses to be loaded, so also their breathing and expectoration become more difficult, and their Stomack is apt to be sick with it.

And therefore in this case it is better to keep the Looseness moderate by the use of an Opiate every third or fourth Night, rather than to stop it quite, for fear a greater mischief follows upon it. And likewise after the use of an Opiate Medicine, we must give them Expectorating and Lubricating things more plentifully, lest the Matter which has been some time fixt by it in the Lungs, be too hard for the Patient to bring up.

After an Opiate we must use Expectorating Medicines plentifully.

Secondly, *How to abate the continual Cough, and to help the Patient against pertinacious Watchings.*

As a Looseness, and sometimes also an implacable Bloody-flux, together with dreadful Tortures do often come upon a Consumption, from the Colliquation of the distemper'd and sharp

Lympha

Lympha made by the Bowels, which are wont to ſcour in Conſumptive Perſons, that have a Scorbutical diſpoſition, by reaſon of the peculiar Tone of their Guts, more than in others: As I have obſerved in very many, who have been taken away in the very Flower of their Age by a Scorbutical Conſumption, attended with thoſe Racking Symptoms. So likewiſe many times in this ſtate of the Diſeaſe, others uſe to be ſufficiently troubled with an extraordinary Colliquation by the Wind-pipe, and the branches of it, cauſed by this Putrid Fever; whereupon the Cough that was before dry and moderate, now becomes violent, and continually troubleſome, with a plentiful ſpitting, ſometimes of a thin Rheum, ſometimes of a diſcolour'd, glutinous, and purulent Phlegm; ſo that the Patient by reaſon of his Cough troubling him both Day and Night, is wont to be afflicted with almoſt continual Watchings till he is light-headed.

The Cauſe of the Cough, &c.

Theſe Symptoms too are not to be relieved without the uſe of *Opium*. But in this extream degree of Weakneſs it muſt be allowed with a great deal of Caution, but ſparingly, and not without manifeſt Neceſſity; becauſe from the ſtuffing of the Lungs cauſed by it, there is wont to follow a very great difficulty of Breathing, a weak Pulſe, and a faultering of the Senſes, together with a coldneſs of the extream parts, ſo that the Patient to the diſgrace of the Phyſician and his Art, does not ſeem ſo much to dye, as to be kill'd. Therefore in this caſe I commonly uſe the following *Linctus*, or ſome one of the ſame Nature.

Theſe Symptoms require Opium. Yet it muſt be cautiouſly given.

Take Syrup of Marſh-mallows, of Purſlane, of each an Ounce and half, Species Diatragacanth frigidæ, Haly's Pouder, of each two Scruples, Syrup of

of Meconium an Ounce and half. Mix them, and make a *Linctus*, to be taken out of a Spoon, or with a Liquorice-ſtick, when the Cough is troubleſome, ſwallowing of it gently.

Likewiſe *Aqua Mirabilis*, becauſe it is Aromatick and Carminative, being mixt with Pectoral Syrups, and taken down gently, is proper to quiet the Cough. Or,

Take of the Balſamick Syrup two Ounces, of Helmont's Liquid Laudanum two Scruples; mix them, and let the Patient take one Spoonful every hour, or every two hours.

In this ſtate of the Diſeaſe the Patient muſt ſeldom aſcend ſo high as to half a Scruple or twelve Grains of the *Cynogloſs-Pill.*

Here likewiſe the *Trochiſci bechici*, or Cough-Lozenges, both the white and black, or any others of that kind are good, being to be diſſolved gently in the mouth, and ſwallowed down when the Cough is troubleſome.

Of moderating the vaſt Colliquative Sweats.

From the firſt of the Putrid Fever there are Sweats.

Theſe Sweats are wont to accompany a Conſumption after the Putrid Fever ariſes through the whole courſe of the Diſeaſe, and (as I hinted before) do very much relieve the Cough, Watchings, and other troubleſome Symptoms; and therefore ſo long as they are moderate, they are by no means to be ſtopt by Art, for fear a Looſeneſs, or ſome other more troubleſome and fatal buſineſs ariſe upon the taking away of this Symptom.

Whilſt they are moderate they muſt not be ſtopt.

But ſometimes (when the Conſumption once comes near to its fatal Period, becauſe the colliquative ſtate of the Blood is at this time ſo much increaſed, that ſcarce any new Nouriſhment

ment is united to the Solid parts, or retained in the Maſs of Blood) it happens that theſe Sweats become ſo profuſe, that the Patient, when-ever he falls into a ſleep, does not only ſeem to lye, as it were, in a Flood of Water, which he finds very troubleſome, but likewiſe from a great ſinking of his Spirits, cauſed by thoſe vaſt Sweats, as ſoon as he awakes, he is taken with ſome degree of Swooning.

In which caſe his ſleeps muſt be ſhort, and (if there be occaſion) he muſt be awak'd out of his ſleep, before his Spirits are too languid with long Sweating. *In this caſe their ſleeps muſt be ſhort.*

Alſo temperate Pearl Cordials muſt be given often, and in a large quantity, to which it is convenient to add Chalk, Coral, Dragons-blood, and other Temperating, Aſtringent, and Emplaſtick Ingredients, which may in ſome meaſure lock up and mitigate the fluid ſtate of the Blood. As for Example:

Take the Waters of Tormentil, Plantain, Oak-buds, of each three Ounces, of ſmall Cinnamon-water four Ounces, of Aqua Mirabilis an Ounce, Pearl, and Coral prepared, Chalk, of each two Scruples, true Bole, Dragons-blood, of each half a Dram, of Japan-Earth a Scruple, of diſtilled Vinegar, or Spirit of Vitriol a ſufficient quantity to give a grateful ſharpneſs, of Syrup of Myrtils an Ounce and half; mix them, and make a Julep, of which let the Patient take two or three Ounces every third or fourth hour, ſhaking the Bottle.

Some of the Bed-cloaths alſo muſt be taken off, and let the Patient be removed into a thin, open, and freſh Air; let him always ſleep in a large Chamber, and as ſoon as he begins to be faint, let the Sweat be preſently wiped off with dry Linnen Cloaths, and the Patient be removed into another part of the Bed. The

The pores of the Skin being in this manner once ſtopt, though Nature ſhould make it her buſineſs to throw out ſome part of the colliquated Humour by the Bowels, or any other paſſage, and thereupon new Symptoms ſhould ariſe, yet it is better for the Patient to labour under ſeveral moderate than one very extream Symptom.

Of extream Vomiting in the latter end of a Conſumption.

Conſumptive Perſons are all along ſubject to Vomiting.

Perſons in a Conſumption are in ſome meaſure ſubject to this Symptom through the whole courſe of the Diſeaſe from the morbid ſtate of the Blood, and from the Tone and Ferment of the Stomack being thereupon perfectly deſtroy'd, as alſo from the ſtuffing of the Lungs, and the motion of the Stomack, being inverted by the Cough, and hawking up of the Phlegm that ſticks in the Lungs (as I have ſhewed before.)

Which increaſes towards the end of the Conſumption.

But about the end of a Conſumption this Symptom is ſometimes ſo much increaſed, that ſcarce any Nutriment can be retained in the Stomack; but the Food as ſoon as it is taken down, is apt to be thrown up again by the Stomack.

Though there is not much to be done by Art in the extremity of this Symptom, yet a Phyſician ought to give his helping Hand, at leaſt by prudent Counſel, if he cannot by Medicines. Therefore firſt, let the Patient be ordered to take (though often) but a very little quantity of Food at a time. Secondly, let him be indulg'd the uſe of Food that is moſt grateful to his Stomack, ſo it be ſuch as affords good Juice, and is of eaſie digeſtion. Thirdly, let him (as much as ever he can) keep from Coughing, and deep

deep hawking up of Phlegm that lyes low, and let him likewiſe forbear ſleeping and lying down preſently after he has eaten. But Medicines can ſcarce do any good in this deplorable ſtate.

Of relieving a Thruſh, a pain in the Throat, and Hiccough in the end of a Conſumption.

After the flame of the Putrid Fever is kindled, but eſpecially when the excluſion of the colliquated Matter by the Bowels and other Doors is hindred by Art, it ſometimes happens that Nature endeavours, though in vain, the exttuſion of her Enemy by the Salivatory Ducts, and Glandulous Membrane of the Mouth and Gullet. From whence a continual troubleſome ſpitting for many Weeks ariſes. Secondly, by reaſon of the ſharpneſs of the Humour ſeparated by theſe parts, there follows an Inflammation of the Membrane, not only of the Mouth, but alſo of the Gullet and Stomack. Thirdly, from the Inflammation there follows an Exulceration, and thereupon little Ulcers, commonly call'd a Thruſh, attended with a very troubleſome pain in the Throat; as I obſerved in Mrs. *Wells*, and ſome other Conſumptive Perſons, who were wont to complain of this Symptom more than of the Original Diſtemper it ſelf. Fourthly, and laſtly, a very troubleſome Hiccough ariſing from the Inflammation and Exulceration of the Stomack.

A Thruſh and Hiccough are always fatal.

And theſe Symptoms, as they are wont to be very troubleſome, ſo ſometimes alſo of a long continuance, but always fatal, and ſuch as preſage the Patient's Death; neither indeed do they admit of any Cure: For that the cauſe, from which they proceed, is incurable. However that may be, yet an honeſt Phyſician ought here alſo

as

as much as it is in his power, to give a helping hand with the use of Gargles to be squirted into the Mouth and Throat with a Syringe, which must be made of Cleansing, Soft, Astringent, and Mucilaginous Ingredients: Such as we have often occasion to use in our Practice, the forms of which we meet with every where in Authors, under the Head of a Fever.

But yet for the easing of this kind of pain in the Throats of Consumptive Persons, the keeping the backward Glands seated in the Throat continually Night and Day defended from the external Air with a covering of Flannel doubled, does a great deal of good; from whence there may be more relief expected than from Gargles, or Mucilages.

A TREATISE OF Conſumptions.

The Third BOOK.

Of a Symptomatical Conſumption of the Lungs.

I Call that a Symptomatical Conſumption of the Lungs, which is cauſed by, and depends upon ſome other preceding Diſeaſes. *What a Symptomatical Conſumption is.* For it often happens ſo, that from Diſtempers, and thoſe not only Chronical, but alſo Acute; and that whether they are perfectly cured or not, the Maſs of Blood is ſo altered by the preternatural Ferment preceding, that there remain and lurk in the Blood ſome indelible Impreſſions, and the Seeds of a Conſumption, that will afterwards follow, which by degrees ſhews it ſelf by a Cough, and other uſual Signs, until at length the miſerable Patient being on every ſide environed

vironed with the Fatal Symptoms of the Diſeaſe, is forced to ſubmit to the ſtroke of Death.

Yea, ſometimes alſo it is not only the Diſtemper, but likewiſe the Phyſician himſelf that uſes to be the occaſion of this Conſumption; to wit, when being greedy of Gain, and a little preſent Fame, he does in a perfunctory manner, and without a due Method and neceſſary Evacuations, rather ſuppreſs than root out the Ferment of the preceding Diſeaſe; whereupon the Patient, not being ſo much cured, as tranſlated from one Diſtemper to another, after ſome ſpace of time ſpent in a ſickly ſtate, falls into an Acute and Deplorable Conſumption.

This is the moſt common Conſumption.

And indeed this kind of Conſumption (as far as I have been able to obſerve) is the moſt common of all others; and where we ſee one Original Conſumption of the Lungs, which depends meerly upon an alteration of the Blood prediſpoſing the Patient to it, there are five (and it may be ten) to be found, which proceed from Crapulous and Intermitting Fevers, from the Small-Pox, Meaſles, Scarlet Fevers, a Pleuriſie, Peripneumony, Melancholy, and Hyſterick Affections; from the Kings-Evil, Scurvy, Green-Sickneſs, Aſthma, Spitting of Blood, Stones in the Lungs, and ſometimes alſo in the Kidneys and Bladder; from the *French-Pox*, Gout, ſtoppage of the Monthly Purgations, of Iſſues, a *Gonorrhœa*, and of Old Ulcers, eſpecially ſuch as are Fiſtulous and Scrophulous.

Theſe Conſumptions have a peculiar diſpoſition.

Which Symptomatical Conſumptions, beſides the general Nature of a Conſumption, uſe to have likewiſe a proper and peculiar Genius, or Diſpoſition of their own; and thereupon they are to be diſtinguiſht amongſt themſelves as by particular Marks, and Pathognomonick Signs.

And

And there is some variation to be made in the Cure proportionate to the different Nature of the Distemper. And a Physician can scarcely in the Cure of a Symptomatical Consumption of the Lungs rationally satisfie all the Indications of Cure by the general Method already described, so as to obtain a happy and desired event of things, unless he has in the whole course of his Cure as well a peculiar respect to the Original Distemper, by mixing Specifick with his other Medicines, as to the Symptoms in the Lungs, which are the effects of it, by Medicines that are proper for a Consumption of the Lungs, which we have already described.

Therefore in the Cure of them a respect must be had to the Original Distemper.

Therefore taking it for granted, that the Description and Cure of an Original Consumption the Lungs already delivered, belong likewise to of these Consumptions, that I may not draw out the Thread of this Discourse to too tedious a length by Tautologies, I thought it worth my while briefly to add under their proper Heads those things which may shew the various Nature of these Consumptions, their Causes, Differences, Pathognomonick Signs, and Indications of Cure, by which a Physician with his Judgment and Sagacity may alter the general Method of Cure, so as to be able to accommodate his Remedies to the peculiar Nature of the Disease, and to answer the Indications that arise from it.

CHAP. I.

Of a Scrophulous Consumption.

This Consumption is very frequent

I Shall speak of this kind of Consumption in the first place, because it occurs most frequently in our Practice: For I remember more of this kind of Consumptive Patients that I have cured, or at least have seen cured by others, than of any other sort.

For in a Scrophulous Consumption the Blood, by reason of its preternatural Acrimony, being as it were coagulated, and so unable perfectly to unite the new Chyle to it self, and the solid parts, is wont to throw it in a greater quantity than is convenient upon the Glandulous Parts, where the small Vessels do not run in a right Line as in the Muscles, but spirally; from whence it comes to pass, that the Blood is wont to make a longer stay, and to stagnate longer in these, than in other parts, and so to make a more plentiful separation of the Nutritious Juice in them; whereby it comes to pass, that these parts are apt to swell more, and to grow larger, and harder than others. And what happens in other Glandulous parts, happens also in the Lungs themselves, which are every where full of innumerable Glandules, but of some more conspicuous ones upon the Wind-pipe, and the branches of it, though in their Natural state they are not so easily discerned: So that 'tis no wonder if those that have the *Kings-Evil*, who are frequenlty subject to Glandulous Swellings in

other

other parts, are likewise many times affected with such kind of Tubercles, even in the Lungs themselves, the substance of which is Naturally spongy, and apt to receive the Serous Particles of the Blood, that are here plentifully separated by their continual agitation. And indeed from these fixt Swellings in the Lungs this Scrophulous Consumption is wont to proceed: The most certain Diagnostick Sign of which is to be taken from Glandulous Swellings in the External Habit of the Body accompanying of it, or at least preceding it; as also from an *Ophthalmy* and Scab, that often return, and from other such-like Scrophulous Affections. Though I think I must freely confess, that sometimes it happens so that the Glandules of the Lungs only, and no others are affected with this Humour. In which case there is need of an Experienced and Judicious Physician to find out the peculiar Nature of this Consumption from what yet remains to be spoken under this Head

The Diagnostick Sign of it.

Therefore here we must particularly observe, That these Tubercles of the Lungs (as Scrophulous Swellings in other parts) are either crude and phlegmatick, and so no ways disposed to an Inflammation and Maturation: Or else more hot, which will be seized with an Inflammation sooner or later, according to the present disposition of the Blood, and the different Nature of the Matter that is contained in the *Cystis*. For sometimes, to wit, when the Matter is concocted, and hardned into a Chalky, or Steatomatous Substance, or into the substance of a *Meliceris*, (which it most commonly is) the Inflammation, and the Exulceration, that proceeds from thence, are not only some considerable time before they happen, but likewise when they do, they

The Tubercles here are either Phlegmatick,

Or more hot.

When the Matter is of a hot Nature, the Swellings are apt to inflame.

are very slow, Chronical, and almost insensible. But whenever the Blood, and the Matter contained in the *Cysti's* are of a Nature different from this (which also sometimes, though seldom, happens) the Swellings are very apt to be inflam'd, so to suppurate, and to turn to an Ulcer. And from hence arises the difference in Scrophulous Consumptions: For some (to wit, whenever the Swellings are crude, and not apt to be inflam'd) in a Consumptive state live, though they are crazy and sickly, from their Childhood till they are old, with a Cough that is almost continual, and troubles them both Night and Day, Summer and Winter, with a weight in their Breast, with a difficult, and somewhat Asthmatical Respiration, but yet without any sensible Fever; but upon the taking of the least Cold (to which also they are more subject than other People) they are wont to spit a great deal of Phlegmatick and Serous Matter. These People may be preserved from any dangerous, or fatal Effects of their Distemper, even without Physick, only by ordering themselves regularly in those Six Things, which we call Non-natural. And hence it comes to pass, that they seldom desire the Help of a Physician in this sickly crazy state, being better contented to live Miserably, than Physically. But for my part I do not question, but by the frequent changing of Air, and making choice of such as is thin and clear, and by the long use of *Balsamick*, and *Mercurial* Medicines, of *Wood-lice*, *Chalybeates*, but especially the *Mineral Waters*, and of other Antiscrophulous Remedies, these Swellings may be wasted in the Lungs as well as in other parts, and so the Patient may be freed from a Scrophulous and Consumptive state, as I have often experienced.

A Scrophulous Consumption is curable, when the Tubercles are crude.

In

In the Cure of this kind of Consumption, we must by no means put them upon the use of a Milk Diet; because it is wont to promote and increase the Obstructions and Swellings, that proceed from a Viscous Humour. Likewise those Pectoral Medicines, that are commonly called Expectoratives and Opiates, do no great good in this case, unless it be upon the taking of new Cold, to mitigate the Symptoms that arise from it, as a Cough, Fever, difficulty of Breathing, want of Sleep; and that only whilst all, or some of these do yet remain in a great degree, and violent.

A Milk Diet is not to be used in the Cure of it.

But whenever these Tubercles are of a hotter Nature, and thereupon more subject to a quick Inflammation and Exulceration, this Scrophulous Consumption is very Acute, and terminates in a few Months; and as to the manner of Cure, differs but little from a common Consumption. Neither are we to make any other Prognostick in this than in another Consumption; to wit, that it differs in the event according to the degree and progress of the Disease, as I have said before.

When the Tubercles are hot, the Consumption is Acute.

I have many times observed this kind of Acute Consumption to proceed from the stopping and drying up of a Scrophulous Scab; as the other more Chronical Consumption is wont to seize upon those that have been subject to cold Swellings of the Glands. In the beginning of these more hot Swellings, liberal and frequent Bleeding is for the most part more necessary than in other Consumptions; by which means the Inflammation and Suppuration of the Tubercle may perhaps be prevented, though the incipient Tumour, that is begun to arise, may neither be lessened, nor perfectly wasted. Here also it is

The Occasion of this Consumption.

What is to be done in the hot Swellings.

convenient to add your Figwort, Dropwort, Wood-lice, and other Antiscrophulous Ingredients to the Pulmonary Medicines. Here likewise the Gums and Balsams are very serviceable: As also my Balsamick Pills before mentioned, by a long use of which I have done more towards the perfect Cure of very many of this kind of Consumptive Patients than by any other Pulmonary Medicines. But if these hot Swellings begin once to turn to an Apostеme, Specificks then do no good at all; but such kind of Consumptive Patients must be treated in the same manner as other Consumptive Persons, to wit, according to the degree and progress of the Disease.

When they Apostemate, Specificks do no good.

If the Swellings are of a middle Nature, the Consumption is so too.

But if these Swellings be of a middle Nature, so that though they are apt to be inflam'd, yet 'tis but slowly as they concoct the Matter contained in them into the form of Chalk, into the Nature of a Suet, or a substance like Honey; there follows thereupon a Consumption partaking likewise of a middle Nature; to wit, a Chronical one, that runs on for many Years, and is attended with a gentle and moderate degree of Symptoms, to wit, with a continual Cough at all Seasons of the Year, which yet is moderate, and not very dry: But in the Winter, and when the Air is thick it is more troublesome; a very mild, and almost insensible Fever, plainly of a Hectick Nature, accompanied rather with a lankness than an evident Consumption of the Flesh, as also with a delicate Stomack, rather than a want of Appetite: Which indeed is the most common Consumption of Old Persons, and often occurs in Practice.

These Consumptive Patients with due care rub out a great while.

I have observed that this sort of Consumptive People have not only lived a great many Years, though they have been crazy, but also with due govern-

government and care in those six things we call non-natural, have followed their ordinary Business. But upon committing of the least Error either in the quantity or quality of their Food, or in the time of Eating and Drinking, much more upon a Debauch, and the liberal drinking of Spirituous Liquors, or upon the getting of Cold, they are very subject to Putrid Fevers, and so long as they last the Patient's Life is in danger; and the Lungs being heated suffer more Injury from thence in a Week, than otherwise they would do in a Year. For the Fever that seizes this kind of Consumptive Persons, contrary to the proper Nature of the Tubercles, is Acute. But though in the beginning that, or even the Cough, and other Symptoms of the Lungs seem to be mild, and though the Habit of the Body be never so much emaciated, we must bleed them moderately, and (if there be occasion) we must repeat it at the first Invasion of the Fever; and with all the Medicines we use for the Fever, we must mix such Pectoral and Antiscrophulous Ingredients as are proper; by which means I have with the Blessing of God recovered one and the same Consumptive Person (as Mr. *Andrews*, and a certain Merchant in *Philpot-Lane*, with many others) from several Putrid Fevers, that have returned the same Year; and that without any great mischief occasioned to the Lungs by them. But the oftner these Fevers return, so much the sooner does the Consumption quicken its pace towards a fatal end; and the nearer the Consumptive Person is to this Fatal Day, the oftner are these Putrid Fevers apt to return, arising from the least occasion: The Inflammation of any new Tubercle (as it seems to me) always giving the occasion of this kind

The Cure of this Consumption where there is no Putrid Inflammatory Fever.

of Putrid Fever. But when there is nothing of this Fever, the Cure of this Consumption may be very well performed by observing those necessary Rules, which concern the six non-natural things, and that perpetually: By a long use of the Mineral Waters in the Summer-time, unless there be some great Obstruction of the Liver, and a Dropsie proceeding from it. In the Winter-time by a frequent and long use of my Balsamick Pills, as also of the Gums, and other Balsamick Medicines; but in the Spring, and the Autumn, with a Diet-drink made with Woodlice, Antiscrophulous, and Pulmonary Ingredients steeped in Beer, which must be prescribed for their ordinary Drink. And by these means I have recovered even some, that have been old; but a great many others, as Mr. *Tibbs*, Mr. *Herbert*, &c. I have brought to a better state of Health, than they could enjoy for a great many Years before. Expectorating, and other Pulmonary Medicines are useful to this kind of Consumptive Patients, as well as to others; except *Opium*, which must very seldom be given in this case, and that not without urgent Necessity, because of its fixing and stopping Nature. But these Pectoral Medicines, though they do some good, and give some present relief, yet they do not much promote the Cure of the Original Distemper without Antiscrophulous Medicines, and the other things I have now mentioned.

A History.

The only Son of Mr. *Davison*, an Eminent Citizen, and Merchant of *London*, that had been troubled from his Cradle even to his Youth with a Purulent Scab scattered up and down his whole Body,

Body, and often returning upon him, proceeding from a Scrophulous Habit, being quite tired and uneasie with it in his Youth when he was a Lad, got rid of it with I know not what Repercussive Plaisters and Oyntments, that he made use of by the Advice of some Old Women. Whereupon presently, which was about the Year 1678. he was troubled with a dry Cough all the Summer from Tubercles in his Lungs, occasioned by driving in of his Scab; which nevertheless he wholly neglected for a Month or two, until with a light Inflammation and Exulceration of the Swellings in the beginning of the Autumn, he fell into a Putrid Intermitting Fever, with a loss of Appetite, a Thirst, and other Symptoms of that kind; at which time he desired my Advice, and with the help of the *Peruvian* Bark, of Balsamick aud Pectoral Medicines, given in the Country Air, he seemed to be freed from his Fever, and in some measure from his Cough too. But through Impatience, and his aversness to Medicines, taking no further care of himself, he had a Fatal Relapse into his Fever, and likewise his Consumptive Cough, by which, together with a Looseness, profuse Sweats, a Dropsie, and other Symptoms of an Invincible Colliquation, he was carried off in the middle of the Winter following. In the Body, when 'twas opened, we found all the Lobes of the Lungs here and there bespatter'd with Tubercles of a various magnitude; some that were small, and newly bred; others that were pretty large, though they were crude; but some that were inflam'd and exulcerated, containing in them a purulent Matter, that was of the consistence of Honey. This I took to be a Scrophulous Consumption of the Second sort, that is, Hot and Acute.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of a Scorbutical Consumption.

There is a Colliquative Ferment in all Scurvies.

IN all Scurvies, but especially that which is Saline, the Blood always has in it a Ferment, which causes a great Colliquation, and likewise Secretion of the Chylous *Lympha* in the Glands; but especially in those that are seated about the Mouth, Jaws, and Lungs; and from hence it comes to pass that this kind of Patients, as they are subject to great Sweating, and to make much Urine, so likewise to a continual spitting by the Salivatory Ducts, to a hawking up of tough Phlegm from the Tonsils, and to a frequent Cough, proceeding from a continual spewing out of a *Serous* Liquor by the Glandulous Coat of the Wind-pipe. But this Scorbutical *Lympha*, that is excern'd by the Tonsils and the other Glands, though it admits of some Concoction, yet (as it abounds with a fixt Salt, and is in its own proper Nature glutinous) it has always some toughness; and hereupon the Cough of this kind of Consumptive Persons, though it be continual, yet is not so violent and dry as it uses to be in others, where the *Serum*, that is thrown out by the Glandules is thinner; whereupon there arises a fierce and troublesome Cough from the continual spewing out of that *Serum* by the Wind-pipe; or at least a perpetual tickling molests them from the swelling of its Glandulous Coat, whenever the *Lympha* does not find a convenient passage out of the Glandules; and from hence

The Cough in a Scorbutical Consumption is not violent.

for

for the moſt part there ariſes a violent and dry Cough. From whence it comes to paſs that in a Scorbutical Conſumption, by reaſon of the viſcouſneſs of the Matter that is ſeparated, by which the Coat of the Wind-pipe, and of the branches of it, is rather troubleſomly beſmeared, than irritated, the Patient is not ſo much provoked to Cough, as he makes a Cough of his own accord to bring up the Phlegm that ſticks, and is troubleſome to him; and hereupon this kind of Cough comes near to the Nature of an Aſthmatical Cough, and is attended with a greater Wheeſing, difficulty of Breathing, Conſtriction, and weight of the Lungs, than we uſe to obſerve in other Conſumptions. And from hence alſo a Scorbutical Conſumption proves very Chronical, and never threatens a ſudden Fatality without a ſpitting of Blood, or ſome other great Symptom coming upon it.

But Aſthmatical.

This Conſumption is very Chronical.

This kind of Conſumptive Patients, though they ſpin out their Life to ſome length without any Medicines, only by a due government and care in thoſe ſix things, called non-natural, yet they live ſickly, and upon committing the leaſt Error in their Diet, or taking of Cold, they are wont to be Feveriſh, and to loſe their Stomack.

Every little Error makes theſe Patients Feveriſh.

The Signs, that preſage this Conſumption, are eſpecially two; to wit, a frequent eruption of Spots ſcattered up and down upon the whole Skin like the Miliary Shingles, and a perpetual hawking up, but eſpecially in a Morning, of Phlegm, that is ſalt, and troubleſome, thrown out by the Tonſils, which is many times accompanied with an Exulceration, and waſting of the Gums.

The ſigns of this Conſumption.

But

The manner how it is to be cured.

But in what manner the Cure of this Consumption is to be altered from the General Method I have already described, I shall here briefly observe, to wit,

Opium is hurtful.

First, *Opium* is always mischievous, unless it be upon the taking of new cold, and then only it must be given to mitigate the Symptoms that arise from it; because it makes the Phlegm more tough, and hard to be expectorated.

Inciding Medicines are best of Pectorals in this case.

Secondly, Amongst the Pectoral Medicines, those that are cutting and cleansing, are alway, to be preferred, for helping, and making the Expectoration easie, or at least they must be mixt with others; as *Honey, Mead, Oxymel, Gums, and Balsams, Wood-lice, Syrup of Hedg-Mustard, of the five Opening Roots, the Balsamick Syrup.* But above all, I commend my *Balsamick Pills*, which I have already described, the Use and Efficacy of which in a Scorbutical Consumption I have often had Experience of.

Antiscorbuticks must be mixt with the Pectoral Medicines.

Thirdly, Antiscorbuticks must always be mixt with the Pectoral Medicines, that at the same time, when the flux of colliquated Matter is expectorated with the help of the Pectoral Medicines, the Ferment, that causes this Colliquation, may be destroyed, or at least abated by the Vertue of Antiscorbuticks. Otherwise so long as the Cause is not taken away, the Distemper it self cannot admit of a perfect Cure: But we must make choice of the milder sort of Antiscorbuticks, such as may cause the least heat and disorder in the Blood; as *Water-cresses, Brook-lime, Pine-tops, the Leaves of Tun-hoof, red Dock-roots, Male Piony-roots*, &c. of which a Bag may be made to be hung in Ale for ordinary Drink: By which means the Volatile Salt of the Simples (in which the Energy of the Medicine consists) is better preserved

preserved, than in Apozemes, and so the Vertue of the Medicine is more freely communicated to the Blood, and the Appetite is less injured by them.

Fourthly, Also Steel is very useful in the Cure of this Consumption, unless it runs hastily on to its Fatal Period. If it be an Acid Scurvy, then Salt of Steel will be proper, a Grain or two of which may be mixt with every Dose of the Balsamick Pills. If it be a Salt Scurvy, *Mynsicht*'s Extract, which we have already taught how to give in the form of Pills. But in all Scorbutical Consumptions the *Chalybeate* Mineral Waters are to be preferred before any Artificial Preparation of Steel in the Summer-time (if it be so the Consumption has not reached to the third degree) because they are endued with an extraordinary power, not only to open the Obstructions of the Nerves, and to penetrate and dissolve the Tubercles; but likewise to temper the Hectical Heat in the Blood and Spirits, to quench the Drought, restore the Appetite, and to procure a Briskness and Chearfulness of Mind; the Efficacy of which in curing this kind of Consumptions above any other Method of using Pectoral Medicines, I have very often experienced with great Success. And therefore I shall add at the end of this Chapter a History or two of their extraordinary Vertue in the curing of a Scorbutical Consumption. But the use of them ought to be repeated every Year, because this Chronical Distemper does not use to be overcome with one blow.

Steel is useful.

Especially the Chalybeate Mineral Waters.

Fifthly, If the Patient is costive, the Purging Mineral Waters are here also very useful, as also my Stomack-Pills before described; by the help of which, being repeated once or twice a Month, my

What is to be done if the Patient is Costive.

my dear Father did happily prolong his Life in a Scorbutical Consumption for many Years.

Diversion and Chearfulness necessary for these Patients.

Sixthly, The Patient must recreate his Mind, and all Lawful means must be used to make him chearful: For as this Distemper for the most part takes its Original, so likewise its fatal Increase from Grief, and disturbance of the Mind.

A Milk Diet seldom agrees with them.

Seventhly, A Milk Diet seldom agrees with this kind of Consumptive Persons, by reason of the Acid, or Salt Ferment of their Stomacks; and generally speaking, is wont to disagree as well with Scorbutical, as Hypochondriacal Persons.

The use of Tobacco is to be much suspected.

Eighthly, The taking of much Tobacco is likewise to be much suspected in this Consumption; because not only it increases the Ill and Salt Ferment of the Stomack, by reason of the abundance of Salt that is contained in it (whereby the Colliquation, that is caused by a Saltness, is increased;) but also because that Saline Smoak by irritating the Salivatory Ducts, does promote a more plentiful excretion of the Spittle, and that not only by the Glandulous Coat of the Mouth, but also by the Tonsils, and the whole Trunk of the Wind-pipe, even to the very Lungs; from whence it comes to pass, that as the troublesome hawking up of Phlegm from the Tonsils, so also the Cough of the Lungs is wont to be promoted. Finally, the shaving of the Head and many Issues are here very advantageous, because they conduce very much to the lessening of the quantity of the Serous Liquor, that abounds in this Distemper, the one by promoting a Perspiration, the other by deriving that Liquor to themselves.

A Hiſtory.

Mr. *Hunt*, a Citizen of *London*, that had been a Scorbutical and Hypochondriacal Man, lived almoſt from his Youth to the Seventieth Year of his Age in a Conſumptive ſtate, doing his Buſineſs well enough by taking care, and rightly managing himſelf without the help of Phyſick, till he was above Sixty Years old, from which time being very much emaciated he was very often ſubject to a Catarrhous Cough, that was alſo ſomething Aſthmatical, to a want of Appetite, eſpecially in the Winter, and likewiſe to a light Peripneumonical Fever from a ſlow Inflammation of the Tubercles of his Lungs: From which he was eaſily freed by the Advice of a Phyſician. He alſo had three Sons, all which, though they were Scorbutical and Hypochondriacal by Inheritance, yet they ſeemed ſtrong and luſty even to the Thirtieth Year of their Age. About which time they were all one after another ſeized by the ſame Right of Inheritance with a Conſumption occaſioned by Paſſions of the Mind, and the drinking of Spirituous Liquors; from whence it came to paſs, that by reaſon of their neglect of a due Government, this Diſtemper (which was ſo Chronical in the Father) was Acute enough in his Sons; and (if I well remember) carried them all off before the emaciated Old Man dyed.

One of theſe Sons, to wit, the Eldeſt, after he had continued his Hectical Heat for ſome Years by Cares and Drinking, falling into a want of Appetite, Thirſtineſs, a dry Cough, and heavy Oppreſſion in his Breaſt, committed himſelf to my care.

After

After Bleeding, gentle Purges, and the plentiful use of Pectoral and Balsamick Medicines, he seemed to be something better: But yet his Hectical Heat, Cough, and weakness of Appetite still continuing, I sent him to drink *Tunbridge*-Waters in the open Country Air (the time of the Year favouring that Advice) I expected more from the due use of the Waters, than from the most pompous *Apparatus* of Medicines: For although he did not stay so long as he ought to drink the Waters, nor fortified himself by a due Government, yet he came back after a Month recovered in his Flesh, his Looks, and Appetite; and almost perfectly freed from his Cough and Hectical Heat too, till the next Winter entangling himself with Cares and much Business, and falling to his usual drinking of Wine, he felt a return of all the former Symptoms; of which he could not be relieved by any Prescriptions of the most able Physicians, and so about the next *June* he dyed at *Ebisham*, where he had lived for some time for the benefit of the Air.

His Widdow, as well from her grief for the Death of her Husband, as from other causes, as from taking of Cold in often Watching with him, and perhaps by Infection too (because she lay with him to his dying day) but especially because she seemed predispos'd to a Consumption from a Salt and Scorbutical Habit of Body; after a Month began to have a dry Cough, a very great Hectical Heat, an extream Thirst, and almost a total want of Appetite, together with a squalid Look, an emaciated Habit of Body, a continual Oppression of her Lungs, a Weakness, and all the Symptoms of a very Acute Consumption: So that (if I must speak ingenuously) I did expect that she would within a Month or two

two follow the lamentable Fate of her Husband let her be never so diligent in the use of the best Medicines of the Shops that I had any knowledge of, unless the extraordinary heat of the Blood and Lungs could be extinguisht by a great plenty of some diluting and temperating Liquor, which would obtund the sharp Salts of her Blood, and open the Obstructions of the Nerves at the same time. And therefore after a light Ventilation by taking away a little Blood, I ordered her (because her Body had been costive) *Ebisham* Waters made into Posset-drink, by way of Preparative; and afterwards, that she should drink *Sadler*'s Waters at *Islington*, the extraordinary Vertue of which to extinguish a Hectical Heat, I had that very Year with great Success found in my self, as well as in several others. I ordered likewise a Pearl Julep, her Faintness, and the heat of her Blood and Spirits requiring it. But by reason of the sickness and weakness of her Stomack, she could not take any Linctuses, or Pectoral Apozemes, much less Balsamick Medicines. And because of her great difficulty of Breathing, I was very doubtful of the use of Opiates. And thus for the present I left her. The Purging Mineral Waters she took once or twice, which put her into a Looseness, that held her for three Weeks, (and I knew nothing of it) her Fever still flaming, and her Thirst, Cough, difficulty of Breathing, Consumption, Atrophy, Weakness, and other Symptoms increasing. But she wholly abstain'd from, and was plainly afraid of using the *Islington* Waters, because that was the first Year they were found out, and there were a great many Reports spread abroad of their Mischievous Nature. But one time when I was not sent for, going to visit her

in her Chamber, to know certainly what Effects the *Chalybeate* Waters had had, because I had heard nothing either from her, or from her Brother the Apothecary; I found her in a worse condition than ever before, and her Fever, Cough, and Atrophy, with all the other ill Symptoms before mentioned, so much increased by a Looseness, that was come upon her, and had now continued so long, that she could hardly rise out of her Bed. But at last being prevailed upon by the Reasons, and the Experience that I urged I had lately had of them, she consented to try the Vertue of *Islington* Waters. And in order thereunto, I ordered a Dose of my Astringent and Opiate Electuary to be given every Night for her present Looseness, when it was necessary; and the next Morning always to drink a Quart, three Pints, two Quarts, five Pints, three Quarts of the Waters in Bed; and likewise for her present use a little warm'd, because of the coldness of that time of the Year (for it was past the middle of *September*) and to persist in the use of them a Month, if they did but pass well by Urine, and not work or go off by Stool; and that she should be of good Courage if her Appetite began to return, and her Thirst, with the other Symptoms of her Fever were abated upon the use of them; but if it happened otherwise, that she should let me know it, that I might presently do what I could to help her. But being hindred by a great deal of Business, I heard no more of her till three Weeks after, she and her Brother came to me as I was in my Study, she being now plainly free from her Fever, Cough, and Weakness, and perfectly recovered from her Consumption to a Miracle; and making no more complaint but of too great a greedi-

greedineſs of her Appetite, which yet I promiſed to reduce to a moderation, as ſoon as ſhe had got up the Fleſh, which ſhe had loſt, by the long uſe of good Nouriſhment, the truth of which ſhe found by Experience in a ſhort time. Neither did I preſcribe any Medicine, but only that ſhe ſhould uſe a Diet-drink made with Antiſcorbutick and Pectoral Ingredients the ſpace of a Month for her ordinary Drink. With which ſhe recovered her perfect Health, and is yet alive, and continues well at her Father Mr. *Minakin*'s Houſe, at the Sign of the *King*'s *Head* in St. *Martins*, near *Alderſgate*.

I could give ſeveral ſuch Inſtances of the extraordinary Efficacy of the *Chalybeate* Waters in Curing a Hectick Fever, and an incipient Scorbutical Conſumption of the Lungs, but that I endeavour to be as brief as I can.

CHAP. III.

Of an Asthmatical Consumption.

THough every Scorbutical Consumption is of an Asthmatical Nature, yet by this I especially understand that, which proceeds from a true Asthma as the preceding Cause, and depends wholly upon it. For every Asthma, but especially that which is Humerose, has a tendency to a Consumption; because in this Distemper not only the Lungs are very often straitned, and drawn together in the Nature of Spasms (whereby the Tone of them is wont to be injured and destroyed, and a thick viscid Humour is wont to be prest out of their substance into the branches of the Wind-pipe by that frequent compression, which sticking fast there, causes a Cough, Wheesing, and difficulty of Breathing) but likewise from the previous disposition of the Blood to be viscid and tenacious, the Lungs are almost always knotted from the very beginning of this Distemper; which Knots or Tubercles in progress of time are wont to be inflam'd and exulcerated; from whence there follows a true and fatal Asthmatical Consumption. But this Consumption is to be distinguished from others especially by this, that it is accompanied through the whole course of the Disease with a Wheesing, and extream difficulty of Breathing, because the Humour, that is continually prest out of the Tubercles and substance of the Lungs into the Wind-pipe, and branches of it (as I hinted before) is always thick

Every Asthma has a tendency to a Consumption.

How this Consumption is distinguisht from others.

thick and viscid, sticking tenaciously and troublesomly to the sides of the Wind-pipe and its branches like Glew, and so hindring the free passage of the Air.

But this Consumption, though it is usually Fatal and Incurable, yet in its own Nature it is very Chronical; so that I have seen some, who, though they have been in an Asthmatical Consumption, yet have lived several Years with the help of a due Government, and of a thin Air. The cause of which thing seems to me to be the toughness and viscidity of the Humour thrown out by the Lungs in this Consumption. For this Humour, by reason of the great quantity of Salt contained in it, easily and quickly admitting some concoction, though into a viscid Matter, loses a great deal of its corrosive Acrimony; and thereupon becomes more benign, leaving a less impression behind it upon the Lungs, than where it is sharp, thin, and perfectly crude, and admits of no Concoction at all. And indeed Old Age seems to me to be this kind of Chronical and Incurable Consumption; because all Old People, that are not seized with some Acute Disease, languishing in this manner with a Consumption, do at length come to the period of their Lives, but not without such fore-runners, as a Chronical Cough, a difficulty of Breathing, a wasted lean Habit of Body, and something of a Hectick Disposition. And we need not wonder at it, when the small Fibres of the Substance of the Lungs, by reason of a great Age losing their tenseness, are wont to fall together; from whence it comes to pass, that the whole Substance of the Lungs grows flabby like a Quagmire, from the Nutritious Juice being seperated, and stagnating there; and upon that there is

This Consumption is very Chronical.

Old Age is such a Consumption.

that plenty of viscid Phlegm, a Wheesing, Asthmatical stuffing of the Lungs, difficulty of Breathing, an emaciation of the whole Body, and a Hectical Disposition. And why should I use many words, wh n there follows plainly a Consumption of Old Age?

Neither is a Milk Diet nor Opiates convenient in this Consumption.

1. A Milk Diet is seldom convenient in this Consumption, much less *Opium*, because by increasing the thickness of the Humours, it promotes the difficulty of Breathing, and all the other Symptoms of this Consumption; so that I have sometimes in this case seen the Life of a Patient brought into sudden danger with but one Grain of *Opium*.

A thin Air is necessary in the Cure of it.

2. A thin and open Air is more necessary in the Cure of this Consumption, than in any others. Neither indeed can this kind of Consumptive Persons live long with the use even of the most Generous Medicines in a foggy or smoaky Air.

Inciding Medicines are the best sort of Pectorals.

3. Amongst the Expectorating Medicines the best are such as are Cleansing and Inciding, as *Honey, Mead, Syrup of Hedg-Mustard, of the five Opening Roots, of Vinegar*: We must avoid, at least we must be very cautious in giving Incrassating things. *Balsams, Gums, Wood-lice,* but especially my *Balsamick Pills,* are here of great use: As also *Spirit of Harts-horn, of Salt Armoniack,* &c. whenever the Consumption depends upon a Convulsive Asthma.

What is to be done in violent Asthmatick Fits.

4. This kind of Consumptive Patients are many times taken with Fits of an Asthma to a great Extremity. In which case it is necessary to open a Vein, though the Patient be never so much emaciated; and it is as convenient to give *Riverius*'s Emetick Mixture of equal parts, of Oxymel of Squills, and strong Cinnamon-water,

or

or something of that Nature; and to repeat it often, because it takes off the Spasmodick contraction of the Lungs by its Carminative Power, and by its Abstersive Faculty it cuts and brings up the Phlegm. But yet we must bleed them sparingly, according to the Patient's strength; and we must not give that Mixture of *Riverius*, unless there is an absolute Necessity.

A History.

Mrs. *Sherwin*, a Virgin, that had been for many Years past troubled with an Asthma, especially in the Winter, and when she lived in *London*; with the help of a due Government, of the Country Air, *&c.* she seemed to do her Business well enough, till she was Forty Years old, or there-abouts. From which time she began to be somewhat Consumptive, with an increase of her Cough, and her difficulty of Breathing growing worse and worse every day, her Appetite likewise being spoiled from her Feverish Hectick Heat, which then began to seize her. But with using the *Chalybeate* Waters, my Stomack-Pills, my Balsamick Pills, and other Pectoral Medicines (the Country Air likewise contributing very much) for two or three Years she seemed much relieved, and almost perfectly recovered. But at length upon a Peripneumony arising from an Inflammation of the Tubercles of the Lungs, she fell into a Colliquative Fever, together with a Looseness, Dropsie, Vomiting, profuse Sweats, and the other Symptoms of a Fatal Consumption, and dyed almost in the Flower of her Age of this Consumption, which I call a Consumption of Old Age; and if you had seen her before she dyed, you would have taken her for

an Old Woman. When the Body was opened, we found the Lungs every where knotted, and in many places inflamed, yea, maturated and ulcerated.

The same I observed in Mr. *Baxter*, an eminent Citizen of *London*; who from a Chronical Asthma fell at last into a fatal Consumption, of which he was much, and a long time relieved with the use of Spirit of Salt Armoniack, and Pectoral Medicines, but especially Balsamicks; but after a Year or two, his difficulty of Breathing being very much increased, and having a Looseness come upon it, together with the Gripes, a Dropsie, and other Symptoms of a fatal Consumption, he was carried off. But the Asthmatick Fits (which used to return often) I always took off with the use of *Riverius*'s Mixture (when he once grew too weak to bleed) with very good Success, and with great Relief to the Patient, even to his dying day.

Mr. *Rand*, a noted Apothecary of *London*, rub'd on many Years in the state of an Asthmatick Consumption (though he was emaciated and weak) with the plentiful use of Spirit of Harts-horn, of Pectoral, *Chalybeate*, and Balsamick Medicines, and a due management of himself in those six things, which we call not Natural. And although he was often in a Year subject to a light Peripneumonical Fever from a new Inflammation of the Tubercles of his Lungs, yet with Bleeding, and a due management, and the use of Pectoral Medicines, he as easily escaped: But the extraordinary benefit of Emetick Medicines I often found in him, whenever he seemed to be in very great danger from the increase of his Asthma, and from his loss of Appetite, and great Weakness following upon it.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of a Conſumption proceeding from Melancholy, as alſo from an Hyſterical and Hypochondriacal Affection.

ANY one, that has been but a little concerned in the Practice of Phyſick, may eaſily obſerve, that thoſe that are Hypochondriacal and Hyſterical, do often live a long time in a Conſumptive ſtate, and at length being ſeized with thoſe Symptoms of a Conſumption of the Lungs, that accompany the laſt and fatal degree of it, they dye. The reaſon of which thing may be eaſily gathered from the Principles which I have already mentioned. For in an Hypochondriacal and Hyſterical Affection, the Brain, and the whole Syſtem of the Nerves are always diſtempered; and thereupon not only the Animal Spirits do degenerate into a Windy and unquiet Nature, but alſo the whole Maſs of Blood, which ought to be duly actuated and invigorated by thoſe Spirits, is turned into a crude and cachectical load. And indeed we have reaſon to wonder that a Conſumption does not always follow, where there is ſuch a deſtruction of the Tone of the Nerves, and from ſuch a diſpoſition of the Spirits and Blood. Moreover every one knows that ſome troubleſome Paſſions of the Mind do for the moſt part precede, or at leaſt accompany an Hyſterical, and an Hypochondriacal Affection. From which (as I have already

Hypochondriacal and Hyſterical Perſons are often Conſumptive for a long time, and at laſt dye of it. The Reaſons why it is ſo.

already observed in the beginning of this Discourse) a Consumption is wont oftner to take its Original, than from Cold, or any other Occasion. Besides those that are Hysterical and Hypochondriacal from Fear and Anxious Thoughts, are very often subject to continual Suffocations, and Oppressions of their Breast (which are nothing but Spasmodick contractions of the Muscles of the Breast and *Larynx*, and of the tender Substance of the Lungs) whereupon their Tone being once weakned and destroyed, no Body can think it strange if there often follows a Consumption.

This Consumption is for the most part Chronical, yet fatal.

But this Consumption for the most part is Chronical, because it depends upon a morbid disposition of the Spirits, and Humours contracted by degrees: But yet for the most part it is Mortal, not only because they are seldom frighted at it by reason of the insensible Progress of it, until the Patient, that had been a long time sickly, falls at last into a deep Consumption; but also because the stock of Humours, upon which this kind of Consumption depends, is plainly not to be exhausted. This Consumption may be distinguisht from other Consumptions especially by an Oppression of the Breast, and an unusual Sadness of the Mind; as also by frequent Hysterical Choakings, Faintings, and other Nervous Symptoms.

How it is distinguisht from other Consumptions.

The Cure is almost the same as the general Method. But the Volatile Spirits and Cephalicks must be given more plentifully in this Consumption.

The Cure is not to be altered much from the General Method. Yet I will subjoyn some Observations concerning it. First, In this Consumption, because the great Weakness, and Obstruction of the Nerves require it, we must allow, if not even enjoyn, a more liberal use of *Spirit of Harts-horn, Spirit of Salt Armoniack, Tincture of Castor, Hysterical Water*, and *Compound Piony-*

Piony-water, and other things of that Nature, than we use to do in other Consumptions; the extraordinary Efficacy of which in relieving the Symptoms of this kind of Consumptive Persons, I have very often found by Experience; and indeed without these neither their Faintness, nor Choakings (which are Symptoms that are wont very frequently to affect these Patients) nor indeed the Cough it self (which in this Consumption does for the most part proceed from the *Genus Nervosum*) can be mitigated. Secondly, Likewise the Mineral Waters are very useful in this case, and indeed without *Chalybeate* Medicines, those which are commonly called Pectoral and Antiphthifical, do no good. But they must be put upon the use of this kind of Medicines in time, before there appear any signs of an Ulcer of the Lungs, for fear the Patient should find more hurt than good from them, when Nature is once by degrees reduced to such a colliquative state. Thirdly, As a Milk Diet seldom is convenient for this kind of Consumptive Patients, so neither for the same Reasons (to wit, the weakness of their Nerves, and the preternatural sourness of their Stomacks) do Purges do any good, especially to Hysterical Women, unless they be very gentle, and given in due time. Fourthly, But gentle Vomits, and such as are fitted to the strength of the Patient in the beginning of the Distemper, are wont to help this kind of Consumptive Persons to a wonder, by relieving the Brain and Nerves. Fifthly, The use of *Opium* may not only be allowed by a Physician, but many times it appears plainly necessary, perhaps more in this, than in any other Consumption of the Lungs, by reason of the grievous Spasms of the Stomack, Intestines, and

The Chalybeate Waters are very useful.

Neither a Milk Diet nor Purges are convenient.

Gentle Vomits are very beneficial.

Opiates are many times necessary.

and other parts, which are wont to happen to this kind of Consumptive Persons more than to any others from their pertinacious Watchings, and other Symptoms, by reason of the windy and explosive state of the Animal Spirits, and the delirous activity and working of their Fancies.

History I.

Mr. *Richards*, a Citizen of *London*, that lived in *Southwark*, a Man that was lean, and of a truly dry and cold Temperament (as the Ancients were pleased to speak) somewhat dull and Melancholy from his very childhood, before the fortieth Year of his Age fell into a Melancholy *Delirium*, from which he was perfectly freed by the long use of *Chalybeate* Medicines, gentle Purges, Antiscorbuticks, and Cephalicks; the taking away of some Blood in time from the Jugular and Hæmorrhoid Veins, contributing thereto. But although he was freed from his Melancholy, yet he continued lean, and something thoughtful, and many times too he was troubled with a little, dry Cough, which he had been subject to for a long time. But this he wholly neglected for several Years, till at length being frighted with the loss of his Appetite, with his Thirst, difficulty of Breathing, Weakness, colliquative Sweats, a violent Bloody-flux, attended with horrid Spasms, and other such-like fatal Symptoms of a deplorable Consumption; and being moved with the present sense of his danger, he in vain desired my Assistance, because it was too late. There was one thing very remarkable in this Patient, and that was, that though he could not by reason of his great difficulty

ficulty of Breathing bear the least Dose of *Opium* without apparent danger of his Life; yet from that time that the racking Pains of his Bloody-flux, or Spasms of his Bowels began to be violent, he seemed to be plainly freed from his Cough as well as his difficulty of Breathing, and indeed he breathed as if his Lungs had been perfectly sound again, and bore the plentiful use of *Opium* without any inconvenience, until the Bloody-flux, with the racking Pains being once overcome with the long use of it, his difficulty of Breathing, together with the Cough that was as troublesome as before, returned, as if that Spasmodick Vellication of the Bowels had been presently changed into a constriction of the Lungs and Membranes of the Breast. But in the alternate Succession of the aforesaid Symptoms, one might easily see the Patient declining every day, and this Chronical Consumption, that had been neglected, hastening to its fatal end, of which I undertook only a palliative Cure.

History 2.

Mr. *Pratt*, who lived in *Pater-Noster-Row*, being lean and Melancholick from his Childhood, of a cold and dry Constitution, and often subject to a Spasmodick pain of his Stomack; after he had been married a Year or two fell into a Consumption of his Lungs, but yet a slow and Chronical one, accompanyed with a dry Cough, an Oppression and Constriction of his Lungs, as also a loss of Appetite; but yet without any remarkable degree of a Fever, or quickness of Pulse, by reason of the Natural coldness of his Constitution. For a Year or two he did not take

take care to eradicate the Disease, contenting himself with I know not what Receipts of some Old Women to help his Cough; till at length having some apprehension of the approaches of Death from the total loss of his Appetite, from a difficulty of Breathing, a Cough, Fever, and an universal Colliquation coming upon it, he begged my Advice, when it was too late, at the very beginning of the Winter. Because of his difficulty of Breathing, and his troublesome Cough, I sent him into the Country Air, and put him upon the use of Pectoral and Balsamick Medicines; whereupon he seemed for a Month or two to be better as to his Appetite, Cough, and Breathing. But being weary of the Country, he came up again to *London*: From which time all things grew worse, but above all his Cough and difficulty of Breathing were violent upon him, so that he was troubled almost with continual Watchings. At length of a sudden, and without any evident cause, he was taken with dreadful Spasmodick Pains, like a Cholick of the Stomack, his Body being at the same time lockt up, so that every moment he seemed as if he were a dying with the violence of the pain. From which time he was perfectly freed from his Cough and difficulty of Breathing, fetching his Breath as well as if his Lungs were no ways affected. And therefore, the violent Symptom requiring it, I gave not only Opiates, but also Cathartick, in a good quantity for several days; till at length with the use of Liniments, Fomentations, Clysters, Purges, and especially the frequent repetition of Opiates, those racking Spasms (which towards the latter end were inconstant, moving from one side to the other, and going from his Stomack to the Intestines, as being truly

of

of a Hypochondriacal, or Spasmodick Nature) were plainly overcome. After this for some Weeks he continued free from the Spasmodick Constriction and straightness of his Lungs, and recovered something of an Appetite, and of his Strength; so that I my self began to have a great deal of hopes that he would quickly recover his Health, and thought him to be rather Hypochondriacal, than Consumptive; till at length the unexpected return of his difficulty of Breathing, Cough, and the other fatal Symptoms of a Consumption (of which he dyed at last) obliged me to alter my Opinion.

History 3.

Mrs. *Walker*, a Merchant's Wife of *London*, about the Thirtieth Year of her Age becoming Hypochondriacal and Hysterical from many preceding Cares, and Passions of her Mind, at length fell into a Hectick Fever, with a Cough, difficulty of Breathing, pain in her Side, and Looseness; which made her extreamly weak, and brought her almost into the state of a *Marasmus*. But with the diligent use of Opiates, Hysterick Juleps, the *Peruvian* Bark, of Pectoral Antiscorbutick, and *Chalybeate* Medicines, and repeated Bleeding, she was restored even in the Winter-time to a state of Health, beyond the expectation of all her Friends. But two or three Years after, upon the Death of her only Daughter, and her Grief which was occasioned by it, she relapsed. From which she recovered again in the Spring with the timely use of *Islington* Waters, and the benefit of the Country Air. From which time she gave her self to the drinking of too much Brandy, and other Spirituous Liquors,

to

to keep up her Spirits; with the liberal drinking of which, as she plainly lost her Appetite, so at length, that is, after a Year or two, she had a fatal return of her Consumption that Winter, together with a flaming Hectick Fever, a continual Cough, difficulty of Breathing, Looseness, and indeed an universal Colliquation. Neither would she ask my Advice until she was hardly able, by reason of her Weakness, to turn her self in her Bed. However with the use of the *Peruvian* Bark, and of Opiates, I plainly freed her from her Fever and Looseness. But yet the other Pulmonary Symptoms increasing every day, she was carried off by the Consumption returning this third time.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of a Conſumption cauſed by ſpitting of Blood.

THAT common ſaying amongſt Phyſicians, That Purulent Matter follows Blood, ſeems to have had its Original from hence, becauſe an Apoſteme of the Lungs, or a Pulmonary Conſumption is wont to follow a ſpitting of Blood ſooner and oftner than any other Diſtemper. Which whether it happens from the *Craſis* of the Blood being ſpoyled by too great a loſs of it, or from a plentiful Flux of the Humours from the whole Habit of the Body into the tender Lungs, where they have a free paſſage; or from the Putrefaction of the clotted Blood, that remains in the Lungs after the ſpitting of Blood; or laſtly, from ſome Ulcer following upon the eroſion of the Veſſels, I do not well know. But this we may almoſt always obſerve, that where a ſpitting of Blood has preceded, a Conſumption of the Lungs is wont to follow. And therefore a Prudent and Honeſt Phyſician, when he is called to one that ſpits Blood, ought not only to take care of his own Reputation, and the Honour of Phyſick, by making a Prognoſtick at firſt of the Conſumption that is like to follow, but alſo as far as he is able by neceſſary Cautions, and proper Medicines, to prevent this fatal event of the ſpitting of Blood, as well as to Cure the preſent Diſtemper, at leaſt not to do or attempt any thing in the

A Conſumption uſually follows a ſpitting of Blood.

A Phyſician muſt endeavour to prevent the one, as well as to cure the other.

Cure of it, that may make the Patient more subject to a Consumption.

We must distinguish between an Accidental and an Habitual Hæmoptoë.

And here it is necessary to distinguish between an Accidental and Habitual Spitting of Blood. I call that Accidental, which proceeds meerly from some Accident; as from Hollowing, or speaking too loud, Exercise, or a violent Cough, from the suppression of some usual Hæmorrhage, from Chalky Stones, that are bred in the Lungs themselves, or from Pins, and any other things that slip down into them from without. That I call Habitual, which depends upon a vitiated, sharp, and fermenting Disposition of the Blood; so that the stock and fuel of the Disease always lurks within. That Accidental spitting of Blood, as it seldom returns when it is cured after letting of Blood, a due ordering of their Diet, and the use of proper Medicines; so though the Bleeding has been profuse and plentiful, yet it seldom terminates in a Consumption; but the Patient being once by degrees freed, with a due management recovers his fresh Colour, and gets his Flesh, as if he had never been troubled with such a Flux, as it usually happens after an immoderate Flux of the *Menses*, and other Fluxes of that kind. But an Habitual spitting of Blood, as it depends upon an intestine motion of the Blood, that is in a Ferment, and upon the Acrimony of it, by which it opens the Vessels; so it has always a Fever joyned with it, together with a quick Pulse, and an Urine that is something high-colour'd, and is likewise wont to return after uncertain intervals; to wit, whenever the inconstant Feverish Fit returns, from the force of the Blood, that is in a violent Ferment, the tender Vessels of the Lungs being not able to endure this quick motion of the Blood, are wont one time

An accidental Hæmoptoë seldom ends in a Consumption.

An Habitual Hæmoptoë has always a Fever joyned with it.

time after another to be opened, and then there follows a great expenſe of that red Liquor, which for the moſt part does not ſtop till the Feveriſh Orgaſm, and the Inteſtine motion of the Blood depending thereupon, perfectly ceaſes, either with the help of Art, or of its own accord, at leaſt with the leſſening the quantity of the Liquor. And then too there is but a treacherous Truce, until the next time that the Veſſels happen to be too much diſtended by the preternatural motion of the Blood in the next Fit. And indeed this is that fatal ſpitting of Blood, which as it is hard to Cure, and often comes unexpectedly upon the Patient, ſo it has at firſt a Putrid, then a Hectick Fever joyned with it, which is wont very often to terminate in an Incurable and Fatal Conſumption.

And often ends in a Conſumption.

The Grand Antidote for this ſpitting of Blood is the *Peruvian* Bark, the extraordinary Vertue of which both to extinguiſh the preſent Feveriſh Efferveſcence of the Blood, and to prevent the return of it, I have always experienced with very great Succeſs, whenever I have made uſe of it for this purpoſe. And as it quickly and ſafely ſtops the preſent ſpitting of Blood, and likewiſe prevents it for the future; ſo I never ſee a ſpitting of Blood that was cured this way, end in a Conſumption. For the Flame being in this manner perfectly put out, and the Fever once overcome, the Blood uſes preſently to recover its Natural ſtate, ſo that there cannot remain the leaſt ſuſpicion of a Conſumption following upon it. For a Conſumption, that uſes to follow a ſpitting of Blood, does not ſeem to have its Original ſo much from the breaking or gaping of a ſmall Veſſel, as from the inordinate and Hectical ſtate of the Blood. And therefore

The Peruvian Bark is the great Remedy in this Hæmoptoë.

An Hæmoptoë cured this way does not end in a Conſumption.

though a Consumption usually follows a spitting of Blood, when 'tis cured the common way, that is, by frequent Bleedings, Emplastick Medicines, Opiates, *&c.* which rather hinder the Eruption of Blood by force, than alter the internal state of the Blood: Yet no one will wonder if the Hectick Flame remaining within does at length throw the Patient into a Consumption; yet whenever the present Orgasm of the Blood is so overcome by repeated bleeding, the use of the Temperate Juices, of Astringent and Opiate Juleps and Electuaries, and other things of that Nature (which are to be found in another place in the Chapter of a *Hæmoptoë*, or spitting of Blood) that we have an Opportunity to give the Bark totally to extinguish the Feverish flame, and to open the Obstructions, which otherwise might occasion a new Effervescence, we commonly make not only for the present a palliative but a truly, eradicative, and perfect Cure, without the least danger of the return of the spitting of Blood, or of a Consumption following upon it. For the flame being in this manner perfectly extinguisht, the Blood is reduced to its Natural Motion and *Crasis*, whereupon the Appetite presently returns, the Lungs recover their Natural Motion and Temperament, and the loss of the Blood is by degrees repaired; until at length the Patient obtains, though by little and little, his former strong and lusty state, and it may be a better than he had before, without the least degree of a Hectick Heat, or the danger of a Consumption following upon his Bleeding.

In this Consumption there are Tubercles in the Lungs.

But if either through the Physicians neglect, or from the peculiar Constitution of the Patient, or from any other cause, it so happens, that a Consumption of the Lungs succeeds to a spitting of

of Blood, the whole Lungs, or at leaſt one of the Lobes, being ſtufft with hard Glandules ſcattered every where up and down in the form of Tubercles, is much ſwelled. And theſe Tubercles are wont ſooner or later to turn to Apoſtems, and to be ulcerated, and from thence this Conſumption has its Original, and Progreſs too. But according to the Magnitude and Number of theſe Tubercles, and their diſpoſition to a more quick or ſlower putrefaction, this Conſumption is very various; ſometimes ſlow, and Chronical; ſometimes quick and Acute, yea, very Acute. For as I have ſeen ſome Perſons that have been in a Conſumption (who have been ſubject to a frequent ſpitting of Blood from the leaſt occaſion) live ſeveral Years with due care and management; doing likewiſe their buſineſs, though they have been ſickly, with a Cough, and ſome degree of a difficulty of Breathing; to wit, whenever the Tubercles of the Lungs happen to be few, ſmall, and not apt to putrefie; or whenever the ſpitting of Blood proceeds rather from Stones that are bred in the Lungs, or from ſome external Accident, than from an Inteſtine Hectical motion of a hot Fermenting Blood: So I have obſerved others that have been carried off with a quick Death within the ſpace of a few Weeks; and that has been when great Hæmorrhages have often returned upon the Patient from the Commotion of the Blood boyling vehemently, or when the Tubercles have partaked of ſome malignant Nature, and ſo have been quickly putrified.

The Nature of which makes the Conſumption various.

But whatever this Hæmoptoïcal Conſumption has been, whether Acute or Chronical, it has from the common Obſervation of Phyſicians been always reckoned amongſt the number of

This Conſumption is one of the moſt fatal.

the most Fatal and Incurable Consumptions. But the more Acute it is, the more dangerous it is wont to be. For as the spitting of Blood is the first occasion of this Consumption, so likewise it is very apt in the Progress of the Distemper to return often, either from the taking of the least Cold, or the committing any Error in their Diet, from Passions of the Mind, &c. And every new spitting of Blood pushes on the Consumption to a Fatal end. So that I have often seen this kind of Consumptive Persons in the very *Hæmoptoë*, when it has returned upon them, spit out their very Lives in that stream of Blood which has come from them. And therefore in the Cure of this Consumption, Cleansing, Inciding, and Lubricating Remedies must be avoided, or at least used very cautiously; as also hot and penetrating Liniments and Plaisters, that are outwardly applyed to the Breast, to promote Expectoration. But we must (at least in the beginning of this Disease, and after every new spitting of Blood) rather insist upon the use of Alterative, Incrassating, Agglutinating, and Opiate Medicines; as also a *Milk Diet, Solid or Liquid Laudanum, Syrup of Meconium, Syrup of Purslane, of Marsh-Mallows, of Ground-Ivy* (the plentiful use of which in a Consumption from spitting of Blood I would recommend above all other things) *Bole-Armenack, Coral, Dragons-Blood, Lapis Hæmatites, Gordonius Troches, Troches of Amber:* Of which Electuaries may be made, and Compound Medicines in other forms for the Patient to take. Of which it will be proper to speak more largely in the Chapter of an *Hæmoptoë*.

Inciding and Lubricating Medicines are not good in the Cure.

But Incrassating, &c.

But in the Progress of the Disease, when once there is not so much fear that the spitting of Blood will return, we may more safely answer the

the Indications of the Diſeaſe, with the cautious uſe of Lubricating and Expectorating Medicines. Likewiſe Balſamick Medicines are here of great uſe; as the *Balſamick Syrup, Balſam of Tolu, Capivi, of Peru, Leucatellus Balſam, or Opobalſam, Balſam of Sulphur Terebinthinate, and Aniſate, my Balſamick Pills,* and other forms compounded of theſe Medicines, the manner of giving of which is to be learnt from what has been already ſaid in the General Method of Cure. Alſo Iſſues, and ſhaving of the Head are very Advantageous in this Conſumption.

The beſt thing in the Cure of this Conſumption is the Peruvian *Bark.*

But above all, I muſt, from the long Experience I have had of it, commend in this Acute and Dangerous Conſumption from a ſpitting of Blood, the uſe of the *Peruvian* Bark, to be given in that form, which is moſt grateful to the Patient. By the frequent and ſufficient repetition of which we may expect to temper the Feveriſh Heat, and to ſuppreſs the Inteſtine motion of the Blood, and ſo conſequently to prevent the return of the *Hæmoptoë*, and the Progreſs of the Conſumption, more than with a Milk Diet, with Aſſe's Milk, or a Magazine of Pectoral Medicines.

In this Conſumption when 'tis ſlow the Chalybeate Waters are proper.

But in a Chronical and ſlow Conſumption, or rather a Conſumptive ſtate from a ſpitting of Blood, (where the heat of the Blood from the Inteſtine motion of it does not uſe to be ſo great) the *Chalybeate* Mineral Waters are of great uſe, if they are drank every day for a long time, but yet in a ſmall quantity. They muſt be order'd to be taken thus in a little quantity, and to be drank leiſurely every day, leſt a too great and ſudden diſtention of the tender Veſſels of the Lungs, cauſed by drinking a great quantity of Water at a time, ſhould bring a freſh ſpitting of Blood. But the ſmall

quantity of Water that is drank at a time must be made up by the length of the time that is every Year designed for the drinking of those Waters. By which means likewise the Blood perhaps is more tempered and altered, than by drinking a great quantity in a shorter space of time.

History 1.

One of the Masters in the Hospital of *Bridewell*, that had committed himself to my care a Year or two before, when he was sick of a Pestilential Fever, that went up and down attended with Swellings in the Groin, and Carbuncles (from which Venom perhaps his Blood had not yet sufficiently purged it self) fell about the 35*th*. Year of his Age, and in the Year 1669. into a very great *Hæmoptoë*, by which he had lost a great deal of Blood before he sent for me. But with Bleeding, Ligatures, Astringent Juleps and Electuaries, a Milk Diet, and a due Government in all things, the Flux was perfectly stopt. But yet he still continued Hectical, and was troubled with an ugly Cough. And therefore I ordered him to continue his Milk Diet, and to take a Dose of an Opiate Electuary every Night. And to prevent a Consumption, that was like to follow, I directed an Issue to be made in his Arm, his Head to be shaved, and the Cephalick Plaister to be laid upon it; and that the Patient should be sent into the Country, and into an open Air, and that he should use there the Temperating Juices; to wit, of Plantain and Nettles, at least twice a day, with several other things, which it is not necessary now to give a particular Account of. But notwithstanding all this, his Hectick Heat, and his Cough continually troubled

troubled him, and his ſpitting of Blood returned by uncertain periods, at leaſt twice a Month, to wit, about the Full and the New of the Moon, from the heat and motion of the Blood being increaſed, the Patient continually waſting more and more with the Fever that followed him, till at length being brought into an univerſal Colliquative ſtate with a Looſeneſs, Sweats, a Dropſie, *&c.* and being troubled with a very great difficulty of Breathing, he ended his Life. For at that time I did not know the Vertue of the *Peruvian* Bark, to take off this Hectick Fever, from which that Fatal Colliquation did proceed. The Body being opened, I found the Lungs ſtrangely ſwelled, and every where in all the Lobes full of Tubercles, ſome of which were crude, others ulcerated.

Hiſtory 2.

Mr. *Rookes* in *Cheapſide*, being about Forty Years old, from a multitude of Cares and hard Drinking ſeemed to be continually Hectical for Ten Years together, being ſtufft in his Lungs, troubled with a Cough, and enclin'd to a Conſumption: And from extraordinary Exerciſe, and exceſs in drinking of Spirituous Liquors, he fell into a very great ſpitting of Blood, accompanyed with a difficulty of Breathing, and a pain in his Breaſt: And the poor Man had it return'd upon him, and that conſiderably, every day, or every other day, for at leaſt three Weeks, and that notwithſtanding frequent Phlebotomy, the uſe of a Milk Diet, of the Tempering Juices, Aſtringent and Opiate Electuaries, and Juleps, and likewiſe of the Royal Styptick Water. But at length when I had obſerved not only by the quick-

quickneſs of his Pulſe, and the high colour of his Urine, but alſo from his very Temper, that a remarkable Fever returning often by uncertain intervals always brought on his ſpitting of Blood, I gave him a Dram of the *Peruvian* Bark in a convenient Draught every four hours: To which I always took care there ſhould be more or leſs *Laudanum* added, according as he could bear it. With the uſe of which I found his Fever taken off without any more to do, and without any return of his ſpitting of Blood, and that his Urine was come to its Natural colour. I ordered the repeating of the *Cortex* again and again at due intervals, and took care he ſhould have Nouriſhment agreeable to his Appetite (which now was better than it was before he ſpit Blood) and that he ſhould have the benefit of the Country Air. Whereupon (which is ſtrange to be told) without any other help, he came to have a more firm and ſtrong Habit of Body, his Lungs more free, his Breathing more eaſie, the heat of his Blood leſs, and his Cough too more moderate now for a Year and half, than he had found for ſeveral Years before his ſpitting of Blood; his Friends admiring at it, who expected he would certainly dye of a Conſumption in a little time after his ſpitting of Blood. Which was ſo much the more wonderful, becauſe he continued as careleſs in the management of himſelf in the ſix non-natural things, as he uſed to be before his *Hæmoptoë*, which neglect he at laſt paid for with the loſs of his Life. For with the very great Errors he had lately committed, he fell into a new Conſumption, and that a threatning and fatal one, which at length carried him off. His Body being opened after he was dead, we found the ſubſtance of the

the Liver compact and cloſe, as if it had been parboyl'd, all the Lobes of the Lungs moſt filthily ting'd with a black colour (which perhaps was occaſioned by his continual ſmoaking of Tobacco) and every where full of a world of Tubercles, of which ſome that were larger, were full of purulent Matter, others of a ſubſtance like Honey. But the greateſt part of the leſſer ones, which were diſpoſed in Cluſters, and like Grape-ſtones through all the ſubſtance of the Lungs, contained a Steatomatoſe Matter in them. All the Glandules that were ſeated near the Windpipe were very black, and had in them a Liquor of a black, or dark colour, ſuch as I have uſually obſerved Scorbutical and Hypochondriacal Perſons, that have been Conſumptive, to hawk up out of their Throats in a Morning, eſpecially thoſe that have been uſed to ſmoak much Tobacco, or have lived in an Air that has been filled with the ſmoak of Coals.

The Preſcription for the Antipyretick Draught, which I ordered for Mr. *Rooks*, was this.

Take of the Waters of Tormentil, of Plantain, of each an Ounce, Barley Cinnamon-water, Syrup of Myrtils, of each half an Ounce, of diſtilled Vinegar half a Dram, of the Jeſuits Pouder a Dram. Mix them, and make a Draught, to be given every four hours, till he has taken eight Draughts. Once or twice a day I added a Grain of *London Laudanum* to the Draught.

In the ſame manner I cured Mrs. *Martin*, an Old Woman, almoſt Seventy Years old; a Goldſmith in St. *John's*, Mr. *Bloomer's* Daughter, and a great many others, of a conſiderable, and (to all appearance) a fatal *Hæmoptoë*. All which continue well, as yet, without any return of their ſpitting of Blood, or a Conſumption following upon

upon it, and are able to go about their Business, whose Histories perhaps it would be too long and tedious to give a particular Account of.

History 3.

Mr. *Luff*, the Son of that Reverend Divine which I have already mentioned, living in *Milk-street*, after he had married a Virgin that was Consumptive (and as I remember, dyed within a Year after she was married, with an universal Colliquation, and the other Symptoms of a fatal Consumption of the Lungs) a few Months after her Death fell into a Consumption (as I judg'd) by Contagion. To which fatal Disease an *Hæmoptoë* prepared the way, with which he was suddenly taken at *Exeter*, and that in the Winter-time, and he lost a great deal of Blood. But as soon as his spitting of Blood was stopt by Phlebotomy, a Milk Diet, and Incrassating Medicines, and he had recovered his strength in some measure, being dismist by his Country Physician, within a Fortnight (which was much sooner than was fit) he came back to *London* on Horse-back, and presently sent for me. But alas! how much was he changed from what he was before! I found the poor Patient very Feverish, and always Coughing, and extreamly wasted with a Colliquation, that was now begun, and troubled with a streightness and pains in his Breast. I found it to be a mixt Fever, partly Peripneumonick, from a new Inflammation of some of the Tubercles; partly Putrid, from the purulency of other Glandules, which had begun so soon to be ulcerated. I judged the Distemper to be a very Acute Consumption of the Lungs from a spitting of Blood, which as it was con-

contracted by Infection, ſo it was rendred more haſty and violent by his ill Government in his Journey, and his return into our Air, that is filled with the ſmoak of Coals. The violence of the Pain, and Fever requiring it, I preſently ordered a Vein to be opened, but I took away but a little Blood, becauſe of the Conſumption and Colliquation that was upon him. Then I endeavoured at leaſt to ſtave off this haſty Ruin for ſome time with temperate Juleps and Opiates, and all ſorts of convenient Pectoral Medicines, Bliſters, and a due management in all things. But all theſe things were to no purpoſe; for within three or four Weeks he departed this Life, with all the Symptoms of a very Acute Conſumption of the Lungs.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of a Consumption caused by Stones bred in the Lungs, and by things slipt down into them from without, as also by the Stone in the Kidneys and Bladder.

Chalky stones are often bred in the Lungs.

I Have often observed Chalky Stones bred in the Lungs, which when they have been Angular, and disturbed with the shaking of the Lungs, are wont to tear the tender substance of those parts; from whence have arisen a violent and dry Cough, and a horrible pain in the Breast, like that in a Pleurisy and Peripneumony; sometimes also an *Hæmoptoë* with a considerable Flux of Blood, and from thence Ulcers, with the usual Signs of a Consumption of the Lungs. Therefore when these horrid Pains happen with an *Hæmoptoë* about the beginning of a Consumption, we may justly suspect it to be a Consumption from Stones in the Lungs. Although we cannot pronounce any thing certain of this thing, till a Stone or two have been cough'd up. For it often happens that these Stones passing by degrees through the Lungs, do at length get into the branches of the Wind-pipe, by which they are cough'd up, and that seldom without a great flux of Blood. But if these Stones are smooth, and not such as may break or tear the substance of the Lungs, they do not dispose the Patient much to a Consumption (at least an Acute one;) nor

When we may judge a Consumption to be from them.

nor indeed do they occasion any great mischief more than a dry Cough, that is somewhat troublesome, and something of an oppressing weight in the Breast, as I have observed in several long ago, in whose Lungs, after they have been dead, I have found many of these smooth Chalky Stones, and some of them pretty large, without the least Tubercle, or Ulcer occasioned by them: But where these Stones have been Angular, and sharp, and apt to break and tear the Lungs, they have caused a Pain, a spitting of Blood, Ulcers, and a Consumption it self, as I have already hinted. In which case, as a pain does precede to, and accompany the spitting of Blood, so a spitting of Blood goes before, and accompanies the Ulcers and Consumption.

Where these Stones are sharp they cause a Consumption.

What I have now said of Stones, is likewise true of Nails, Pins, and other things, that slip down into the Lungs as People laugh. For unless they are quickly cough'd up again, they prick the Lungs, and cause a lancinating pain, from whence a spitting of Blood, Ulcers, and a Consumption are wont to proceed. Of which I shall add a remarkable History presently at the end of this Chapter.

The same is true of Nails, &c.

These Ulcers, as also the Consumption, which is the effect of them (which we may likewise observe of Ulcers in the Kidneys and Bladder) can never be cured without fetching away the Stone, or Nail, or Pin, or whatever else it is of that Nature, that breeds the Ulcers. But these things, which causing a continual pricking in the ulcerated part, did by that means render the Cure of it impossible before, being once come away, though it be, as it usually is with a great Hæmorrhage, yet the Ulcer, and Consumption of the Lungs, that proceed from them, do oftentimes

The Ulcers they cause, cannot be cured before they are brought away.

times admit of an easie and perfect Cure, because they have not their Original so much from a predispos'd Habit of the Body, as from a meer accidental Distemper of one single part. Of which I shall relate one or two remarkable Histories at the end of this Chapter.

The Cure of this Consumption.

In the Cure of this kind of Ulcers, Opiate and Balsamick Medicines, with a Milk Diet, are of very great use; Opiates to obtund the sense of the torn and stimulated parts, and to keep them as quiet as is possible, whilst the Balsamicks exert their Healing Power. And with the continual use of Milk the Hectick heat of the Blood, contracted in this Consumptive state, is to be allayed. But although these sharp Stones can neither be made to lye quiet in that part of the Lungs which they occupy, with the plentiful use of *Laudanum*, nor brought away with the use of Lubricating Medicines, but cause an Incurable Consumption, and spitting of Blood, and that such a one as returns by uncertain Intervals with a lancinating pain: Yet this Consumption is in its own Nature slow, and very Chronical, as a Consumption from the Stone in the Kidneys and Bladder uses to be, and, generally speaking, every Consumption that depends meerly upon an indisposition or Ulcer of some particular part, without an habitual disposition of the Blood contracted either by propagation from the Parents, or a long abuse of the six things called non-natural. But whenever a heap, or stock of predispos'd Humours does conspire with some such fatal Cause, the Consumption which proceeds from thence, is not only fatal from the very beginning, but also quick and very Acute, so that it carries off the Patient within a few Months, and it may be Weeks. I shall add these few things

things concerning the variation of Cure in this kind of Consumption.

First, Lubricating Medicines must be taken plentifully in the beginning of this Distemper; yea, and gentle Vomits; by which means we may endeavour to bring away the Stone, or any other things that have slipt down into the Lungs, before they are quite fixt there by their lodging long in the part, and before the Tone of the Lungs is much injured by them.

Secondly, But if great and spasmodick pains are excited by the tearing of the Lungs, caused from the motion of these sharp bodies, we must expect a great spitting of Blood; and therefore instead of Lubricating Medicines we must give *Laudanum*, and that in good quantities, and often, whereby we may hinder the motion of the Stone for the present, abate the pain, and prevent the spitting of Blood. For in this case letting of Blood, outward Fomentations, and Liniments do no good (as they use to do in Pleuritick and Peripneumonick pains,) and this I found by Experience in one Mr. *Foster*, and in many others. 'Tis true indeed that a lingring and slow Consumption, attended with a difficulty of Breathing, and other such-like Symptoms will follow from a Stone lying in this manner in the Lungs, which I have often observed in my Practice. But yet a lingring and uncertain Consumption is better than an Acute one, accompanied with horrid pains, that certainly and quickly terminates in Death. For if this kind of Consumptive People take such care of their Health as to live always in an open and Country Air, to keep from taking of Cold, from Drinking, and too much Exercise, and any other thing, that may disturb the Stones again, that

are fixt, and lye quiet, they may live to a great Age, and do their Business well enough.

Sometimes the Bleeding must be permitted a while.

Thirdly, But if there follows a spitting of Blood from the tearing of the Lungs, it ought to be let alone for a while. For in this Flux, the Stones, or any other things that have slipt down into the Lungs, may be voided. But if the *Hæmoptoë* is great and dangerous, we must open a Vein, and if it be necessary, repeat it; and we must give not only Opiate Medicines, but also Astringents in the form of *Linctuses, Juleps*, &c. the *Lapis Hæmatites*, the *Royal Styptick Water*; we must use a Milk Diet, and other things briefly mentioned before in the former Chapter, which I shall hereafter give a larger Account of in another Book, if I have an Opportunity to treat of an *Hæmoptoë*.

Balsamicks must be plentifully used.

Fourthly, But if the Lungs happen to be torn, and to be ulcerated from the motion of the Stone (whether it be voided or not) we must make choice of Balsamick Medicines, and give them plentifully; of which I have given several forms in the General Method of Cure.

A Milk Diet is not convenient, where there are Stones in the Lungs.

Fifthly, we must not Order a Milk Diet in a Consumption proceeding from Stones in the Lungs, unless there is a great necessity; because it is apt to breed some new Chalky Stones: Whereby it comes to pass, that the Cure of one Consumption is wont to lay the Foundation of another.

The Chalybeate Waters must be drank in little quantities.

Sixthly, Likewise the *Chalybeate* Waters, though they may be good in this Consumption, must be drank in a little quantity at a time, for fear the Stone should be stir'd again by the too great distention of the Vessels of the Lungs. Whereby it comes to pass, that the return of the pain, and of the spitting of Blood does often follow upon it.

Seventhly,

Seventhly, Sometimes there are several of these Stones in the Lungs; so that after one or two, or it may be a third has been voided, yet the Lungs are ulcerated by those which remain behind, and from thence there follows a Consumption. As I remember it happened to Mr. *Pluck-net*, and some others. *Sometimes there are several Stones.*

But a Consumption of the Lungs is wont to proceed not only from a Stone in the Lungs, and an Ulcer there following upon it, but likewise very often from Ulcers, and a Calculous disposition of the Kidneys and Bladder; so that I have very often observed those that have had the Stone, to dye of a Consumption. But this Consumption is alwas lingring, and Chronical; and is to be cured in the same manner as an ordinary Consumption, only we must avoid those Medicines that irritate the pains of the Stone, as my Balsamick Pills, *&c.* But the *Chalybeate* Waters, which ease those pains, must be often used. For I am apt to think that those who have the Stone, do not fall into a Consumption so often from the long and tormenting pain, as from a want of the due secretion of the *Serum*, and an alteration of the Ferment, which separates it in the Kidneys, following upon it. And therefore in the Cure of this kind of Consumption, we must have a regard not only to the Consumption, by using the Pectoral Medicines I have before mentioned, but also to the Disease, which is the cause of this Consumption; to wit, the Stone of the Kidneys and Bladder, by using such Medicines as may lubricate the Urinary Passages, and expel the Stone, or at least mitigate the pain. *The Stone, and Ulcers of the Kidneys and Bladder do often cause a Consumption.* *How this Consumption is to be cured.*

History 1.

Mr. *Plucknet*, being Forty Years old, or thereabouts, a strong and lusty Man; but one that had for many Years lived irregularly in almost all the six non-natural things, yet found no other mischief from it besides a hesky and dry Cough, which he had now been used to for a long time without any great trouble; at length upon hard Riding, and taking of Cold by being very wet with the Rain, he fell into dreadful pains of his Breast, that were like the pains in a Pleurisy; upon which there came a great and long spitting of Blood, with a Fever, and a Cough almost continually troubling him. I could do no good with External Liniments and Expectorating Medicines, until I came at length to the use of Opiates. With which, though he got a little respite, and a treacherous Truce, yet he could get no perfect Cure. For as his Cough, so the Hectick Fever still continued, with which he every day by degrees pined away, and that notwithstanding the plentiful use of Balsamick and Pectoral Medicines, of Asse's Milk, *&c.* till at last in the space of a Year he appeared in a deplorable Consumptive state, with an universal Colliquation made by the Skin, by Stool, by his Lungs, *&c.* Which Consumption, that in its own proper Nature was lingring and Chronical, without doubt came to be so quick and hasty from a long prediſposition of the Humours contracted by his irregular way of living. And the Fatal Day which concluded his Life, was not a little hastened, by reason he would not, though he took Medicines, submit to any Government during the use of them: Whereupon in this Consumptive

sumptive state there being some new Stones moved three or four times in his Lungs with hard Riding, Drinking, and often taking of Cold, he found again and again a return of his dreadful Spasms, and a long and profuse spitting of Blood. Which continuing upon him, though he cough'd up several Angular Stones, yet he was so much weakned by the Spasms, and lost so much Blood by his *Hæmoptoë*, that he very quickly, to wit, in the space of a Year, or thereabouts, ran the whole course of this Distemper, even to the fatal period of it, as if his Consumption had been in its own Nature plainly Acute.

History 2.

Mr. *Foster*, an Apothecary of *London*, who, setting aside a hesking and dry Cough he had, which yet was not very troublesome, enjoyed his Health very well for several Years, was suddenly taken, when he was about Thirty Years old, with Spasms in his Lungs, and dreadful pains caused thereby, as also a spitting of Blood from the disturbance and motion of some sharp Stones in the substance of his Lungs. For the relieving of which Symptoms we did very little good with Bleeding, external Liniments, and Pectoral Medicines given inwardly; so that with the loss of his Strength and Blood, caused by his spitting of Blood, and his pains returning almost every day, and by his want of Rest, and Fever that attended them, a continual Cough, *&c.* he was brought so low, and so much wasted, as if he would in a short time dye of a Consumption. But with the long and plentiful use of *Opium* in the open Air at *Highgate*, whither he was now gone for the Recovery of his Health, he

was at the same time freed from his spitting of Blood, and from his Pains, and so he continued; recovering his Strength thereupon every day, and being more and more freed from his Fever and Consumption, till at length he seemed as florid in his Looks, and as plump in his Flesh as he was before he spit Blood; and now for four or five Years past he has followed his business, and is in all things just as he was before his Distemper, but only having some degree of a difficulty of Breathing, and a dry Cough, he cannot bear the smoaky Air of *London* so well as he used to do before, by reason of the stuffing of his Lungs, caused by the Stones that are fixed there, and his using a great deal of *Laudanum*.

History 3.

Almost the same thing happened to Mr. *Smyth*, an Apothecary in *Aldermanbury*, who from the moving of some Stones in the substance of his Lungs (several of which he had cough'd up) fell into a spitting of Blood, which often returned, together with Spasmodick Pains, and from thence he seemed to be enclined to a Consumption of his Lungs. Which nevertheless after the voiding of the Stones, he was very easily freed from with the use of a Milk Diet, Opiates, and Balsamick Medicines; and now having had his Health very well for several Years, he goes about his business as he used to do.

History

History 4.

A Young Man, living near *Cripple-Gate*, that was strong, and every way sound in his Entrails, as he was doing something at his Trade of Whiting, by which he got a convenient Livelyhood, by chance with laughing heartily let three Nails, which he held in his Mouth for his use, go down through his Wind-pipe into his Lungs. Whereupon being seized with a most violent Cough and continual tickling, he fell into a very great spitting of Blood. From which Symptoms, I know not by what means, he got himself free. But this is most certain, that though those Nails never came up again, either of their own accord, or with the help of Art, yet the Young Man was very well for the space of several Months, following his Employment as before. Neither did he (as he told me) find himself any thing worse, but only from that time he used to be troubled with a dry and hesking Cough, and likewise with some Oppression. He was so well, that he thought himself fit for a Wife, and he did Marry one. But upon his Wedding-day, whether from his more liberal drinking of Wine, or from his dancing too much (with which the Nails, that before lay unmov'd, and as it were buried in the substance of the Lungs, were stirred again) the poor Bridegroom in the Evening was taken with dreadful Spasms, and a most Acute pain in his Breast and Side, and withal a difficulty of Breathing, and a dry, but very troublesome Cough, so that he could scarcely lye in his Bed, or get the least sleep. Whereupon he began to be very Feverish, though his extream Parts seemed to be cold from the violence

of the Spasmodick pain. When they had tryed all the Old Women's, and Apothecary's little Receipts in vain, and without any benefit, at length I being very earnestly entreated, went about the third day of his illness to see him. I presently apprehended the Distemper to be plainly Peripneumonick, and therefore I ordered plentiful Bleeding, Fomentations, and Liniments externally, likewise *Linctuses*, and Pectoral Apozemes, and temperate Juleps of Antispasmodick Waters to be given inwardly. But these things doing no good, I ordered again and again some more Blood to be taken from him. And indeed I was forced for many days continually to insist upon the use of several internal and external Remedies before the poor Patient found the least ease of his pain: But at length when his pain was somewhat mitigated, yet I could hardly with my Skill promote any Expectoration of Phlegm; nor wholly remove the Fever, though it seemed changed from the Nature of an Acute and Peripneumonick, into a lingring and Hectiek Fever. So that the Patient being now freed from the violence of the Symptoms, though he was always Feverish, yet he could sleep, and eat his Food better than before: But yet he grew every day weaker, and at length from an Universal Colliquation, he dyed plainly of a Consumption within the space of a Month or five Weeks.

Indeed I wonder'd very much at the obstinateness of the Pain, and the difficulty of his Expectoration; and therefore, being directed by *Hippocrates*'s Aphorism, I did fore-tell that a Consumption from an *Empyema* would follow. But I never did so much as dream of the Original cause, to wit, the Nails, which were slipt down into his Lungs, before the Patient's Life was past

all

all hopes: Otherwise I should have given him good quantities of *Laudanum* from the first, and it may be with better Success.

The Body being opened after he was dead, we found those three fatal Nails as it were buried together in one bed of Matter a little below the divarication of the branches of the Wind-pipe, and the Tone of the Lungs universally impaired by the Matter, which by degrees had crept all over them, and the very Membrane which covers the outside of the Lungs, corroded by the sharpness of the Matter; whereupon there came to be a continual dropping or distillation of the purulent Phlegm into the cavity of the Breast, out of which (to the best of my remembrance) I took out at least six Pints of this purulent Liquor. Which when I saw, I no longer wondred at the obstinateness of the Pain, and the difficulty of his Expectoration, which accompanyed that Peripneumony. Nor did it seem strange that a Peripneumony caused in this manner, should terminate in a Fatal, and such an Acute Consumption.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Of a Consumption proceeding from the French *Pox.*

The French Disease often brings an Atrophy.

'TIS certain every *French* Pox if it be Chronical, accompanyed with a virulent *Gonorrhœa*, or many and large Ulcers, is always apt to bring the Patient by degrees into a Consumptive state by the continual substraction of the Nutritious Juice from the Habit of the Body, of which sort of Consumption I have before discoursed in the First Book.

And likewise a Consumption of the Lungs.

It is also as true, and I have often observed in my Practice, that a true Consumption of the Lungs has had its Original meerly from the alteration of the Blood and Humours caused by the *French* Pox.

And it is no wonder, when the whole Mass of Humours is so manifestly altered, and brought into a colliquative state by the Ferment of this Distemper (which is evident enough from the Malignant Swellings, *Gonorrhœa's*, and Ulcers, that commonly accompany this Disease) if these kind of Venereal Swellings and Ulcers happen sometimes also in the spongy and soft Substance of the Lungs; whereupon a true Pulmonary Consumption must necessarily follow. Indeed I have rather wondred that we ever meet with the *French* Disease, especially if it has been of a long standing, or ill cured, without an Ulcer in the Lungs, and a Consumption proceeding from it. But to speak the truth, I very seldom, if ever, observed

obſerved a Conſumption of the Lungs from the *French* Pox, unleſs it has been where the Lungs were obſtructed, and diſpoſed to a Conſumption before; or at leaſt where there has been a bad management, and ill-natur'd Medicines have been given by ſome Quacks; and the often taking of Cold in a Sweating Courſe, or in a Salivation, has been joyn'd with the *French* Pox. This Conſumption (if it be treated in due time, and in a due manner) is as eaſily cured as any other. For (as far as I have obſerved) it is of an Aſthmatick Nature, and is wont to be attended with tough Phlegm, and a difficulty of Breathing rather than a violent Cough; and therefore it is Chronical, and aſcends ſlowly and by degrees to its higheſt degree; from whence it comes to paſs, that I have ſometimes obſerved ſome of theſe kind of Patients to live ſeveral Years in a Sickly and Conſumptive ſtate. Which perhaps may be partly from the continual uſe of the Decoction of *Sarſa*, and other things of that Nature; by which the Malignant Venom of the Humour, though it is not perfectly eradicated, is in ſome meaſure obtunded. For I do not doubt but the peculiar Nature of the *French* Pox is ſo Venomous, that unleſs the Malignity of the Humour happened to be corrected by the uſe of *Calomelanos*, a Decoction of the Woods, and other Medicines prepared by Art or Nature, every Conſumption from a *French* Pox in its own proper Nature would be Acute.

Which is rare, unleſs the Lungs were obſtructed before, or from ill management.

This Conſumption is of an Aſthmatick Nature.

From a frequent Experience I do affirm, that all Pectoral and Pulmonary Medicines, that are meerly ſuch, without mixing Antivenereal Medicines with them, will do nothing towards the perfect Cure of this Conſumption. And therefore there is no better Method can be thought of,

This Conſumption is not to be cured without Antivenereal Medicines mixt with the Pectoral.

of, than to endeavour the healing of the Ulcers of the Lungs, and the restoring of the *Crasis* of the Blood, which has been destroyed by the Venereal Ferment, by a *Mercurial* Salivation, before the Patient has been weakned by a long protraction of the Distemper, and so is unable to bear such a continual and profuse Evacuation.

The best thing is a Salivation.

What is to be done if the Patient cannot bear that.

But if the Patient, by reason of the extenuated Habit of his Body, does not seem to have strength enough for this Method of Cure, all the hope that remains must be from the use of a Restorative Milk Diet; and then from a strict and long use of a Decoction of *Sarsa*, and of my Balsamick Pills, giving likewise Purges with a moderate Dose of *Calomelanos* mixt with them. Of a Cure of this Nature I shall not think much here to give an extraordinary Instance.

A History.

A Young Girle about Twelve Years old, was perswaded by the Enticements of a Lascivious and Wicked Dancing Master, that was infected with the *French* Pox, to let him lye with her: Whereupon she likewise by Contagion was so pepper'd with the Venereal Venom, that notwithstanding one or two Salivations, which had been raised by some Empericks, and other Methods of Cure that had been tryed in the space of four Years, after her *Uvula* was eaten away, and after other marks of the *French* Pox yet remaining, she fell into a Consumption of her Lungs, with a Hectick Fever, an Emaciation of her whole Body, a continual Cough, and a very great shortness of Breath, by reason of the toughness of the Phlegm stuffing her Pipes. Being called

called to her by Mr. *Simons*, a skilful and noted Surgeon of *London*, I ordered a Doſe of *Calomelanos* with *Diagrydium* to be repeated once a Week; and on thoſe days ſhe did not Purge, to have three of my Balſamick Pills given her three times a day, and the following Decoction for her ordinary Drink. With the uſe of which, continued for the ſpace of ſix or eight Weeks in the Spring-time, ſhe was perfectly, and without any relapſe, freed from her Conſumption, as well as from the Relicks of the Pox.

Take of the beſt Sarſaparilla ſix Ounces, of China-Roots two Ounces, Saſſafras-Chips, red Saunders, ſhavings of Harts-horn, of Ivory, of each half an Ounce, of Raiſins of the Sun ſtoned two Ounces, Jujubes, Sebeſtens, of each an Ounce and half, of Liquorice ſliced half an Ounce: After a due Infuſion, boyl them in ſix Quarts of Spring-water to three Quarts, adding when they are almoſt boyled enough, Colts-foot, Maiden-hair, ſpotted Lungwort, Sanicle, Ladies-Mantle, the Flowers of the great Daiſie, of each two handfuls; then ſtrain out the Liquor, and add three Ounces of the Balſamick Syrup. Mingle them, and make an *Apozeme.*

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of a Consumption proceeding from the Suppression of a virulent Gonorrhœa, *of the Running of Old Ulcers, but especially Fistula's in the Fundament, and Scrophulous Ulcers, Issues, and the Whites.*

How this Consumption is caused.

I Have also observed in my Practice these kind of Consumptions; which are not caused (as it is commonly thought) by the translation of the Purulent Matter into the Lungs (which to me seems impossible;) but by the Pollution of the whole Mass of Blood by the violent keeping in of the Excrementitious Juice, which used to be continually thrown out by these Ulcers. From whence it comes to pass, that the Blood being in this manner foul'd, does make it its business to cast off this extraneous and excrementitious Ferment, and to lodge it in the soft substance of the Lungs as it circulates through them, which many times according the Nature of the Matter is disposed to a speedy Putrefaction. And hereupon that Consumption of the Lungs, which I make it my business to treat of in this Chapter, though it be sometimes of a middle Nature, yet for the most part it is Acute; yea, many times according to the Nature and Disposition of the Ulcer of the Lungs, which causes it, very Acute, and almost always Incurable and Mortal, because it

This Consumption is Acute.

And most commonly Mortal.

it depends upon an inexhauſtible ſtock of Matter lurking in the Habit of the Body.

In the Cure of this kind of Conſumption, beſides the General Method before preſcribed, I ſhall add theſe few things particularly to be obſerved. *The Cure.*

Firſt, The former, and accuſtomed Ulcers muſt as far as it is poſſible be revived; whereby the Humour may be diverted from the Lungs, and be evacuated by the uſual and leſs dangerous vents, though it may ſeem troubleſome.

Secondly, But if this cannot be obtained (which indeed is very ſeldom done) then frequent Iſſues, yea, and Veſicatories, but eſpecially applyed near the place which Nature firſt aſſign'd for the ſeparation of this Humour, ought to ſupply this defect, by which we may make ſome compenſation to oppreſſed Nature, and particularly derive the Matter from the Lungs.

Thirdly, In the beginning of this Conſumption, to wit, when the Glands of the Lungs begin to ſwell (which we may gueſs at by the Cough, difficulty of Breathing, and Feveriſh Heat) we muſt uſe Bleeding, and alſo repeat it if it be neceſſary. By which the ſtagnation of the Blood, which ariſes from the firſt reception of the Matter into the Lungs, and ſo the ſwelling of the part may be prevented, or at leaſt abated.

Fourthly, Amongſt the more general Pectoral Medicines already deſcribed, I would commend the uſe of a Milk Diet, of Aſſe's Milk, the *Chalybeate* Mineral Waters (if they are drank in time) of a Pulmonary Decoction of *Sarſa*, for ordinary Drink, of the Gums, Balſams, and Wood-lice, but eſpecially my Balſamick Pills.

Fifthly,

Fifthly, But we muſt always add to the Pectoral Medicines alſo thoſe things which have a reſpect to the peculiar Nature of the Ulcer, or Original Diſtemper.

A Hiſtory.

Mr. *Simons*, the Famous Surgeon before mentioned, had (as he told me himſelf) a Fiſtula in his Fundament continually weeping for the ſpace of Twenty Years, which he did induſtriouſly preſerve inſtead of an Iſſue, whilſt he cured very many in other Perſons, becauſe it did ſeem neither very troubleſome to him, nor at all dangerous. But by chance this accuſtomed Ulcer at length drying up of its own accord about the Sixtieth Year of his Age, he preſently began to be affected with an Oppreſſion at the Breaſt, and a dry and troubleſome Cough. Which Symptoms for ſeveral Months he never minded, till being rouz'd from this ſtupid Neglect by a manifeſt falling away in his Fleſh, as well as a Hectick Fever; alſo by a frequent want of Appetite, Sickneſs, Weakneſs, and other Signs of a preſent and confirm'd Conſumption, he deſired my Advice, but too late, when the poor Man had for ſome Weeks, and that in the Spring too, laboured under a great Colliquation, both by a Looſeneſs and Sweats, brought upon him by a Putrid Intermitting Fever, and was confin'd to his Bed in a weak condition. I did endeavour at leaſt to alleviate the Fever by the uſe of the *Peruvian* Bark; to abate his Looſeneſs with Aſtringents and Opiates, to remove the cauſe of the Conſumption with the White Drink, a Pulmonary Decoction of *Sarſa*, and Lime-water, with all other ſorts of Pectoral and Specifick Medicines;

Medicines given in the form of Linctuſes, Electuaries, *&c.* as alſo with a Milk Diet, (and ſo far as the Looſeneſs would give me leave) to temper the heat of the Blood and Spirits with Aſſe's Milk; and to comfort and refreſh his Spirits with Pearl Juleps, Jelly-Broths, and Jellies. But all was in vain; for this Excellent Perſon, being brought into the ſtate of a *Maraſmus* by this Colliquative Fever, yielded to Fate in the ſpace of two or three Months.

S[illegible] CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of a Consumption proceeding from the Green-Sickness, and a Suppression of the Monthly Purgations in Women.

Ab Obstruction of the Menses is commonly the Original of Consumptions in Women.

THIS is most commonly the Original of Women's Consumptions, and I have very seldom seen any Woman that was capable of the Monthly Purgations, either Virgin, married Woman, or Widdow, who ever fell into a Consumption without an Obstruction of these Purgations coming upon it, either in the beginning, or at least in the progress of the Distemper.

Sometimes 'tis the effect of a Consumption.

'Tis true indeed this Obstruction may arise in the progress of a Consumption from the impoverisht state of the Blood, by reason of the want of new Nutritious Juice; and therefore is to be accounted an Effect rather than the Cause of this Disease.

But many times the occasion of it.

But many times it is the occasion of a Consumption, and that not only in Virgins and Widdows, but even in married Women. For when there is an Obstruction of these Purgations caused by Passions of the Mind, taking of Cold, or using such Food as breeds a bad Juice, the Mass of Blood is apt to be foul'd, and to be rendred cachectick by those Excrements, which used to be thrown out, but are now detained in it: By which Mass of Humours now gathered in the Blood the Lungs are wont to be stufft, and thereupon a Cough, difficulty of Breathing,

Breathing, and the other ordinary Symptoms of a Conſumption are wont to ariſe: From which being a long time neglected, a Conſumption of a peculiar Nature, attended with prickings, and dreadful pains in the Sides does many times ariſe.

What is to be done in the beginning of this Conſumption.

In the beginning of this Diſtemper, Bleeding, and moderate Purging with the *Sacred Tincture*, and other things of that Nature; and the uſe of *Chalybeate Medicines*, but eſpecially my *Chalybeate Electuary*, which I may afterwards mention in the Chapter of a *Chloroſis*, *&c.* are convenient to provoke the *Menſes*, and to correct the Cachectical ſtate of the Blood: But if through the neglect of the timely uſe of theſe things, the Patient is already brought into a Conſumptive ſtate, it is not only in vain to try any of theſe things (becauſe we cannot expect thoſe Purgations in this impoveriſht ſtate of the Blood) but alſo very prejudicial to the Patient to give them. For it is to no purpoſe to diminiſh the ſtock of Blood by opening a Vein; and with the uſe of *Chalybeates* it is more exagitated and grows hot. Therefore in this caſe the Patient muſt be put into the General Method of Cure uſed in a Conſumption of the Lungs, and already deſcribed; and the Pains of the Sides muſt be eaſed with warm Liniments and Fomentations, mentioned in another place. But the Conſumption being once cured, and the Body grown luſty again, the Uterine Veſſels being repleniſh'd with Blood and Nutritious Juice, are wont to be opened of their own accord in a thin Country Air. But we muſt relieve this defect of Nature (if ſhe is ſtill deficient after the Patient is recovered) with the help of Art: For if the Obſtruction ſtill continues, the Patient will quickly grow Cachectical

again, from whence we may juſtly expect a return of the Conſumption. Therefore in this caſe let the Patient be kept in a thin Air, and ſhake off all Sadneſs and troubleſome Cares; let her uſe Exerciſe, and due Frictions; as alſo bitter, Antiſcorbutick, and *Chalybeate* Medicines, but eſpecially the Vitriolick Mineral Waters, if it be a proper time of the Year for them. This Conſumption, becauſe it proceeds from a Cachexy, is for the moſt part Chronical, and not preſently Mortal. But if it is not cured in the beginning, it is very difficult, if ever, to be cured; and indeed the Green-Sickneſs of Virgins has very often this Fatal Event; becauſe the Symptoms of a Conſumption and a Green-Sickneſs are ſo much alike, that the Common People ſeldom perceive when one comes to be joyned to the other, till the Conſumption is come almoſt to its Third and Fatal Degree. And from hence it is that I am wont always to ſuſpect a Chronical Cough that attends a *Chloroſis*.

A Hiſtory.

Mrs. *Anderton*, Madam *Daviſon*'s Maid, a pretty Beautiful Young Woman, about the Seventeenth Year of her Age, from the Suppreſſion of her *Menſes* a long time neglected, fell into the Green-Sickneſs, with the uſual Symptoms of it, a pale Look, Head-ach, ſhortneſs of Breath, Weakneſs, Laſſitude, a ſlow Fever, *&c.* But at length when the Maid had advanced from an Oedematous to a Conſumptive ſtate, and the ſtuffing of her Lungs was turned to a troubleſome, though dry Cough, it gave me occaſion to ſuſpect that a true Pulmonary Conſumption had been the Product of the *Chloroſis*.

And

And I was very much confirmed in this Opinion by thoſe dreadful Pains in her left Side, with which the poor Creature had been almoſt continually rackt to the higheſt degree for ſeveral days; which I could not eaſe ſo much by Bleeding, as by outward Fomentations and Liniments, and the internal uſe of *Laudanum*. Which ſort of painful Spaſms in the Sides I have obſerved almoſt always to have accompanyed, or at leaſt to have been the fore-runners of a Conſumption of the Lungs, whenever this Diſtemper has happened to have its Original from a Green-Sickneſs, or a Melancholick and Thoughtful Mind. A long time before her Spaſms firſt ſeized her, ſhe was confined to her Bed, looking as if ſhe had almoſt no Blood, and emaciated almoſt to the degree of a *Maraſmus*, troubled with a Hectick Fever, continually languiſhing, and without any Appetite. And therefore though the violence of the Spaſms at that time did Indicate it, yet her extenuated Habit, and the little ſtock of Blood which ſhe had, as alſo her want of Strength, and the weakneſs of her Pulſe did forbid Bleeding. However we bled her ſparingly, again and again, and then thoſe painful Spaſms being taken off with the diligent uſe of Pectoral Remedies mixt with Antiſpaſmodicks, but eſpecially with repeated Doſes of *Laudanum* added to Antihyſtericks; and with the outward applicarion of Anodyne Liniments and Fomentations, I applyed my ſelf to the Cure of the Pulmonary Conſumption with the General Method of Diet, and Medicines too, already deſcribed, with very good Succeſs, and not without the great Applauſe of thoſe that were about her.

But the whole Cure was compleated and finished by the Restitution of her Monthly Purgations, with the long use of *Chalybeate* Medicines in the form of an Electuary, Pills, Wine, Syrup, *&c.* which I always ordered to be mixt with her Pectoral Medicines. For after she began to be freed from her Consumptive state, and the Habit of her Body began to be restored, and the Vessels to be filled with good Blood, it was an easie thing to open their Obstructions with those very Medicines, which are wont to be tryed without any Success, yea, with Prejudice to the Patient, when she is in a Consumptive, and emaciated state: And so the whole business being crowned by gaining of this Point, without any Relapse into a Consumption, my Patient has continued fresh and lusty for Fifteen Years or more to this very day, almost always enjoying her perfect Health, having been in that time a Virgin, a Wife, and a Widdow.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of a Conſumption cauſed by a Peripneumony, and a Pleuriſy.

IT is well enough known to all thoſe that have but a little Skill in Phyſick, that a Conſumption is wont to ariſe likewiſe from theſe Diſtempers very often. And this happens ſometimes from the Ignorance or Neglect of the Phyſician, ſometimes from the perverſeneſs and peculiar Nature of the Original Diſtemper, or a previous diſpoſition in the Patient to a Conſumption: Many times too the Patient himſelf, and his Friends that are about him, are to be blamed, who not obſerving the proper Directions of the Phyſician, in Bleeding ſo often as is neceſſary, in the ſeaſonable and plentiful adminiſtration and taking of Pectoral Medicines, and in the other parts of a due management, do many times lay the Foundation of a Conſumption, that follows afterwards. For a Conſumption follows after a Peripneumony and a Pleuriſy, for the Reaſons following.

A Conſumption often proceeds from a Peripneumony and Pleuriſy.

Firſt, When the Blood is left in a Colliquative ſtate by theſe Diſtempers, which is wont to happen likewiſe for two cauſes; to wit, Firſt, when the Patient has been Habitually prediſpoſed to a Conſumption by a propagation from the Parents, or by a long abuſe of the ſix non-naturals; in which caſe the Blood and Lungs being heated and inflamed, are very difficultly brought to a due temper; for the Peripneumony

The firſt Reaſon why it does ſo.

and Pleurisy being once conquered, the putrid heat of the Blood degenerates into a Hectical, or Habitual heat, so that afterwards the Chyle can neither be perfectly united, nor amicably mixt with the Mass of Blood: And from this Colliquative state of the Blood a Consumption of the Lungs must necessarily follow. Secondly, and it may be this more frequently happens from the perverseness of the Patient, and the timorousness of his Friends, and those that are about him; and perhaps too from the Ignorance, or at least the Negligence of the Physician, when timely and plentiful Bleedings, which are not only necessary to relieve the Pain, but also absolutely requisite from the degree and exigence of the Fever, and the Inflammatory disposition of the Blood, are wholly omitted. For in this case there still remains a Hectick Heat in the Habit of the Patient, which disposes him to a sudden Consumption, after a due Concoction and Expectoration of the Matter, which was gathered in the Lungs.

The second Reason want of due Expectoration.

Secondly, When the Matter that is gathered in the Lungs is not at all concocted and expectorated, or not in a sufficient quantity, or at least not so soon as it ought to be. And this is wont to come to pass from several causes: As first, when the parts of the Lungs, that are inflamed, are the Vesicles, or Air-Glands, and thereupon the Matter, that is lodged in them, though it be concocted as it should be, yet being contained in its proper *Cystises*, does not find a passage out, notwithstanding the most diligent use of Expectorating Medicines. For though there is a greater quantity of purulent Matter concocted and gathered in the Glandules with the use of those things, and thereupon there follows an

Apostеme

Apostеme of a great bigness; yet because the Matter does not find an immediate Vent, no Expectoration succeeds, and so the Lungs are not able to clear themselves; whereby it comes to pass, that after the Apostеme is broke, there remains a foul Ulcer in the Lungs, proportionate to the largeness of the Apostеme. And upon this breaking of the Apostеme, the Matter that is contained in it, is wont to empty it self either outwardly or inwardly, according to the Situation of the suppurated part. For if the affected Glandules are placed near the branches of the Wind-pipe, when the *Cystis* is broke, the Matter easily finds a vent into the Wind-pipe: And many times the Patient is suddenly strangled, or ready to be choaked with the violent gushing out of the Matter, flowing out all together this way: Which I sometime since found in Mr. *White*'s Son, whose case I shall give an Account of in the end of this Chapter. But if these Glandules are placed at that distance, that the Matter cannot find a passage into the branches of the Wind-pipe it self, those parts do in progress of time swell to a great bigness, whereupon at length, when the *Cystis* breaks, the Matter diffusing it self every where through the whole substance of the Lungs, does perfectly destroy their Tone. Yea, sometimes I have observed the Lungs to be so much distended with it, that partly from their distention, and partly from the Acrimony of the Matter, that has insinuated it self into them (the outward Membrane, which invests the Lungs being once broken, or eroded) the matter has fallen continually, and plentifully out of the Lungs into the Cavity of the Breast: And thereupon in the dead Body, when it has been opened, though we found an Ulcer only in the

Which occasions an Apostеme.

Which when it breaks, empties it self either outwardly.

And sometimes the Patient is suddenly choaked;

Or inwardly.

the upper part of the Lungs, and the Tone of the Lungs every where corrupted with the Matter paſſing through them, yet we met with ſeveral Pints of purulent Matter, which was faln into the Cavity of the Breaſt through the broken Membrane, after the manner of an *Empyema*. And from hence it came to paſs, that when the Phyſician had done all he could in preſcribing, and the Patient had been as diligent in the taking of Expectorating Medicines, yet we did no good with them.

The Expectoration is hindred by very profuſe and unſeaſonable Bleedings.

Secondly, When with unſeaſonable, and very profuſe Bleedings the Blood is grown ſo cold, that the ſuppuration of the inflamed part is either hindred, or at leaſt comes to be late. For every one, that underſtands any thing of Surgery or Phyſick, knows that Bleeding cauſes a ſuppuration to be ſlower than otherwiſe it would be. And that famous Aphoriſm of *Hippocrates* is no leſs true, *That unleſs thoſe that have a Pleuriſy do expectorate in fourteen days, if they live ſo long, they will be Empyical upon the fortieth day*; ſo great a quantity of true Matter being in that ſpace of time collected in the Lungs, that by reaſon of the quantity, and Acrimony of it, it is apt to make its way through the broken and eroded Membrane of the Lungs into the very Cavity of the Breaſt. Thirdly, this alſo ſometimes happens through the careleſneſs of the Phyſician, or elſe the perverſeneſs of the Patient, from the neglect of the uſe of Expectorating Medicines in the beginning of a Pleuriſy and Peripneumony. Fourthly, in fine, this often happens to Infants for want of Underſtanding, becauſe they have not wit enough to raiſe and ſpit out the Purulent Phlegm which is lodged in their Lungs.

From the want of Pectoral Medicines.

This

This Consumption is always very Acute, because it proceeds from an Acute Distemper preceding, by which not only the Patient has been very much weakned, but likewise the Mass of Blood has been left in a Colliquative state; yea, and very often there has happened to be a Collection of Matter made in the Lungs. So that this Consumption has scarcely gone by the Name of a Consumption, before the Patient has arrived plainly to the state of a *Marasmus*. If this Consumption has had its beginning from a Colliquative, and too hot a state of the Blood, caused by the preceding Distempers, we must not only continue the use of Expectorating, and other Antiphthisical Medicines, (which yet must be of those, that are more mild, and not very hot) but we ought also to prescribe Temperate Pearl Juleps to be taken plentifully to temper the heat of the Blood; as also Milk-water, Snail-water, yea, and the *Chalybeate* Waters, if it be a time of the Year proper for the use of them; but above all we must have recourse to Bleeding (however the Patient is weakned, and his Body brought into a Tabid state by his former Distemper) and that not once only, but frequently; and we must repeat it too (if it be necessary) not with too sparing a Hand.

This Consumption is always Acute.

The Cure of this Consumption, when 'tis from a Colliquative state of the Blood.

But if this Consumption proceeds from the breaking of the Glandulous Apostеme emptying it self by the Wind-pipe, we must promote the Purgation of the Lungs by this High-way with the plentiful use of Expectorating Medicines. And if there is any fear that the Patient will be choak'd after the first breaking of the Abscess with the Matter rushing too fast, and in too great a quantity into the branches of the Wind-pipe, (which I remember happened to Mr. *White*'s Son,

The Cure, when 'tis from the breaking of an Apostеme.

Son, and to some others) we must hasten the Expectoration by giving Oxymel of Squills, and other gentle Vomits; and then provoking them to Vomit by tickling the Tonsils and *Uvula* with a Feather dipt in Oyl. Whereby it comes to pass, that a violent motion of the Stomack being excited in Vomiting, the Lungs also being agitated by it, can more easily free themselves from that glutinous Matter which sticks in them. The greatest part of the collected Matter being in this manner once evacuated, that which remains must be also brought away with the diligent use of Expectorating Medicines. Which being done, the Cure in progress of time may by degrees be perfected with a Milk Diet, Temperate Juleps, the Balsamick Medicines before described, and with the *Chalybeate* Waters drank in the Country in a wholsom Air. But if by the continuation of the Hectick heat, a redness in the Cheeks coming every day, a difficulty of Breathing, without any considerable Cough attending them; but especially by a fulness and weight in one or both the Hypochondres, and a fluctuation of Matter in the Breast, perceived by its moving from one side to another, this Consumption seems to have been occasioned by some Matter, that has been gathered in the Glandulous Apostems of the Lungs, running through their outward Membrane, when it is eroded, or broken, into the Cavity of the Breast, after the manner of an *Empyema*; then I say the Matter that fluctuates in the Breast, and is continually dropping out of the Lungs, must be conveniently taken out at due intervals as the Patient can bear it, by a *Paracentesis* made in a convenient place near that Hypochondre where the greatest weight is felt. The rest of the Cure is to be performed with the

When a Paracentesis is to be made.

the plentiful use of Wood-lice, Balsamick Medicines, and of Temperate Juleps; as likewise with a Milk Diet, Decoctions of *Sarsa*, *Chalybeate* Remedies, but especially the *Chalybeate* Waters.

When there is Matter in the Breast, and a Paracentesis will not be allowed, we must use Diuretick.

But if by reason of the weakness of the Patient, or the timorousness of them that are about him, we may not be allowed to make a *Paracentesis*, we must endeavour to evacuate the Matter by a long and plentiful use of Diuretick Medicines, as Wood-lice, Salt of Amber, my Diuretick and Lubricating Apozeme, which I shall give an Account of presently in the next History, *&c.* which is sometimes done with good, though more uncertain Success (as I found in Mr. *White*'s Son, whose Case I shall think it worth my while presently to subjoyn.) Afterwards the Cure must be compleated with a Milk Diet, the use of Balsamick and *Chalybeate* Remedies, and likewise with Decoctions of *Sarsa* impregnated with Pectoral and Vulnerary Herbs, that are very temperate.

How the Cure must be compleated.

What is to be done when there is a slow Expectoration from the Blood being too much cooled, &c.

But if this Consumption proceeds from the slowness of Expectoration, caused by the Blood being too much cooled with unseasonable, or too liberal Bleeding, or by the neglect of Expectorating Medicines, we must enjoyn the plentiful and frequent use of Lubricating and Balsamick Medicines, and especially such as are hot, and endow'd with penetrating Particles; as *Opobalsam*, *Balsam of Sulphur Terebinthinate and Anisate*, *Linseed-Oyl fresh drawn without a fire*, *an Antiphthisical Mead*, and other things of the same Nature.

History

History 1.

Mr. *White*, who lived in the Burrough of *Southwark*, his younger Son *Samuel*, about the Seventh Year of his Age, and in the Year 1670. fell into a true Pleurisy, with an Inflammatory Fever, a continual, but dry Cough, and a dreadful pain in his Side. After they had first tryed several things for three days without any benefit, at length I was called, and ordered about six Ounces of Blood to be taken immediately from his left Arm, because his pain was chiefly in that Side, and the Parts to be externally anointed with an Anodyne Liniment, and likewise Expectorating Medicines to be given inwardly in a good quantity in the form of a *Linctus* and *Apozeme*. They had a great deal of difficulty to make the Boy take internal Medicines. But the Pain, and his Fever being sufficient Reasons for the doing of it, I bled him once every day for five days successively, with the Advice and Consent of my Famous Colleague Dr. *Micklethwait*. And for the farther mitigating of the pain I ordered an Anodyne Fomentation in two Oxe's Bladders to be alternately applyed, with a Liniment, and Blistering Plaisters to be put upon the Neck, and the inside of the Arms. But however neither the Pain, nor the Fever seem'd to abate, till at length about the Ninth day of the Disease, Nature of her own accord went to work, and relieved her self by a bleeding at the Nose; and in this manner at the same hour of the day for three days one after another, did Nature, as if she were led by some Benignity, continually perform the Office of a Surgeon, and that with very good Success; for as the Pain, so

so likewise the Fever went almost quite off. But an Expectoration could not be procured by any Art through the whole course of the Distemper.

Wherefore being moved by the Authority of *Hippocrates*, I declared my Opinion openly in the presence of his Friends, that an *Empyema* would follow afterwards within Forty days. And as I said, so it came to pass: For the poor emaciated Boy lay with a redness in his Cheeks, that returned every day, a moderate Hectick Fever, a continual dry Cough, and shortness of Breath, gradually wasting every day until the fortieth day of the Disease; the greatest part of the time likewise being drawn in on the left Side, he complained much of a gravative pain under the short Ribs of that Side.

On the fortieth day I went to see him in the Morning, and found him eating of a little Fish or two, and more chearful than ordinary. But for all that, remembring that Prognostick of *Hippocrates* concerning the fortieth day, I ordered an Emetick Mixture of Salt of Vitriol, and Oxymel of Squills to be in readiness, that it might be given him by Spoonfuls to make him Vomit, if upon the sudden rupture of the Apostеme he should be in danger of being choak'd with the too quick passing of the Matter into the branches of the Wind-pipe. I had scarce been gone an hour but the Patient wak'd out of his sleep almost strangled; and in that manner he continued for the space of four hours before they could find me, without even any sensible Respiration, or Pulse, with his Eyes set, and his Teeth and Hands Spasmodically shut, cold, and e'en dead. At last I came, and ordered that the Mixture (which I had before taken care should be

be in a readiness, though as yet by reason of the Fright they were in that were about him, who lookt upon him to be dead, it was not yet given) to be put down his Throat by Spoonfuls, his Mouth being opened by force, and his Tonsils to be tickled with a Feather dipt in Oyl; with which being in a short time provoked to Vomit, he brought up not only crude Chyle out of his Stomack, but also near a Pint of *Pus* plainly fetid out of his Lungs; and thereupon with the use of a Cordial Julep both his Spasms and his Strangulation went off, the heat of the Extream Parts too, and his Pulse came again, and at length after three hours he began to mutter some incoherent words; and after some quiet sleeps he came to himself: And so within 24 hours he was hungry, and asked for something to eat, to the great Amazement of his Friends, and those that were about him. But nevertheless he was not only weak, and confined to his Bed, but also emaciated, and Hectical, and lay continually Coughing, and fetching his Breath very short from the weight of that Matter in the Cavity of his Breast, which prest upon his Diaphragm, as if he would in a short time dye of a Consumption. By reason of the Acute Consumption which was upon him, and his Weakness, I dare not try to evacuate the Matter by Catharticks, nor to let it out by a *Paracentesis*; because as they that were about him were against it, so indeed there appeared no protuberance in the Hypochondres, to shew the right place where the aperture should be made. And therefore for the present I resolved to bring the business about by a long and slow Method, by ordering a Milk Diet to temper his Blood, and the frequent use of the following *Apozeme*, partly

partly Pectoral, and partly Diuretick, with which (if it were possible) I might bring away the Matter by the Urinary passages without any loss of his strength: The form of the *Apozeme* was this which follows.

Take the Seeds of Mallows, of Marsh-mallows, of each three Drams, the four greater cold Seeds, of each a Dram, of red Cicers an Ounce, of Winter-Cherries two Drams, the Leaves of Colts-foot, Maiden-hair, of each a handful, seven Figgs, fifteen Sebestens, Liquorice sliced an Ounce, boyl them in two Quarts of Spring-water to a Quart. To the Liquor whenit is strained add of Syrup of Marsh-mallows an Ounce. Mingle them, and make an Apozeme. With this Management (and the addition of a Pearl Julep, and a Pectoral *Linctus*) his strength seemed to be much mended. But upon that there arose an Universal Dropsie, which increased so much, that the poor Patient seemed every day ready to dye for want of Breath. But with the plentiful use of Salt of Amber, gentle Purges, and *Chalybeate* Electuaries (Balsamick and Pectoral Medicines being always mixt with them) he grew perfectly well of his Consumption and Dropsie both, with the help of the Spring, and Country Air, and is yet living, in health, strong, and lusty, following his Business of Merchandize.

History 2.

Mr. *Gifford*'s Daughter in *Fleet-Lane*, about the Eighth Year of her Age was taken with an Inflammatory Fever, a Pain in her Side, and a troublesome and dry Cough. I being called after the Second or Third day of the Disease, judging by the Diagnostick Signs that the Patient had a Pleurisy, ordered a Vein to be opened once,

and again, Liniments and Fomentations to be applyed externally; and likewise Expectorating Medicines to be given her plentifully (which she took too sparingly:) I ordered likewise Blisters as it was necessary upon the account of her Fever, and the Affection of her Nerves, and Pearl Juleps made of Cephalick and Cordial Waters. After the use of these things, the Inflammatory Fever turned to a Hectick; and the Convulsive Pain of her Side into a Gravative Pain, and thereupon all the Symptoms appeared more mild. But because no Phlegm could by any Art be brought out of the Lungs by Coughing, I did much suspect that the Putrid Phlegm which had been concocted in the Lungs, had found some other way through the very substance of them into the Cavity of the Breast, and that my poor Patient would at last dye of an Empyical Consumption, caused by the Pleurisy, for want of Expectoration. And indeed I was not much out in my Conjecture: For after the poor Girle had lain languishing for Twenty days after the end of the true Pleurisy, every day pining away with a continual Hectick Fever, a redness in her Cheeks often returning, the palms of her Hands very dry, with a dry and troublesome Cough, pertinacious Watchings, shortness of Breath, and other expensive Symptoms; at last she began to complain of a gravative pain of her Side about the left Hypochondre, which increased so one day after another, that at last she could not be moved, nor set upright without crying out. But after the Thirtieth day of the Disease looking upon the Part affected, I found it swelled, and rising a little with a point. But yet I stay'd till the fortieth day, and then Mr. *Hollier*, a very Skilful Surgeon, being called in, we took out by degrees

degrees the putrid Phlegm by a *Paracentesis* made a little above the Diaphragm in the space of a Month: For by reason of the emaciated state of her Body she could not bear the taking away of much at a time. But for a Year or two the Wound was designedly kept open in the same part, like as an Issue. In the mean time making use of a Milk Diet, Balsamick Medicines, Woodlice, and drinking freely and a long time a Vulnerary Decoction of *Sarsa*, &c. (with the help of the Country Air) interposing likewise at due intervals, and according to the strength of the Patient, Purges made of *Calomelanos* and *Diagrydium*, at length she recovered out of her Consumptive state, having got a good Colour, and Flesh, and so she continued for several Years without the least Symptom of her former Distemper, but only that she was somewhat drawn in with a crookedness on the Side that had been affected, to her dying day, when she was taken off by a Malignant Fever.

CHAP. XI.

Of a Consumption proceeding from the Gout, and from a Rheumatism.

There is a Colliquation in a Gout and Rheumatism.

IN a Gout and Rheumatism, especially that which is true, and Humorose (which is caused by a sharp Ferment supplyed from the Nerves) there is such an evident Colliquation in the whole Mass of Blood, that no Body can reasonably think it strange, that a Consumption should arise from these Distempers (but especially when they are stubborn, and Chronical, and return often.) And hereupon it is an easie matter to observe, that a Rheumatick Pain, coming from the taking of Cold, seldom if ever is wont to seize upon the Joynts without a Pulmonary Cough. And as I have seen that great Man, the Lord *Bridgman*, Mr. *Philips*, and Mr. *Tibs*, and many others, after frequent and long Fits of the Gout and Rheumatism, dye at last of a Consumption or *Asthma*; so I have likewise observed, that sometimes an Acute and Fatal Consumption has followed upon the first Fit of a Rheumatism.

In Rheumatick Pains there is a Cough.

This Consumption is sometimes Acute.

This Consumption when it seizes them from the first Invasion of a Rheumatism, happens sometimes to be Acute, for this Reason; because it proceeds from a Colliquation of the Humours in an Acute Fit of a Humorose Rheumatism. And therefore because it partakes of the Nature of an ordinary Consumption, it ought to be treated wholly in the General Method; that is, with the use of Lubricating, Incrassating, Opiate, and

And must be treated with the general Method.

and other Pectoral Medicines. And indeed it has been my Practice, and that with very good Succeſs, to preſcribe in every Rheumatick Fit the plentiful uſe of Pectoral, Lubricating, and Incraſſating *Apozemes* and *Linctuſes*, though there be no urgent Cough, nor difficulty of Breathing, not only to temper and ſoften the Blood, but likewiſe to prevent a Conſumption, which uſes often to be the effect of a Rheumatiſm.

When it comes from an old Gout, &c. 'tis Chronical.

But whenever this Conſumption proceeds from an old Gout, or a Rheumatiſm, that has returned frequently, it is plainly Chronical, and does gradually in ſeveral Years create trouble to the Lungs, and the Parts that ſerve for Reſpiration. And indeed it is of an Aſthmatick kind, attended rather with a difficulty of Breathing from the toughneſs of the Phlegm, than a pertinacious Cough. Becauſe it ſeems to ariſe rather from a Stupor of the Nerves, than from a Colliquation of the Humours.

And of an Aſthmatick kind.

But of a peculiar Nature.

But yet this Aſthmatical Conſumption to me ſeems to be of a peculiar Nature, becauſe it is not at all relieved by the choice of a good Air. For I have obſerved, that this kind of Conſumptive Perſons, though they be likewiſe Aſthmatical, breath as well in a foggy and ſmoaky Air, as in that which is thin and open. And from thence alſo it comes to paſs, that Lubricating, and Expectorating Medicines do no good in this caſe, though Incraſſating, and Opiate Medicines are fatally Miſchievous. But there is more Relief to be expected from the frequent and plentiful giving of Spirit of Hartſhorn, of Salt Armoniack, and Chymical Oyl of Juniper, and other things of that Nature, that excite the Spirits, and comfort the Nerves, than from any Opiates, or Pectoral Medicines.

As the Consumption proceeds, the Pains abate.

The more this Asthmatical Consumption grows upon the Patient, the more the Rheumatick Pains and Swellings are wont to abate. And a true and genuine Humorose Rheumatism, long before it becomes Mortal, degenerates into a Nervous Rheumatism, attended with pains running up and down, but with no evident Swelling.

When a Rheumatick Consumption is incurable.

This Rheumatick Consumption, proceeding from a Chronical Rheumatism, and happening to those that are Old, (so far as I understand) is plainly incurable. For it is a sign that Nature absolutely sinks, and is now overcome in the last Scene of a Rheumatism.

Gentle Vomits are good

Gentle Vomits repeated at due intervals (especially if the Patient bears them well, and they are not given when 'tis too late) do much towards the promoting of the Cure of this Consumption; because they open the Obstructions of the Brain and Nerves, and abate the Rheumatick pains, by taking off the stiffness, and *Stupor* of the Nervous parts; from whence it comes to pass, that a great part of the Procatartick Cause, or that which feeds the Distemper, is taken away.

Bleeding does good in the beginning.

Likewise Bleeding in the beginning of this Consumption (before the Habit of the Body is too much extenuated) does a great deal of good, not only by abating the Hectick heat, and the Rheumatick pains, but also by relieving the difficulty of Breathing.

When the Distemper is improved, it is hurtful.

But in the progress of the Distemper, when a great Emaciation has before seized the whole Habit of the Body, as I have often observed Nature to be more weakned, so their Respiration to be rendred more difficult with Bleeding. And indeed I do not at all doubt, but this Asthmatical Consumption does often proceed from Bleeding pro-

profuſely, and the often repeating of it in the Fits of a Rheumatiſm; the *Craſis* of the Blood being thereby deſtroy'd, and the whole Maſs of it impoveriſht, as it uſes to happen in all immoderate Hæmorrhages.

I have likewiſe very often by Experience found the extraordinary Vertue of the *Peruvian* Bark in extinguiſhing the Colliquative Hectick Flame, which has been kindled in the Blood, and is left there by its Rheumatick ſtate, which Flame, unleſs it is taken away either by ſome Art, or by Nature, does moſt certainly prepare the way to this Pulmonary Conſumption. *The Peruvian Bark does well.*

I have obſerved likewiſe that *Chalybeate* Medicines do for the ſame Reaſon conduce very much in the beginning of this Diſtemper, at leaſt to the gaining of ſome reſpite, if not to a perfect Cure; but eſpecially the *Chalybeate* Waters, if it be not too late when they are drank, if they paſs plentifully enough by Urine. *So Chalybeate Medicines.*

The uſe alſo of Natural and Artificial Baths, if they are uſed before the Habit of the Body is too much extenuated, is wont to promote the Cure of this Conſumption very much at the beginning, by opening the Obſtructions of the Nervous parts every where. *And Baths.*

A Milk Diet is likewiſe very beneficial at the firſt Invaſion of this Diſtemper, by leſſening the flame that is kindled in the Blood, and correcting the preternatural Acrimony of it. Though it muſt be confeſt it does not ſo well agree with theſe Patients in the progreſs of the Diſtemper, when once there comes to be a difficulty of Breathing; becauſe it uſes to cauſe a greater toughneſs of the Phlegm, that is lodged in the branches of the Wind-pipe. And it may be this Conjecture is grounded upon very good Reaſon, *And a Milk Diet at the beginning.*

to wit, that the using of Milk too much in a Rheumatism, does very much dispose the Patient to this Asthmatical Consumption.

History 1.

Mrs. *Laurence*, about the Five and Thirtieth Year of her Age, at which time too she was big with Child, fell into an Universal Rheumatism, and committed her self to the care of a certain Apothecary for several Months; till at length with a Cough, difficulty of Breathing, Hectick Fever, Emaciation, and other Symptoms of this kind, which she then had upon her, it was uncertain whether she would dye of a Rheumatism, or of a Consumption; the Rheumatism (which before was a genuine one) being degenerated into a Nervous Rheumatism, attended with a rigidity, and a wandring pain in the Limbs, but with no Swelling. At which time, being the 25*th.* of *October*, 1686. I being sent for, ordered an Electuary with the following Julep to temper the Rheumatick and Hectick heat of the Blood and Spirits, and to allay the Hysterical Affections arising from thence.

Take the Old Conserve of Red Roses, of Hipps strained through a Sieve, of each an Ounce, Lavender-flowers pouder'd, Magistery of Coral, of each a Dram, of Syrup of Corals a sufficient quantity. Mix them, and make an *Electuary*, of which let her take the quantity of a Nutmeg every six hours.

Take the Waters of Rue, Black-Cherries, of each four Ounces, of Barley Cinnamon-water three Ounces, the Compound Waters of Piony, of Briony, of each an Ounce and half, of prepared Pearl a Dram and half, of fine Sugar a sufficient quantity to sweeten them. Mingle them, and make a *Julep*, of which let

let her take four or five Spoonfuls after every Dose of the *Electuary*, and likewise at other times when she has a mind to it.

To help the pains and stiffness of her Joynts, I ordered that same Night Blistering-Plaisters to be applyed to the inside of her Arms, near the Arm-pits; and I tryed a gentle Evacuation by Stool with two Ounces of *Tinctura Sacra*, which she bore well. I ordered the following *Paregorick* Draught to be taken when she was to go to Rest.

Take of Red Poppy-water three Ounces, Barley-Cinnamon-water an Ounce, of Compound Piony-water two Drams, Salt of Wormwood six Grains, Syrup of Meconium six Drams: Mix them, and make a Draught.

October 28. I gave her the following Vomit.

Take of the Infusion of Crocus Metallorum an Ounce, Syrup of Violets two Drams. Mix them, and let them be given for a Vomit about five a Clock in the Afternoon with due care and management; and (if it be necessary) let her take between her Vomiting a Scruple of *Salt of Vitriol* twice or thrice in a Draught of warm Posset-Ale. I ordered also the following *Paregorick* Draught to be taken when the Vomit had done working.

Take of Mint-water half an Ounce, Dr. Stephen's Water three Drams, Barley-Cinnamon-water, the Cordial Milk-water, of each an Ounce, of Meconium six Drams. Mix them, and make a Draught.

From the Vomit she found an Universal Relief, and that not only from the Symptoms of her Consumption, but also of her Rheumatism. And therefore after three days I ordered the repetition of the Vomit; and then I endeavoured to extinguish the Hectick flame, which had been kindled

kindled in the Blood by the Rheumatism, and thereby to take care of her Lungs, which had been injured by it, in the manner following.

Take a sufficient quantity of the Ingredients of the Pectoral Decoction, of the Peruvian *Bark an Ounce, Balsam of Tolu a Dram; boyl them in a sufficient quantity of Spring-water to a pint and half; to the Liquor when it is strained add distilled Treacle-water, the Balsamick Syrup, of each an Ounce and half.* Mix them, and make an *Apozem*, of which let her take four Ounces three times a day for six days together, taking always in the Night-draught fifteen drops of *Helmont*'s Liquid *Laudanum*, if any Gripes, or Looseness, or want of Rest should trouble her.

When she had done using the *Apozeme*, I ordered the *Emetick Potion* to be repeated, and afterwards, *sc. Novemb.* 13. I prescribed the following Pills.

Take of the Peruvian *Bark finely pouder'd an Ounce, Mucilage of Gum Tragacanth a sufficient quantity:* Mix them, and make them into Pills of a middle size, to be gilt, of which let her take six Morning and Evening, from day to day.

With the use of which she grew perfectly well, being plainly freed not only from the pains, and stiffness of her Limbs, but likewise from her Cough, difficulty of Breathing, Oppression, Fever, and all the other Symptoms of a Pulmonary Consumption. Her Appetite also returned, and at length she likewise recovered her Strength, and her Flesh, and still enjoys very good Health, without any return of her Rheumatism, or Consumption.

History

History 2.

Mrs. *Covert*, a Virgin, about the Eighteenth Year of her Age fell into a Continual Fever, which at length was followed by another that was Intermittent, which continued for the ſpace of Eleven or Twelve Months. But this went away of its own accord, only a Humoroſe Rheumatiſm ſucceeded to it. But the Fever and Rheumatiſm in proceſs of time being (I know not by what means) in ſome meaſure overcome, yet the poor Virgin remained continually Hectical, Coughing, Short breath'd, very much Emaciated, and pale as if ſhe had no Blood in her, preſenting in a manner an *Hippocratical* Face. Moreover the Tendons of her Muſcles were almoſt univerſally ſtiff by reaſon of a preternatural thickneſs and hardneſs in them, the Trophies of her former Rheumatiſm, ſo that all her Joynts, not only the leſſer ones of her Feet and Hands, but alſo the larger being plainly unable to do their Office, or at leaſt doing it with a great deal of difficulty and pain, ſhe continued almoſt always fixt to her Chair or Bed like an Image. She was likewiſe many times ſeized with wandring, and ſhifting, ſpaſmodick, and dreadful pains up and down all about her Breaſt, and troubled with Hyſterical Faintings, and Fits of a Fever often returning at uncertain times. To all theſe Symptoms there were joyned a continual languiſhing Weakneſs, a want of Appetite, and a ſuppreſſion of her Courſes. The univerſal Habit of her Body too ſeemed to me to be very Scorbutical. A caſe verily (if any is ſo) very deplorable, which yet (with the Bleſſing of God) I did help by our Art in the following manner.

Going

Going to see this poor Virgin on the Thirtieth day of *May* 1683. to temper the Scorbutical sharpness of her Blood, and to ease in some measure her wandring Pains, which as they had continued a long time, so they did not a little wear out oppressed Nature, I ordered *Calomelanos, Diagrydium, of each fourteen Grains, Syrup of Succory with Rhubarb a sufficient quantity.* Mix them, and make a *Bolus*, to be taken in the Morning with due care: I likewise ordered two Scruples of *Wood-lice* prepared, and *Crabs-eyes* prepared, mixt together, to be given three times a day at Physical hours in a spoonful of the following *Julep*, drinking three or four spoonfuls of it after them.

Take the Waters of Baum, Black-Cherries, the Cordial Milk-water, of each four Ounces, Barley Cinnamon water, Epidemick-water, of each three Ounces, of Sugar of Pearl six Drams. Mix them, and make a *Julep.*

I also ordered the following Bag to be hung in three Gallons of midling Ale for her ordinary Drink.

Take the Roots of sharp pointed Dock, of Male-Piony, of each two Ounces, Garden and Sea Scurvy-grass, of each three handfuls, Brook-lime, Water-cresses, Tun-hoof, Pine-tops, of each two handfuls, of Aniseeds an Ounce. Mix them, and make a Bag.

On the Second of *June*, because the form of a Pouder was not so grateful to her, and that I might promote the opening of Obstructions, instead of the Pouder I substituted the following Electuary: *Take the Conserves of Hipps and Red Roses, of each half an Ounce, of Wood-lice prepared a Dram and half, Crabs-eyes prepared two Scruples, Salt of Steel twelve Grains, Syrup of Steel a sufficient*

cient quantity. Mix them, and make an Electuary, of which let her take the quantity of a Nutmeg every six hours, drinking a Draught of the Julep after it. I ordered likewise a Scruple of the Stomack-Pills with Gums to be taken the Night following.

June 5th. becaufe the form of an Electuary did not pleafe her, I fubftituted a *Chalybeate* Syrup in the room of it for the fame intention. And becaufe fhe was not eafie to work upon, I ordered inftead of the former, the following Pills to be made up. For the Syrup,

Take of the Chalybeate Wine a Quart, Tincture of Saffron, of Caftor, of each an Ounce, of fine Sugar a fufficient quantity. Boyl them to the confiftence of a Syrup. Let her take two fpoonfuls of it in the Morning, and at five a Clock in the Afternoon on thofe days fhe does not Purge, by it felf, or diluted with *Carduus water.* For the Pills,

Take the Stomack-Pills with Gums, Aloes Rofate, of each fifteen Grains, of Salt of Wormwood four Grains, Elixir Proprietatis a fufficient quantity. Mix them, and make them into four Pills, to be taken on the Morrow Night, without any ftrict Confinement.

I likewife ordered the Tendons, that were indurated and contracted by reafon of their thickneſs, fo as to be painful, to be anointed twice a day with Oyl of Amber, and Compound Spirit of Lavender, of each equal quantities before a good Fire, and to put a Flannel upon them.

Though the fwelling of the Tendons feemed to be leſſened, and her ſtiff Joynts to be rendred fomething more fit for motion, with the uſe of theſe things, yet the Syſtem of the Nerves ſeemed now and then to be grievouſly affected from her Hyſterical Fainting Fits often returning. And

there-

therefore on the Ninth of *June* I ordered four or five Spoonfuls of the following Julep to be given her when she was faint.

Take the Waters of Bawm, Black-Cherries, of each three Ounces, the Compound Waters of Bryony and Piony, of each an Ounce, of Tincture of Castor a Dram, Spirit of Salt Armoniack half a Dram, Compound Syrup of Piony ten Drams. Mix them, and make a Julep.

I repeated the Bag of Antiscorbutick Ingredients, and ordered the Purging Pills to be taken every fourth Night.

The Nerves having been relieved three or four times with the use of the Julep, that had been prescribed, I observed besides her continual Hectick Heat, sometimes also a Fit of a true Intermitting Fever, seizing her first with a chilness, and going off with profuse Sweats, though 'twas by uncertain intervals. And thereupon I did not without reason suspect that her loss of Appetite, her continual Hectick Fever, and Universal Weakness, did proceed from this Feverish Ferment lurking within, which had never yet been thrown out of the Mass of Blood; and which hitherto had so like a *Proteus* in various shapes deceived my sight. And therefore now I go, and encounter this Enemy with all the Power of the *Peruvian* Bark: For I promised my self (and my hopes were not frustrated, as the Event did afterwards prove) that when this Enemy was vanquisht, the state of her Health would be very much restored upon it; however Baths, Fomentations, and other things of that kind would be of great use to extirpate fully the Trophies of the Gout, which were left in her knotted and weakned Joynts. And therefore,

June

June 13. I ordered the following Draught to be given, and to be repeated every four hours, for seven or eight times.

Take Baum-water, Black-Cherry-water, of each an Ounce, Epidemick-water, Syrup of Clove-Gilly-flowers, of each two Drams, of the Peruvian *Bark finely pouder'd a Dram*; mix them, and make a Draught. I ordered likewise the following Julep to be taken by spoonfuls when she was faint.

Take of Cardus-water six Ounces, Barley-Cinnamon-water four Ounces, strong Piony-water two Ounces, prepared Pearl a Dram and half, white Sugar five Drams. Mix them, and make a Julep.

June 15. *Take of the* Peruvian *Bark finely pouder'd five Drams, the Mucilage of Gum Tragacanth a sufficient quantity:* Make them up into Pills of a middle size to be gilt, of which let her take six at four a Clock in the Afternoon, and when she goes to Rest from day to day, taking every Morning the *Chalybeate* Syrup before ordered. Let the Bag of Antiscorbutick Ingredients be likewise renewed. But though the Patient was perfectly freed from the Fever Fits, yet still her sickness at her Stomack, and want of Appetite continued, together with her Weakness, and the other Trophies of her inveterate Enemy. And therefore though I changed the form of the Medicine, yet I still pursued the Enemy, that was now plainly upon its flight, with the Bark, in the manner following.

Take of the Ingredients of the Purging bitter Decoction a sufficient quantity, Salt of Wormwood half a Dram, the Peruvian *Bark pouder'd half an Ounce: Infuse them in a due manner, and boyl them in a sufficient quantity of Spring-water to twelve Ounces.*

Let

Let her take four Ounces of the Liquor prest out hard from the Ingredients, every Morning, and repeat it for three days together, continuing the use of the *Chalybeate* Syrup at Four a Clock in the Afternoon.

June 27. I ordered the following Bolus to be taken every six hours, with four Ounces of the following Apozem, for three days together.

Take of the Peruvian B*ark finely pouder'd half a Dram, Syrup of Mugwort a sufficient quantity*; mix them, and make a Bolus. *Take of the* Peruvian B*ark pouder'd half an Ounce, infuse and boyl it in Cardus-water and White-Wine, of each a sufficient quantity, to twelve Ounces.* Strain it out for use.

July 6. Because the Nervous Parts seemed still to be somewhat affected, I ordered her three of the following Pills to be taken three times a day at Physical hours, and to drink four Ounces of the Tincture of the Bark just before prescribed.

Take of the Pouder of the Peruvian B*ark two Drams, Troches of Myrrh a Dram, Castor,* Ens Veneris, *of each two Scruples, the Mucilage of Gum Tragacanth a sufficient quantity.* Mix them, and make them into Pills of a middle size, to be guilt.

With this plentiful use of the Bark, though it was given in several forms, my Patient was in a wonderful manner recover'd to a state of Health, so as to be every way well, and was perfectly freed from all the Symptoms of her Consumption and Rheumatism; but only that the Tendons and Joynts, especially those of her Hands, continued stiff, and likewise something swell'd, and she did not yet gather Flesh enough. And therefore when I had by way of Preparation

taken

taken care to Purge her with fifteen Grains of *Extractum Rudii*, and a Scruple of the Fetid Pill, I ſent her down to the Bath to uſe thoſe Waters, both outwardly by bathing, and inwardly by drinking them for ſix Weeks, ordering the Tendons, and Joynts that were ſwell'd at the end of every bathing, to be embrocated for a good while and freely with the Waters of the King's Bath, and the ſame Parts (when ſhe was laid in her Bed, and diſpoſed to ſweat) to be a good while anointed with the following Liniment. *Take Oyntment of Marſh-mallows, Nerve Oyntment, of each an Ounce, Oyl of Scorpions, of white Lillies, of each half an Ounce, of Chymical Oyl of Aniſeeds three Drams:* Mix them, and make a Liniment. And for fear ſhe ſhould be faint in the uſe of the Bath, ſhe had the following Cordial in readineſs, to be taken by ſpoonfuls at any time when ſhe pleaſed.

Take the Epidemick-Water, Dr. Stephens's *Water, of each half a Pint, of Syrup of Clove-Gillyflowers two Ounces.* Mix them, and make a Cordial Julep.

In the Month of *September* my Patient returned from the uſe of the *Bath*, having found a great deal of Benefit: But eſpecially her Tendons and Joynts, that were affected, were very much reſtored by it; to promote the Cure of which yet farther, I adviſed her to uſe one of our Bagnio's here at *London* twice or thrice a Week, together with the following Medicines.

Sept. 4. 1683. *Take of the beſt Sarſaparilla four Ounces, China-Roots an Ounce and half, ſhavings of Ivory, of Hartſhorn, of each three Drams, of Raiſins of the Sun ſtoned two Ounces, Liquorice ſliced half an Ounce, after a due Infuſion boyl them in four quarts of Spring-water to two quarts.* Let her take half

a Pint of the Liquor strained thrice a day at Physical hours.

Take Cerus's of Antimony, Wood-lice prepared, of each a Dram and half. Mix them together for six Papers, of which let her take one three times a day with every Draught of the Decoction before prescribed, but especially when she goes into the Bagnio.

As soon as she had made an end of using the Bagnio, I endeavoured to promote a gentle *Diaphoresis* every Night with the use of the following Draught.

Sept. 12. 1683. *Take Carduus-water, distilled Treacle-water, of each an Ounce, of Ceruß of Antimony a Scruple, Syrup of Violets two Drams.* Mix them, and make a Draught, to be repeated for Ten Nights together. With the use of which her Joynts and Tendons received a great deal of benefit. But at length for fear the Patient's relapse into an Intermitting Fever at the end of the Year (of which I had a great and reasonable Suspicion) should frustrate the perfecting of her Cure, I advised her to repeat the use of the *Peruvian* Bark for several days, to be taken every fourth or fifth hour, in the form of the following *Apozem.*

Sept. 20. 1683. *Take of the* Peruvian Bark *pouder'd an Ounce, boyl it in Carduus-water and White-wine, of each an equal quantity to a pint and half, and then let it be prest out very hard.*

Lastly, For the getting of her Flesh again, and the farther tempering of her Hectick heat, I advised her to go into a strict Milk Diet, to be used for six Weeks in the Country Air. With the use of which she grew plump, and recovered her perfect Health, her Monthly Purgations then at length returning with a florid colour, which before

before this had been quite ſtopt for four Years, by reaſon of the emaciated and thin Habit of her Body.

But the next Year, which was 1684. in the Month of *June*, becauſe of ſome ſtiffneſs, which remained in the Tendons of her Wriſts, and of one Foot, ſhe went again to the *Bath*, and afterwards repeated the Milk Diet. From which time to this preſent ſhe has enjoyed perfect Health; and likewiſe having been married, has had Children.

With almoſt the ſame Method I happily cured Mr. *Overton*, living without *Newgate*, beyond the Expectation of all his Friends; who with a long Rheumatiſm was at length brought plainly into a Tabid ſtate, with a difficulty of Breathing, a violent and perpetual Cough, a continual Hectick Fever, a ſpitting of Matter like *Pus*, and the other ſigns of a Fatal Conſumption of the Lungs. Whoſe Caſe I here forbear to recite for Brevity's ſake.

Hiſtory 3.

Mrs. *Lane*, a Barber's Wife, whoſe Husband lived in *Cow-Lane*, being about Five and Thirty Years old, when ſhe had lived in a Conſumptive ſtate, Emaciated, and Coughing, for ſeveral Years paſt, fell in the Month of *April*, 1684. into a true Rheumatiſm, with violent Pains, and inflam'd Swellings, which yet were moving ſuddenly from one Joynt to another; with a Fever likewiſe, that was evidently of a remitting kind, accompanying of it; which had the Type of a *Tertian* (which I have very often obſerved to be the Nature eſpecially peculiar to a Rheumatick Fever.) In which caſe, whenever a new

Fever-Fit seizes the Patient, the Rheumatick Pain and Swelling, which before were almost quieted, are wont to be renewed in the Parts that were before affected, or else by a *Metastasis* of the Matter (as the Ancients love to speak) to be translated to some other Joynts. But the Fits were very long, lasting for the space of Twelve or Sixteen hours, and attended with a want of sleep, light-headedness, great tumbling and tossing, heat, and a very Feverish Pulse. All which Symptoms used to be followed, and go off with great Sweats. But at the beginning of every Fit I observed that her Rheumatick Pains always grew more sharp in the Joynts affected, or else seized some other Joynts that were free before. So that a new Rheumatism seemed to come with every Fever-Fit. Being called in the time of her Fit, I endeavoured to satisfie the present Indications with *Bleeding*, *Blisters*, *an Anodyne Draught*, *Tincture of Roses*, *a Pectoral Linctus*, *and a Pearl Julep*. And indeed all the Symptoms going off at the end of the Fit, when I came to see my Patient the next day, I reckon'd the Distemper was overcome, and removed with those things I had ordered, till at length by the return of the Fever, and Rheumatick Fit the next Night, I plainly understood how vainly I had hitherto flattered my self. And therefore according to the urgency of the Symptoms that indicated it, I bled her again, ordering the repetition of the *Hypnotick* Draught, and likewise the application of an Anodyne Cataplasm to the Joynts, that were affected with extream pain from the Rheumatism. But after I found the Type of the Fever and Rheumatism for two or three times, to be plainly a *Tertian*; and that notwithstanding the Method I had before prescribed,

ſcribed, all things continually grew worſe, the very Syſtem of the Nerves being now at length ſeized with Spaſms, but eſpecially in the time of the Fit; and her Mouth being likewiſe ulcerated with a Thruſh, being led by a happy Conjecture, I betook my ſelf in this deplorable caſe to the uſe of the *Peruvian* Bark, preſcribing a Dram to be given every third or fourth hour, when her Fit was off. With the uſe of which in the ſpace of Twenty Four hours, ſhe was freed both from her Rheumatiſm and Fever, without any other Remedy, and was well after her manner, that is, Conſumptively; but yet ſhe was leſs oppreſt in her Lungs, than ſhe had been before ſhe fell ſick. But as ſoon as ſhe got rid of her Pain and Fever, ſhe wholly neglected her Chronical Conſumption (which likewiſe ſeemed to be helpt with the Bleedings, the uſe of the Bark, and the other Medicines before preſcribed) refuſing all ſorts of Medicines; and thereupon after a Year or two ſhe dyed of that Chronical Conſumption of the Lungs.

CHAP. XII.

Of a Consumption proceeding from Fevers, especially such as are from Surfeits, Scarlate, and Intermitting Fevers; as also from the Small-Pox and Measles.

A Consumption often proceeds from these Acute Diseases.

I Have very often seen a Consumption of the Lungs take its Original from these Acute Diseases. Neither indeed have we any reason to think it strange that a heat kindled in the Humours by a Putrid Fever is wont to degenerate so easily into a Hectick, or Habitual heat seated in the Spirits, and solid Parts of the Body. For when the Spirits and Humours in the Habit of the Body have been a long time fed, or nourisht by the Blood too much inflamed and heated, they do not easily shake off that Preternatural Heat. And what wonder is it if from this Hectical and fixt Flame a Colliquation and Consumption are apt to follow? And this is wont to happen especially in the Small-Pox, Measles, and in Scarlate, and Crapulous Fevers. Because in these Diseases there is so great a Colliquation of the Humours follows, caused by that sharp heat that attends them, that it can hardly be stopt afterwards; whereupon the new Chyle afterwards cannot be united, or assimilated to the Solid Parts. And from hence it comes to pass, that the Preternatural Heat of the Parts is not always quite extinguisht by the critical eruption made in the

Especially from the Small-Pox, &c.

former

former Diseases, but there still remains a Hectick heat in the Solid Parts, together with a dry Cough, with other signs of the Serous, and Colliquative state of the Blood (after the other Distempers are cured) which even presages a Consumption that is to follow.

What is the usual fore-runner of this Consumption.

The most usual fore-runner of this Consumption is a light Peripneumonick Affection, or Scrophulous Tubercles bred in the Lungs themselves; which are always wont to arise first in the declension of the former Diseases. From whence it comes to pass, that not only a Feverish Heat is kindled again, but it likewise returns attended with a Cough, difficulty of Breathing, want of Rest, a Thirst, want of Appetite; yea, and sometimes with a pain in the Breast, and other signs of an incipient Consumption. For this Consumption for the most part is quick, and Acute, because it comes upon Nature when she is already weakned by the former Distemper; neither can it be prevented, or cured any way without timely and repeated Bleedings, though the state of the Patient seems never so weak. And indeed the neglect of Bleeding, or doing of it too late, or too sparingly in the declension of the preceding or Original Disease, uses for the most part to be the occasion of this Consumption.

This Consumption for the most part is Acute.

Bleeding is necessary as well to prevent as to Cure it.

But when we have bled the Patient as often, and as much as we ought to do, the rest of the Cure is to be performed with the diligent use of Expectorating, and Balsamick Medicines, already described in the General Method; as also of a Milk Diet, and Temperate Juleps. What I have said of a Consumption coming after the Measles, Small-Pox, as also Scarlate, and Crapulous Fevers, (all which Diseases are of one and the

After which Expectorating and Balsamick Medicines must be used.

same kind, to wit, of a Serose, and Colliquative Nature) the same may likewise be affirmed with the same Reason of all Scorbutical and Chronical Fevers; as also, generally speaking, of any kind of Fevers, that have terminated without a fair and due *Crisis*. For the Feverish Ferment being in this manner rather depress't by force, than overcome, there succeeds a mild Hectical Heat to the former Putrid Flame, which will afterwards introduce a Consumption after it. And therefore even in the declension of these Fevers, what sort soever they are of, we ought to bleed, and then finish the rest of the Cure in the manner as I have hinted in this Paragraph.

In the declension of some Fevers we must bleed.

Malignant Fevers may bring a Consumption.

And I do not doubt but that even Malignant and Pestilential Fevers, which are wont to have a Critical termination by Apostemes and Ulcers, may likewise bring a Consumption by throwing the Feverish Matter by the way of a *Crisis* upon the tender Substance of the Lungs, from whence Swellings, and ill-natur'd Ulcers arising, are apt to bring a very Acute Consumption. But the Cure of it must be performed with the timely and diligent use of Expectorating, Absterging, and Balsamick Medicines before described; by which means we may as soon as is possible clear the Lungs. But here I have a mind to add some few things particularly of the Original of a Consumption proceeding from Intermitting Fevers. *Scil.*

Observations concerning a Consumption from Intermitting Fevers.

Observ. 1. First, That I have observed a Consumption to have its Original from no other Fever more frequently than from an Intermitting one. Which to me seems to happen for two Reasons. First, because this Fever either from its own peculiar Nature (because it has an inexhausted Source in the

the Habit of the Body) or from the neglect of giving Efficacious Medicines in time, and in a good quantity, is very Chronical, and many times though it is driven away, returns again; and from thence it comes to pass that at length a Hectical, and continual heat is brought upon the Spirits and Solid Parts by this Putrid Heat prevailing for a long time; and thereupon there must necessarily follow a Serous Colliquation of the Humours, together with a Cough, and the other Symptoms that accompany a Consumption.

Secondly, because this sort of Patients, having no suspicion that this kind of Distemper will be Mortal, as they commonly make slight of it, so they are wont to neglect themselves, not only endeavouring to Cure themselves with I know not what Receipts of Old Women, (from whence it comes to pass, that under the pretence of Curing the Fever, they many times procure an Inflammatory and Venomous disposition to the Blood and Humours) but likewise very often exposing themselves carelesly to the cold Air, even in the time of the Fit, and getting one Cold after another, they at length suffer for their carelesness and ignorance, by a Consumption caused by the often taking of Cold, and the neglecting of it too in this distemper'd state of the Humours. Which Consumption is wont to go by the less infamous Name of a Catarrh with these poor Patients; till at length through their Negligence it becomes incurable. And therefore I would give this Advice to all Persons, that they do not from a false Opinion of the Innocent Nature of this Disease, trust to the Receipts of Quacks, and Old Women; but that they would immediately make it their business

to

to Cure it perfectly, and in due time, with the plentiful use of the *Peruvian* Bark (the only mighty Antidote of this Distemper) and to prevent the return of the Fever by repeating the use of it. For a frequent relapse into this kind of Fever does threaten a Consumption as well as if it were plainly continual. I likewise advise these Patients out of the same good will to have a great care of taking of Cold so long as the Distemper continues, but especially in the time of the Fit.

Observ. 2. Secondly, This Consumption is for the most part Chronical, and continues for the space of a Year, or more, before it comes to its height, partaking in this respect of the Nature of the Original Disease, upon which it depends.

Observ. 3. Thirdly, The Pathognomonick Sign of this Consumption is, that from the first beginning of the Disease there is a Feverish Paroxysm every day, or each day, or every third day, according to the peculiar Nature of the Original Distemper, always joyned with the Hectick Fever, together with a Cough, difficulty of Breathing, and the other ordinary signs of a Pulmonary Consumption.

Observ. 4. Fourthly, In the Cure of this Consumption the *Peruvian* Bark ought always to be mixt in good quantities with the Pectoral Medicines. For though I have freed several from a deplorable Consumption of this kind in three Weeks or a Month in the Spring-time with an Ounce or two of the *Peruvian* Bark without any Pulmonary Medicine, and without a relapse (of a Cure of which kind I shall not think much to add an Instance or two by and by:) Yet I never my self cured any one of this sort of Consumptive Patients, nor do I remember one cured by

by any other even with the most diligent use of Antiphthifical Medicines without mixing the Bark with them.

History 1.

Mr. *Thompson* a Painter, living in St. *Nicholas Lane* near *Lumbard-street*, about the Year 1674. in the beginning of the Month of *October*, at Midnight, after the eating too freely of Salmon, and his Wife at the same hour were taken in their Beds with a *Quotidian* Ague, or as I think a Treble *Quartane*. The Wife was ill treated by an Apothecary with I know not what Medicines so long, that though she seemed freed from the stated Fits of the Fever before *January*, yet by reason of her Weakness she kept her Bed, and lay as if she were just ready to dye. For her Pulse was very weak, and quick, she was troubled with frequent Swoonings, pertinacious Watchings, almost a continual Sickness, and Vomitings, had large and Colliquative Sweats, a great Thirst, a plentiful Spitting, a continual Restlessness, and extraordinary Affections of her Nerves like Hysterical, and no Stomack. The poor sick Woman, that now expected to dye every moment, earnestly wish'd for the return of her former Fever, so she were upon that Condition freed from her present Miseries. Having given her the bitter Decoction with *Senna* twice for that purpose, as I would have it, I brought her former Fever again with its true Periodick Fits. And then in the time between the Fits I ordered the *Peruvian* Bark in several forms to a good quantity, to wit, an Ounce and half. With the compleat use of which she perfectly recovered without the least return of her Distemper,

ſtemper, or the Symptoms of it. Neither did I order her any thing more beſides Hyſterick Juleps and Opiates, as the Symptoms required.

But the Husband, becauſe he was of a ſtrong Habit of Body, and engaged in much Buſineſs, but eſpecially becauſe he obſerved his Wife to grow every day worſe with the Medicines which were unskilfully given her by the Apothecary, look'd out for no help for himſelf, either from a Phyſician or the Apothecary, expecting that the Spring being now approaching, his Diſtemper would go away of it ſelf.

And every day after his Fit was off he did his Buſineſs both at home and abroad (his Fever in the mean time keeping its ſimple form with one and the ſame tenour in its ſtated Fits and Intermiſſions all this while.) But at length after his Wife was well, when he found himſelf every day to grow weaker and weaker with his Diſtemper, he was about to deſire my help; but both the approaching of the Spring-time, and a hurry of great Buſineſs diverted him from this Prudent Reſolution. 'Tis true indeed, according to the Opinion he had before, about the beginning of the next Spring his Fever in its ſimple form left him of its own accord; but ſtill he had no Stomack, his Strength was gone, the Habit of his Body lean and pale, his Pulſe always quick and weak; he had a great Thirſt, a ſhortneſs of Breath, a dry Cough, that troubled him continually both Day and Night, with all the other Symptoms of an Incipient Conſumption.

At length he comes to me, both he and his Wife imploring my help, and much lamenting his delay. Preſently I well enough thought I had ſufficient reaſon to believe that this Incipient

pient Consumption was the true Off-spring of his former *Proteus*-like Disease; and therefore I ordered almost nothing of common Antiphthisical or Pectoral Medicines, with the help of which I thought it almost impossible that the Patient, who was now almost brought into the state of a *Marasmus*, should be restored to his former Health. But I concluded that the whole Cure was to be performed with the use of the *Peruvian* Bark, by which means the Fever being once perfectly conquered, I rightly judged that the other Symptoms would go away of their own accord, as the Event it self did happily prove. And therefore I made it my business only to make the form of the Medicine as grateful as I could, lest I should have the Fancy of the Patient to strive with as well as his Disease. And therefore I ordered the Pouder of the *Peruvian* Bark in the form of Tablets, in the manner following.

Take of the Pouder *of the* Peruvian Bark *an Ounce and half, Sugar-candy dissolved in eight Ounces of Wormwood-water, thickned with the Mucilage of Gum Tragacanth.* Mix them, and make them into Tablets, so that every one may weigh two Drams; let him eat one four times a day, drinking four Ounces of the clear Pectoral Decoction after it.

When he had taken all the Tablets, presently that Hectick Fever (which as it was the Genuine Off-spring of the Intermitting Fever, so it still partook of the Nature of its Parent) plainly went away, together with his Cough, difficulty of Breathing, and the other Company of Fatal Symptoms of a Consumption; but only that his Appetite was not yet perfectly restored, neither had he got his Flesh, by reason of the shortness of the time.

And

And therefore, the time of the Year enclining me to it, I sent him presently into the Country Air; out of which after the space of two or three Weeks, he returned strong and plump, having got a good Colour, and a great Stomack, and enjoys very good Health to this very day.

History 2.

A certain *Norway* Merchant, that lived at *Newington* on the other side of the *Thames*, that Year when Mr. *Talbor* was very Famous for the liberal use of the *Peruvian* Bark in the Cure of Intermitting Fevers; and likewise that same Month, wherein I had recovered the same Merchant's Wife beyond the expectation of all those that were about her of a Remitting Fever, accompanied with very direful Symptoms with the use of the *Peruvian* Bark amongst other Remedies; when he himself was taken with a true and benign *Tertian* Ague: Leaving his Friend, and his known and familiar ordinary Physician, he went with the Croud to Mr. *Talbor*, and having paid five Guinea's, he had an Ounce of the Bark for a great Secret; which when he had taken, he presently was well recovered. But there being no care taken by that Emperick to prevent the return of the Fever, after two, or at most three Weeks, the Distemper at length returned, of which he was freed again and again, with repeating the use of the Bark, but not without giving in hand the former extravagant Price every time it returned. The Gentleman being saving, chose rather to pass the remaining part of the Winter under the miserable Symptoms of this Fever, than to be always draining his Pocket in this manner, hoping in the mean time that his

his Distemper would at least leave him the next Spring of its own accord. But with the long continued course of this Fever (which perhaps the frequent taking of Cold in the time of the Fit, and the Old Women's and Quacks Receipts, that were none of the wholsomest (all which he was wont to use very greedily, and without distinction) did promote.) I say, with the long continuance of this Ague, there seemed at the beginning of the Spring to be kindled a continual Hectick Heat in the intervals of the Fits of the Putrid Fever, attended with a great Cough, difficulty of Breathing, Colliquative Sweats, a continual Thirst, Nauseating, and other Symptoms of this kind. Whereupon before the end of *June*, at which time he desired my help, thinking he should soon dye of a Consumption; he was so weak, and emaciated, that he had perfectly a *Hippocratical* Face, and when I first saw him I should plainly have thought him past Cure, if this Consumption had proceeded from any other cause than an Intermitting Fever. But yet I did rightly judge a Consumption arising in this manner, though to all outward appearance deplorable, to be curable, because it was in my Power, at least at this time of the Year, to give that great Antidote, the *Peruvian* Bark, in that manner as not only to take off the Intermitting Fever, but also to prevent the return of it. Whereupon I did not at all doubt but when the Fuel was once taken away, the Hectical Flame would soon be extinguisht of its own accord, together with the whole Company of Pulmonary Symptoms depending thereon. Which Conjecture of mine was very quickly proved to be true by the happy Event. For the Fits of the Intermitting Fever being once taken away by giving

giving an Ounce of the *Peruvian* Bark in the form of Pills, in the space of four or five days, the Hectick Fever also vanisht of its own accord; likewise the Cough, with the other Pulmonary Symptoms was much lessened, and his Appetite much increased. But when the return of the Original Distemper was prevented by repeating the use of the same Bark, all the Symptoms of the Consumption vanisht within the space of a Month, even without a Grain of Pectoral Medicines. And my Patient (as far as I know) to this very day looks well, and is lusty.

History 3.

Mr. *Lane*, a Vintner at the Sign of the *Queen's Head* in *Southwark*, a Man that was truly robust, and tall, about the middle of his Age, in the beginning of the *Autumn*, in the Year 1668. was seized with a violent *Quartan* Ague; he presently committed himself to the care of a Skilful Physician, who treated him with the usual Remedies, and in the old Method, to wit, with Bleeding, Vomiting, frequent Purging, Febrifuge Juleps, and tedious Deobstruent and Altering Apozems. But yet he grew every day worse; at length his Ague was doubled, yea, trebled, so that he was no day free from his Fever; and about the end of *December* his Fits were so long, that almost presently after one was off another came on: He was so weak too, that he could scarcely rise out of his Bed; and his Stomack was so weak, that he hardly could eat so much as Water-gruel. He was continually, and extreamly Thirsty, because he never seemed to be free from his Original Fever, or the Hectick, which was come upon it; and therefore being restless,

restless, he was continually tossing himself up and down in his Bed. And moreover there appeared Purple Scorbutical Spots, and those very large, every where almost all over his Body, but especially in his Breast and Limbs: His Legs and Thighs, as also his Belly and Breast, were very much swelled, like those that have the Dropsie. His Cough was troublesome, and continual, and his breathing difficult, and very unequal. So that the Patient at the first sight seemed to me to have not only an Intermittent Fever, but also a continual Hectick, arising from the former; and upon that to have fallen into a Pulmonary Consumption, and an Universal Dropsie. When it was so, that they plainly had no hopes of the Patient's Life, I was at last sent for by his Friends, not so much to Cure his Fever (which they judged to be incurable before the Spring Weather came) as to give him some help against his Consumption, Dropsie, and Scurvy, Distempers that raged so violently, that they seemed to threaten almost immediate Death. But the Patient himself loathing even Food it self, though the most delicious, much more Medicines, with the great quantity of which his Stomack had been long burdened, did with a great deal of difficulty consent that I should attempt his Cure with any kind of Medicines. But at length his Friends with much entreaty obtained this of him, that he would for three or four days take my Specifick Pills made of the *Peruvian* Bark, only for a Tryal.

In which time having taken six Drams of the Pouder, he presently escaped the next Fit. The next day, when I came to see my Patient, I found him plainly Triumphing over his Enemy, eating a potch'd Egg, and ready to ride out in

a Coach, which was now at the Door, in order to follow his neceſſary Occaſions. But which ſeemed much more wonderful to me, as all the Spots were diſappeared, ſo likewiſe that Dropſical Swelling went away without even any ſenſible Evacuation. Alſo his difficulty of Breathing and Cough, with the other Symptoms of an incipient Conſumption, ſeemed to be very much abated, and they decreaſed every day, till at laſt the Patient had by little and little recovered his former ſtate of Health. 'Tis true indeed, this Fever after a Month returned in the form of a ſimple *Quartan*, and continued till he had had almoſt four Fits. But yet it went quite away without the uſe of any Remedies, or the former Symptoms following upon it; from which time the Patient enjoyed his Health very well, till at length after one Year, and ſome part of another, he dyed of a Bleeding at the Noſe.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Of an Icterical, or Hepatick Consumption.

THE Blood, as soon as it has here and there in its Circulation distributed the new Chylous Parts, and those that are fit for Nourishment, becomes plainly sharp, as if it were imbued with a Ferment, from the Saline and Acrious Particles, which by the Law of Nature it still contains in it self (to the end that from thence the Bile, and other necessary Ferments of the Body may be supplyed, and every day renewed.) And therefore by the same Sagacity of Nature there is Provision made that after she has in this manner done what is sufficient for the necessary Ferments, the Acrious and superfluous remainders should as Excrements be forthwith thrust and thrown out by the pores of the Skin, by the Kidneys, the Glandules of the great Guts, and the other Avenues, or Emunctories of the Body; lest the Mass of Blood it self being burdened, and oppress with this kind of Particles, and thereupon brought into a distemper'd state, should not be able to perform its Natural Office.

How a Jaundies causes a Consumption.

From what I have now said it is evident to Reason how many ways a Jaundies is wont to occasion a Consumption. For whether it be Accidental, as when it proceeds from an Obstruction of the Natural course of the Bile from the Gall-Bladder into the Cavity of the *Duodenum*,

caused by a Stone, or the glutinousness of the parts of the Bile; or whether it be more Habitual, coming from a defective separation of the Bilious parts in the Liver, caused by a Schirrous hardness or an Exulceration of that part, there are two things, which must necessarily be the Effects of it; to wit, a want of Bile in the Intestines, and too great a congestion of it in the Blood. By the first of these, Nature for want of a due *Menstruum* in the Volatilization of the Chyle is hindred from the convenient separation of the Excrementious from the Chylous parts: From whence it comes to pass, that the Excrements of the Guts containing in them both parts, are voided of a white colour, together with a manifest faintness and weakness of the Patient, even from the very beginning of the Distemper. Because by this continual Substraction of the new Chyle there is caused by degrees an Universal *Atrophy*; which I have already hinted in the Appendix to the First Book. But by the latter the Mass of Blood itself is altered and distempered, as being too much saturated with Bilious Particles, that are sharp and pungent. Which discovers itself not only by an Universal Itching excited in the Habit of the Body, but also by a yellow Tincture coming upon all the Skin, and by the very red and yellowish colour of the Urine. From this Collection of sharp and bilious Particles in the Blood (at least when it happens to be long, and Habitual) no Body must think it strange if even the very Mass of Blood is vitiated, and contracts a Hectical Heat; and any one may as easily observe how soon the Lungs, being from thence affected with a Hectical Heat, are apt to be stuffe, to swell, to be inflamed, and putrefie. So that the Jaundies, whenever

ever it is Chronical and Habitual, by gradually spoyling the *Crasis* of the Blood, is wont likewise to bring a Chronical Consumption of the Lungs. Which also is not a little promoted by the Oppression of the Hypochondres, which continually creates a weight in them, caused by the preternatural thickness and compactness of the Liver; to wit, whenever the Jaundies is Chronical; and likewise from the Colick of the Stomack, or those dreadful Spasmodick Pains, which are wont to return often, from the Obstruction of the Gall-duct by a Stone, or the Glutinousness Viscidity of the Bile; or else from an Inflammation and Exulceration of the Liver itself, to wit, whenever this Distemper is Accidental, and more Acute. For as it is impossible but the Lungs must be much injured by the consent they have with the Liver that lyes so near to them, and must likewise necessarily partake with it of the Spasmodick Contraction in the manner of Hysterical Suffocations; whereupon their tender Substance must needs be very much injured, and changed from their Natural Tone by that frequent Constriction; to wit, in an Accidental Jaundies: So likewise whenever it is Habitual, the Hypochondriacal Melancholy, which is wont always to accompany the Gravative Oppression caused by the Obstruction of the Liver, does dispose Persons to a Consumption of the Lungs it may be more than any other Passions of the Mind. 'Tis true indeed that I have very seldom met with a Consumption of the Lungs proceeding from an Accidental Jaundies, whether this Disease has had its Original from the Obstruction of the Bile-duct, or from an Inflammation and Exulceration of the Liver it self: For by reason of the violent Colick, or Spasmo-

This Consumption is promoted by an Oppression of the Hypochondres.

A Consumption is seldom caused by an Accidental Jaundies.

dick Pain, and the Acute Inflammatory Fever; which are wont for the most part to accompany this Jaundice, the Patient very seldom happens to live so long, that the Blood can undergo so great an alteration from the Bilious Particles preternaturally heaped up in it, as to be disposed to form a Consumption of so Chronical a Nature. But before it is possible for the Blood to undergo such an alteration as is able to produce so great an Effect, either the Distemper is taken off from the Patient by Art, or the Patient is killed by the Distemper. But there is no Disease does come more frequently than a Consumption upon a Chronical and Habitual Jaundies, proceeding from a Schirrousness, or too great a Compactness and hardness of the Substance of the Liver; which Consumption for the most part is wont to terminate in a Fatal Dropsie. For as this is a Disease of several Years, because it is attended with no very great Symptom; so the Bile which is thereupon preternaturally heaped up in the Blood, though it is not in so great a quantity as in an Accidental Jaundies, yet by its long stay in, and frequent cohobations with it (if I may speak) it does more effectually alter the whole Mass, and disorder it; and it is no wonder if the tender Substance of the Lungs does at length get some fatal Mischief from it. The Evident or Procatarctick Causes of this Consumption, are, commonly frequent and long Debauches, and the more grievous Passions of the Mind succeeding alternately one another. By the first, the Substance of the Liver, and perhaps the Lungs too happens almost always to be too much heated and stuffe with superfluous Juice; and by the latter it happens to be spasmodically girt, or compress. By both together the Liver (and it may be

But no Disease comes more frequently upon a Chronical Jaundies.

The Procatarctick causes of this Consumption.

be the Lungs too) is rendred too cloſe or compact in its ſubſtance, if it does not alſo become Schirrous, or inflam'd and ulcerated. And from hence there muſt neceſſarily follow too great a Collection of Bile in the Blood, and thereupon a Morbid alteration of it, an Oppreſſion of the Hypochondres, a Melancholy, with the other ſigns juſt now mentioned, which tend to a Conſumption of the Lungs. And hereupon I uſe to call this a Crapulous Conſumption. For it is well known even to any one that has had but a little Experience in the Practice of Phyſick, how from anxious Care, and other troubleſom Paſſions of the Mind, and much and accuſtomed drinking alternately ſucceeding one another, ſome happen often to pay dear for their ill-ſpent Life, by an untimely and miſerable loſs of it cauſed by this kind of Conſumption; to which an *Aſcites*, and ſometimes an *Anaſarca* is wont to be joyned not long before they dye.

The Diagnoſtick Signs of this Conſumption are taken, 1. From the Urine.

The Diagnoſtick Signs of this Conſumption are to be taken from three Heads; to wit, from the Urine, the Skin, and the Hypochondres. Firſt, for the Urine, that is very little in quantity, very full of contents, and of a very red and yellowiſh colour like Mum. 'Tis true indeed the Urine of all Perſons in a Conſumption, by reaſon of the Fever, is high colour'd, and but little in quantity, and likewiſe by reaſon of the preſent Colliquation full of Contents; and in this manner it is wont to appear in Putrid Intermitting Fevers. But in an Hepatick, or Iſteritious Conſumption all thoſe appearances are always found in a much greater degree; and by how much the more the Subſtance of the Liver is obſtructed, and the greater the Collection of the Bile in the Blood thereupon is, by ſo much

the more intense they always are. For by the mixture of the Bile the Serous or Urinary part of the Blood, as it uses to be imbued with a very deep red and yellowish Tincture, so it is apt to be coagulated, and to precipitate its heterogeneous parts; from whence we may deduce the reason why the Urine of this sort of Consumptive Persons uses to be so little in quantity, and so full of Contents, as well as red and yellowish; also the colour of the Skin is yellowish. I do confess indeed that the Skin of all Persons that are in a Consumption, growing thick from the contraction of the Parts, so far as the Emaciation has prevailed, loses its wonted lustre; but in this Consumption, besides the paleness, and that squalidness of the Countenance, there is a different and uncertain yellowness more manifest one day than another; but especially about the Neck, Back, and some other parts of the Body, that are covered with a thicker Skin; though it is not so deep as it uses to be in an Accidental Jaundies, where there is a much greater quantity of Bile heaped up in the Blood by the total Obstruction of the Bile-duct, than where it is only imperfectly separated from the Blood by reason of the Obstruction of the Glands of the Liver. Thirdly, there is always the sense of a gravative Oppression in the Hypochondres joyn'd with a Melancholy proceeding from the Obstruction of the Liver, and the bulk of it being enlarged thereupon; which very often grows so hard, and is so much increased in its Magnitude, that from thence not only the right Hypochondre happens to be much distended and elevated, but likewise a Swelling, as it were hard and renitent, may be perceived in it, even by the external touch.

2. From the Skin.

3. From the Hypochondres

This

This Conſumption is always Chronical, and of ſeveral Years, becauſe it proceeds from a ſlow and lingring cauſe. That which the Perſons in this Conſumption ſpit is likewiſe more viſcid and plentiful, as it uſes to be in every ſlow Conſumption. *This Conſumption is always Chronical.*

As this Conſumption begins with a want of Appetite, and a loathing of Food, ſo it almoſt always ends in a ſlow and painful *Aſcites*; to wit, as ſoon as the Liver is grown ſo hard from the progreſs of the Diſeaſe, that the Lymphatick Veſſels, which creep upon it, happen from their Conſtriction to be broken; to which alſo a frequent Bleeding at the Noſe, proceeding from the circulation being hindred in other parts by the ſame Obſtructions, uſes almoſt always to be joyned. And though this Conſumption may be curable, when a Skilful Phyſician is ſent for in time by a Patient, that will be Obedient to Rules, yet there is no Conſumption more Fatal than this is, when once there comes a Dropſie upon it from the Rupture of the *Lympheducts* cauſed by the hardneſs of the Liver. Nor indeed can the miſerable Patient have ſo much as an eaſie Death, by reaſon of the dreadful and continual Pains, his ſhortneſs of Breath, and the other Symptoms, that are wont to accompany this lingring Dropſie. *It ends in an Aſcites.*

The General Indications of Cure are only two; to wit, the reſtitution of the Lungs, that are diſtempered, to a ſound ſtate; and the taking away of the cauſe, by which the Lungs happened to be ill affected. The firſt Indication we may ſatisfie with the uſe of Pulmonary Remedies, already mentioned in the Second Book in the General Method. But we muſt anſwer the ſecond Indication with the help of *Hepaticks*, *Diureticks*, *The Indications of Cure.*

Diureticks, *Chalybeates*, and other such-like Medicines, which by removing the Obstructions of the Liver, may restore the due and free secretion of the bilious Particles from the Mass of Blood, and promote the Excretion of the Bile into the Intestines by the Bile-duct; by which means the cause of the *Atrophy*, and likewise of this Symptomatical Consumption of the Lungs may be perfectly removed. But in what manner the General Method of the Cure of a Consumption is to be altered by the mixing of Hepaticks with Pulmonary Medicines (that we may satisfie both Indications) I had rather shew by some Examples, than by the description of a new Method, least I should seem to spin out this Discourse to too tedious a length. And therefore I will presently give a History or two relating particularly to this business, only premising first this general Observation, which it is convenient to have in our Eye through the whole Method of Cure in this Consumption; and that is that for Pectoral Medicines we must always make choice of those that are Inciding, Abstersive, and Carminative; plainly avoid Incrassating things, and use Mucilaginous Medicines, mixed with other altering Medicines moderately; being directed thus to do, not only by the toughness of the Phlegm (which this kind of Consumptive Patients with all that they can do can hardly expectorate or hawk up;) but also by the obstructed state of the Liver it self; where indeed in this case the first Seeds of this Consumption are lurking: And from thence it comes to pass, that though this Consumption, when it is but beginning, may sometimes admit of a perfect Cure only with the use of Inciding and *Chalybeate* Medicines, which by removing the Obstructions

The Pectoral Medicines we use must be always Inciding, Abstersive, and Carminative.

ſtructions of the Liver, and conſequently by taking away the Procatartick cauſe of the Diſeaſe, do likewiſe ſufficiently provide for the Lungs, which have not yet received ſo much Miſchief, but it may go off, and vaniſh of its own accord after there is no more Fuel ſupplyed from a diſtempered Liver. Yet I never ſaw this kind of Conſumption cured by Pulmonary Medicines alone; but I have always obſerved that it has been very much, and quickly confirmed even to a fatal degree with the plentiful uſe of Incraſſating Medicines, and of all thoſe things, which increaſe the Obſtructions of the Liver. And therefore as common Milk, and all things made of it, yea, and Aſſe's Milk it ſelf, much more a ſtrict Milk Diet, is not convenient in the Cure of this Conſumption. So likewiſe for the ſame Reaſon it is beſt to abſtain from all uſe of *Laudanum* and any ſort of *Opiates*, unleſs there is a great neceſſity to give them. The Patient muſt carefully avoid Sadneſs, which does always promote the conſtriction of the parts of the Liver. He muſt likewiſe live in a thin and open Air, and there uſe moderate Exerciſe every day, all which do very much help to remove the Obſtructions of the Liver. But above all things the long uſe of bitter, and *Chalybeate* Medicines does promote this Cure; and eſpecially the *Chalybeate* Waters, if the Obſtructions are not come to that height as to hinder the paſſing off of the Waters by Urine. But if it be ſo, we muſt Religiouſly abſtain from the uſe of them, leſt the Diſtemper be quickly rendred incurable, by bringing a Dropſie ſooner than it would otherwiſe have happened.

But this Conſumption is never cured with Pectoral Medicines alone.

We muſt abſtain from Incraſſating Medicines.

How the Patient is to govern himſelf.

Hiſtory

History 1.

Mr. *Dell*, about the Twentieth Year of his Age, when he had for several Years before been troubled with a difficulty of Breathing, an Asthmatick Cough, together with other signs of a Chronical Consumption of the Lungs, and had been affected with somewhat a yellowish Tincture in his Skin, and had his Urine of the same colour, with other signs of an obstructed Liver, fell at length into an Inflammatory Fever, accompanyed with dreadful pains of his Breast, a Thirst, want of Rest, and likewise a little Tincture of Blood in what he spit, and other signs of the Inflammation of the Tubercles of the Lungs, and he desired my help. Presently by looking on his Urine, which was of a very red yellowish colour, and likewise full of Contents like Mum; as also from a light yellowness of his Skin (though I had never seen the Young Man before this, that I know of) I rightly guest that the Peripneumonick Fever came by some Accident upon the Patient, that was before in the state of an Icteritious or Hepatick Consumption. And therefore the first day, which was the 9*th.* of *Nov.* 1688. I ordered Ten Ounces of Blood to be presently taken away from the right Arm, and four Ounces of the following *Apozeme* to be given with a Spoonful of a *Linctus* very often.

Take Oyl of sweet Almonds, Syrup of Hedge-Mustard, of each two Ounces, of white Sugar-candy two Drams; mix them exactly, and make a *Linctus.*

Take of the Pectoral Decoction depurated a Quart, Tincture of Saffron, the Syrup of the five opening Roots, of each an Ounce and half; mingle them, and make an *Apozeme.*

To

To ease the pain of his Breast and Side, I ordered the following Fomentation to be applyed hot to the Parts affected, when the Pain was great, being first put into an Oxe's Bladder, so that the Bladder should be but half full.

Take Parsley-Roots, Fennel-Roots, Linseed, Fenugreek-seeds, of each two Ounces, the Flowers of Camomile, of Melilote, of each two handfuls; boyl them in a sufficient quantity of Spring-water for a Fomentation. I took care that when the Bladder was removed, a Flannel should be rub'd warm with the following Liniment, and put upon the Parts affected.

Take of the Oyntment of Marsh-mallows half an Ounce, Oyl of white Lillies, Oyl of Bricks, of each three Drams; mix them, and make a Liniment. To comfort his Spirits I ordered the following Cordial *Julep* to be taken by Spoonfuls at any time.

Take Baum-water, Black-Cherry-water, of each three Ounces, of Epidemick-water two Ounces, of Syrup of Clove-gillyflowers ten Drams; mix them, and make a *Julep*.

Nov. 10. His Fever being yet very high, and his Pain very violent, I again ordered Eight Ounces of Blood to be taken from the same Arm, at which he had been bled before; and because of his great Thirst fifteen Grains of the finest Salt of Nitre, and half a Dram of white Sugar mixt together, to be dissolved in every draught of Beer that he took; likewise a Clyster of Milk and Sugar, with Camomile-flowers boyled in the Milk to be given, if he had not a Stool of his own accord; and (if the Pain required it) a Plaister of equal quantities of *Paracelsus* and *De Minio* Plaisters to be spread upon Leather, and to be applyed to the Parts affected; like-

likewise when he was to go to Rest (if his Pain were still very great) fifteen Drops of *Helmont*'s Liquid *Laudanum*, to be given in a little Draught of the *Julep*, and an Ounce of Stone-Horse dung to be infused cold in the Pectoral *Apozeme*. With the use of which things he seemed to be something better, his Fever being now very much abated; but then having made a diligent inspection of his Urine, Skin, and Stools, I was more certain of the Obstruction of his Liver. And therefore in the stead of the former *Apozeme*, I ordered that which follows with a *Linctus*, to be taken to the quantity of four Ounces every four hours.

Take a sufficient quantity of the Ingredients of the Pectoral Decoction, the Roots of Parsley, Fennel, Succory, Grass, of each two Ounces, the Roots of Turmerick, the inner Bark of the Barberry-tree, of each an Ounce, the shavings of Harts-horn, of Ivory, of each half an Ounce, of Currans two Ounces, of Saffron tyed up in a Cloth half a Dram; boyl them in a sufficient quantity of Spring-water to a Quart, adding when they have done boyling half a Pint of the best White-wine: To the Liquor when it is strained add of the Magisterial Water of Earth-worms three Ounces, the Syrup of the five Opening Roots, the Traumatick Decoction, of each two Ounces; mix them, and make an *Apozem*.

I likewise ordered two Ounces and a half of *Tinctura Sacra* to be given when he went to Rest, with which he had two Stools the next Morning with relief. And therefore *Nov.* 11*th*. I ordered the use of the *Apozem* to be continued, the Tincture to be repeated when he went to Rest, and two Quarts of the Purging Mineral Waters boyled to three Pints, and turned with half a Pint of Milk, to be given to drink the next Morning; and

and in the room of the former *Julep* I substituted the following to be drank plentifully.

Take Parsley-water, Fennel-water, of each four Ounces, the Magisterial Water of Earth-worms, Syrup of the five Opening Roots, of each two Ounces. Mix them, and make a *Julep.*

Nov. 13. With this Method all the Symptoms began to be abated, and he did not make such a Jaundies Urine as he did before. And thereupon I ordered a continuation of the *Apozeme*, *Linctus*, and *Julep*, which were last prescribed, and the repetition of the *Tinctura Sacra* when he went to Rest; and likewise for the farther opening of the Obstructions of the Liver, three of the following Pills to be given every four hours in a Spoonful of the *Linctus*, with a Draught of the *Apozeme.*

Take the Pouder of Wood-lice prepared, Goose-dung, of each a Dram, of Saffron half a Scruple, of the Syrup of the five Opening Roots a sufficient quantity. Mix them, and make them into Pills of a moderate size, to be gilt.

Nov. 14. After I had taken this care for the relief of his obstructed Liver with good Success, I began, as the thing required, to take more particular care of his Lungs, which had suffered very much from the defect of this Entrail, because his Chronical Cough, as also his difficulty of Breathing proceeding from the toughness of the Phlegm, with which the branches of the Wind-pipe were stuffe, did continually put me in mind of this part of my business; but especially when both were now not a little increased by a Peripneumonick Affection he had so lately had. And therefore besides the continuing of the use of the Absterfive *Linctus*, and the *Apozeme* made of Pectorals, Hepaticks, and Diure-

Diureticks, and likewise of the Julep, and the repeating of the *Tinctura Sacra* when he went to Rest; I ordered three of the following Pills to be taken in a Spoonful of the *Linctus* three times a day with a Draught of the *Apozeme*.

Take of Wood-lice prepared three Drams, of Gum Ammoniack depurated a Dram and half, Flowers of Benjamin a Dram, Extract of Saffron, Balsam of Peru, of each half a Scruple, of Balsam of Sulphur Terebinthinate a sufficient quantity; mix them, and make them into Pills of a middle size, to be gilt.

Nov. 15. I ordered him to insist upon the same things, and after Midnight to repeat the *Tinctura Sacra*, and the Purging Waters next Morning. In which manner he proceeded by my Order to the Nineteeth day, but only in the stead of the Tincture I substituted half a Dram of the Stomack-Pills with Gums, because of the loathing of that Medicine, which he began now to have from the long use of it.

Nov. 19. I ordered the repeating of the Stomack-Pills, and the Purging Waters every third day for three times, and that he should persist in the use of the *Linctus*, *Apozeme*, and *Balsamick Pills* for eight days.

Decemb. 10. He came to me into my Study, strong, fresh-colour'd, and lusty, and much more free from the unhealthful Symptoms of his Lungs and Liver, than he had been for many Years past. But that this Chronical Mischief might be perfectly eradicated, I ordered a Pint of the *Tinctura Sacra*, that he might take six or seven Spoonfuls every fourth Night, and that he should take during the use of that four Ounces of the Pectoral and Hepatick *Apozeme* before described, three times a day at Physical hours on the intermediate

intermediate days. Moreover I seriously advised him to use a Diet-drink made of Antiscorbutick, Hepatick, and Pectoral Ingredients steep'd in Beer, and *Sadler's Chalybeate* Waters at *Islington* the Spring and Summer following.

History 2.

Mr. *Maddox*, a Man at least Fifty Years old, Gouty, and Hypochondriacal; from long Cares, and troublesome Passions of his Mind, and from the hard drinking of Spirituous Liquors, which he had used himself to, fell by degrees into a want of Appetite, a disposition to Vomiting, a stuffing of his Lungs, together with a Cough; and likewise an Obstruction of his Liver, and a Consumption of his whole Body. But I being called on the third day of *August* in the Year 1688. found him labouring under a Costiveness of his Belly, and a Spasmodick, and very dreadful pain of his Back and Side, for several days, not without the manifest signs of a Fever, and a Languor upon him, which now were come to that height, that they plainly despaired even of his very Life. At first I thought the pain arose from a Stone-Colick, and thereupon I ordered Ten Ounces of Blood to be taken from his Arm (being induced to do it not only by the present Fever, but likewise for fear of an Inflammation of the Intestines that might follow by reason of the violent pain) I ordered the Parts affected to be anoynted warm with the Oyntment of Marsh-mallows, Oyl of white Lillies, and Oyl of Bricks mixt together, and Pills of half a Dram of *Extractum Rudii*, and a Grain and half of *London Laudanum*, to be given him in his Bed, that he might get some sleep; likewise a tem-

perate Cordial Julep to be given him often to drink to comfort him. And I ordered that if there were occasion a Stool should be procured after eight hours with a Clyster of Milk and Sugar with Camomile-flowers boyled in the Milk; but when the Purge had once done working, they were to give him Twenty Drops of Liquid *Laudanum* in a small Draught of the Cordial at the time he should go to Rest. But these things having no effect either to give him any Stools, or the easing of his Pain, on the *6th.* of *August* I prescribed a Mucilaginous and Lubricating Apozeme to be drank often, and for three Nights together half a Dram of the Stomack-Pills with Gums, and a Grain and a half of *London Laudanum*, and the next Mornings two Quarts of the Purging Mineral Waters.

Aug. 17. I ordered the repetition of the Pills when he went to Rest, and likewise of the Waters the next Morning; and that he should drink the Waters boyled, dissolving an Ounce and half of the choicest *Manna* in the last Draught. But for all this the Spasmodick pain of his Back, and his Costiveness continued. And thereupon,

Aug. 18. I ordered four Spoonfuls of *Elixir Salutis*, and Thirty Drops of Liquid *Laudanum* to be given when he went to Rest; and that he should take three Ounces of the following Apozeme warm every three hours, until he had had some good large Stools.

Take of Senna half an Ounce, Coriander-seed prepared, Salt of Tartar, of each two Scruples, boyl them in a Pint and half of the Purging Mineral Waters to a Pint, dissolving in them when they are strained, two Ounces of the best Manna. With the use of which he at length began to have too many Stools, that is, more than he could bear; but without

without any relief of his Pain, which was so violent, that it could hardly be quieted even with the use of *Laudanum* it self, though by degrees I went as high as Forty, Fifty, Sixty Drops, which yet I was forced to repeat every Night.

Aug. 21. Being called a second time to go see him, by the little yellowish colour of his Skin I understood well enough that the first Original of all this mischief was not in the Kidneys, but had layn in his obstructed Liver; and that neither the progress of his Consumption could be prevented, nor that horrid Pain, that moved up and down between his Back, Sides, and Belly, could be removed unless we had a due respect first to this part. And I did not make any matter that the pain was felt in the lower parts of the Belly, just by the Region of the Kidneys and Bladder, and a great way below the seat of the Liver, because I had often observed this same thing before in those that had the Jaundies, whom I had often heard complaining and crying out by reason of the violent pain which they felt in the lower parts of the Belly, when in truth the cause was remote in the right Hypochondre. Which appearance it is no hard matter to Account for; to wit, that as the substance of the Liver, according to my Hypothesis and Observation, by reason of its preternatural closeness and density, is almost deprived of Sense; so likewise for the same reason it affords a very difficult passage to the Blood, *Lympha*, and other Juices, that passed through it; so that the Vessels, which tend hither from the lower parts of the Belly, must necessarily be distended beyond their Natural Tone, and be rendred varicous; and thereupon suffer a great deal, till at length with the use of Hepatick and Deobstruent Medicines the

Substance of the Liver had recovered its loose and Natural Tone. From this Hypothesis for three weeks I ordered two Ounces and a half of *Tinctura Sacra* to be given every Night when he went to Rest (to which being forced, I allowed Thirty, Forty, and at length Fifty Drops of Liquid *Laudanum* to be always added by reason of the violence of the pain.) I likewise ordered the Purging Apozem, with the addition of an Ounce and half of Syrup of Buckthorn, to be repeated every fourth Morning, and four Ounces of the following Diuretick Apozem to be given every four hours on the days between.

Take the Roots of Succory, Grass, Parsley, Fennel, of each two Ounces, the Roots of Turmerick, the inner Bark of the Barbery-tree, of each an Ounce, shavings of Hartshorn, of Ivory, of each half an Ounce, of Currans two Ounces, of Saffron tyed up in a Linnen Cloth, and often squeezed, half a Scruple, of Aniseeds half a Dram; boyl them in a sufficient quantity of Spring-water to a Quart, adding when they are almost boyled enough half a Pint of White-wine. Add to the Liquor, when 'tis strained, of the Magisterial Water of Earth-worms three Ounces, the Juice of two Lemons, of the Syrup of the five opening Roots three Ounces. Mix them, and make an Apozem.

I advised him likewise to take an Ounce and half of the Steel Wine sweetned with a little brown Sugar every Morning.

After Eight or Ten days were now past, as his Pain began to abate, so he likewise began to go to Stool more easily. And therefore first I left out the Syrup of Buckthorn from the Purging Apozem. And at length, *Aug.* 30. in the room of the Purging Apozem I substituted six

Pints

Pints of the Purging Waters crude, with which he now went to Stool well enough, and therefore I took care they should be repeated every third Morning.

Sept. 6. Because of his Faintness, caused by his frequent Purging (from that time he began to have so many Stools) I ordered the omission of the Purging Waters for the future, and prescribed the following Cordial Julep to be given often.

Take of Dr. Stephens's *Water two Ounces, of the Epidemick-water an Ounce, of Black-Cherry-water four Ounces, of Syrup of Clove-gillyflowers ten Drams.* Mix them, and make a Julep.

Sept. 12. When now at length my Patient began plainly to loath the *Tinctura Sacra* by reason of the long use of it, instead of that, and the *Laudanum* mixt with it, I substituted the Stomack-Pills with Gums, *Cynoglos*-Pill, of each twelve Grains, to be made into three Pills, which I ordered to be repeated every Night. And because I now perceived by the plenty, and less high colour of his Urine, that the Obstructions of his Liver were in some measure opened, I ordered four of the following Pills to be taken every Morning for the farther promoting of Urine.

Take of the Pouder of Wood-lice half a Dram, of Salt of Amber very well cleared from the Oyl fifteen Grains, of Syrup of Marsh-mallows a sufficient quantity; mix them, and make them into Pills of a middle size, to be gilt.

Sept. 18. When by the Tincture of his Urine being brought almost to its Natural colour, I rightly conjectured that the Liver was in a manner restored to its Natural Tone, I advised my Patient that he should try to open the Obstructi-

ons that remained, and to precipitate the Reliques of the Morbifick Matter by Urine with the use of *Sadler's Chalybeate* Waters at *Islington*. But when after the tryal of a day or two, I was well enough satisfied that the obstructed parts were not yet opened so much as to give the Waters liberty to pass freely by the Kidneys, because the *Serum* of the Blood being held by the bilious Particles, and too much saturated with them, and as it were coagulated, by reason of the preternatural viscousness contracted thereupon, could not yet be readily strained through the Pores of the Glandules of the Kidneys, I altered my mind, and instead of the Waters, I prescribed the following Julep to be drank often and plentifully, and two Drams of the following *Chalybeate* Electuary to be given every Morning, expecting from the former of them a more plentiful flux of Urine, and from the latter a farther opening of the Obstructions; whilst at the same time I persisted to make the Tone of his Stomack more firm, and his Body more soluble by repeating the *Tinctura Sacra* every third Night. Neither did the Event deceive my Expectation. The Julep was this:

Take Parsley water, Fennel-water, of each a Pint, the Magisterial Water of Earth-worms, the Syrup of the five opening Roots, of each six Ounces. Mix them. The Electuary was this:

Take of the filings of Steel prepared two Drams, Saffron, Mace, of each a Scruple, Conserve of Hipps, of the Flowers of Succory, of each an Ounce and half, of Syrup of Citron-peel a sufficient quantity. Mix them, and make an Electuary.

With the use of these things my Patient plainly recovered, being freed not only from his Pains, and his disposition to Vomit, but likewise from the stuffing of his Lungs, which he used to have, from

from his Cough and difficulty of Breathing; as also from the yellowish Tincture of his Skin, and from all the other signs both of the Obstructions of his Liver, and the Distemper of his Lungs. For he got a very good Appetite again, with which he soon was freed from his Consumptive as well as his Jaundies state, and continues hitherto well, and strong. However when I dismist him, that I might quite pluck up the Roots of this Chronical Mischief, which had been a long time fixt, *Sept.* 24. 1688. I wrote him this last Bill for his use, which, being now almost well, he was not so conformable to, as he used to be to the former, because perhaps he did not think it so necessary.

Take of Tinctura Sacra a Pint: Let him take six or seven Spoonfuls every third Night.

Take of Extractum Ecphracticum without Aloes an Ounce and half; make it into Pills of a middle size, to be gilt, of which let him take three twice a day every day, *sc.* in the Morning, and at four of the Clock in the Afternoon.

History 3.

Mr. *Dent*, living in *White-cross-street*, used to desire my Help and Advice for several Years, whenever he, or any of his Family were sick; a Man truly Honest, but somewhat Melancholy, and thereupon given to drink hard at Nights, and that very late, sitting long at it to exhilerate his oppressed mind. With which he fell into a gross, and as it were a callous Habit of Body. But at length about the Fiftieth Year of his Age he used to complain by long and uncertain intervals of a Vertiginous Affection of his Head: And after three or four of these Fits (one or

two of which came near to an Apoplexy) being adviſed, and earneſtly entreated by his moſt dear and obſervant Wife, at length he conſented to commit this buſineſs to my care; a Man that abhorred Phyſick as much as any one. But with the taking away of Blood from the Jugular Vein, and the application of a large Bliſtering Plaiſter to his Neck, and likewiſe the giving of him a gentle Vomit, and after that a Purge or two, together with Cephalick Juleps between whiles; being once freed from the preſent Symptoms, he plainly refuſed *Chalybeates*, and other Medicines, that were proper to open the Obſtructions in the *Viſcera*, with which we might take care of his Health for the future. From which neglect it happened that in the ſpace of a Year or two he had a relapſe again and again. But at length a certain Chymical Emperick, that could boaſt ſufficiently, having given him I know not what *Chalybeate Arcanum*, without any preceding Evacuation, it happened ſo that the Diſeaſe was quickly tranſlated from his Brain to his Lungs and Diaphragm in the Nature of a dry *Aſthma*; ſo that he, who was wont to complain of a Giddineſs before, did now much more lament his perpetual Strangulation or Choaking, which indeed was viſible enough in the Face of the Patient to the very Spectators, becauſe not only he had now plainly loſt the Natural freſh colour of his Face with his Skin growing thick; but likewiſe his Cheeks, and very Lips inſtead of their wonted Roſy hew were baſely ting'd with a naſty black and blew colour, looking ſomething pale, as if the Patient had hung in a Halter a good while: Alſo his Eyes, and almoſt all his Skin were lightly ting'd with a Jaundies colour, his Urine alſo looking yellow after the manner

of

of those that have the Jaundies; and as it was very little in quantity, so likewise always very full of contents, or setlings. There was also almost a perpetual Cough, but yet not so very violent, because it proceeded from a tough Phlegm. But his Stomack was quite gone, and he had also a great Thirst, with other Symptoms of a Hectick Fever. And in this miserable and lamentable state he continued almost for the space of two Years, desiring the Care and Assistance sometimes of one, sometimes of another Physician, but not long observant of the Directions and Advice of any, till at length about three Months before he dyed, when he was plainly worn away with a *Marasmus* from an Universal Colliquation, made by a plentiful spitting of Putrid Phlegm, vast Sweats, a Looseness, and very troublesome Dropsical Swellings of his Leggs and Belly, he again, though 'twas now too late, with Tears and Entreaties committed himself to my care, and was extreamly troubled that being tired with Medicines in the beginning of his Distemper, he had so soon withdrawn himself from my Care and Advice, when he had found a great deal of benefit from Bleeding, the repeated use of *Riverius*'s Mixture, and other gentle Emeticks, and Purges, of my Balsamick Pills, of Inciding and Absterging Linctuses, and Pectoral Apozems, change of Air, and other such-like things, though he was not yet recovered to a perfect state of Health; seeing that now by reason of his Tabid Disposition, and Universal Colliquation, he was altogether unable to bear those Evacuations, that were necessary. Nevertheless so far as I was able, I gave my helping Hand to this miserable Patient; and first, I endeavoured to lessen the Dropsical Swelling

ling by Purging off the Humour with the following Cathartick *Bolus*.

Take the Conserve of the Flowers of Succory, Pouder of Rhubarb, of each a Scruple, of Rosin of Jalap half a Scruple, Salt of Wormwood five Grains, Syrup of Succory with Rhubarb a sufficient quantity. Mix them, and make a *Bolus*.

He bore the working of the first *Bolus* very well; but yet by reason of my Patient's Weakness, and his Fever, I was afraid to repeat that *Bolus* so often as the Dropsie required it. I likewise in vain endeavoured to promote a flux of Urine with a Diuretick Julep of Parsley-water, Fennel-water, the Magisterial Water of Earthworms, the Syrup of the five Opening Roots, Salt of Amber, *&c.* With the use of which the Fever seemed to be something increased, which at length I took off, at least for some time, with the use of the *Peruvian* Bark. But when I found his Appetite was not restored by it, I did not expect so much from that Medicine. And therefore I endeavoured to open the Obstructions of his Liver (in which I did rightly suspect the Original mischief of his Distemper to lye) with the plentiful use of my Hepatick, and Diuretick Apozem before mentioned, and the most convenient *Chalybeate* Medicines; as also to take care of his Lungs with my Balsamick Pills, Linctuses, and Pectoral Apozemes. With the use of which he seemed to breath better, and to be less Feverish, and also to have his Skin and Urine less ting'd with a yellow colour. But his Colliquation still persisting, and his Dropsie increasing upon him, and when we were in the midst of the Winter too, I plainly despaired of his Recovery; and therefore I sent him, as he himself desired, into the Country, and an

open

open Air, that he might there at leaſt have an eaſie Death, ſo far as his Symptoms would admit of it: Where in the ſpace of a Month or five Weeks, being waſted by that Univerſal Colliquation, he went out by degrees like a Candle; complaining more than of any other Symptoms of this, to wit, a dreadful, and as it were a Spaſmodick Pain, reaching from the right Hypochondre through a great part of the Belly; which indeed I could neither remove nor mitigate, either with Liniments, or Anodyne Fomentations, or any other way: Which kind of Symptom I have almoſt always found in other ſuch-like Patients; which thing it was a very eaſie matter to account for from the Body being opened after he was dead. For the *Sternum* being taken off, and the Breaſt opened, we firſt ſaw the Lungs, very much enlarged in their bigneſs, and now changed in their colour, from that which was Natural to a black, or cineritious colour, ſticking almoſt every where very firmly to the ſides of the Breaſt, and in all the Lobes full of Tubercles, in ſome places maturated, but in others crude. From whence it is evident enough, that this was a true Conſumption of the Lungs, though a Symptomatical one. Alſo the Liver it ſelf, as it appeared much larger than it ought to be, (by which means preſſing the Diaphragm underneath, without doubt it did not a little promote that continual Suffocation with which the Patient was troubled, let him be in what Air he would) ſo likewiſe the ſubſtance of it appeared more hard and compact than uſual, and what it ſhould be, as if it had been plainly parboyl'd; and the branches alſo of the *Vena Portæ* running from the *Hypogaſtrium* to the Liver, were every where diſtended beyond their Natural

Natural Tone, and varicous. From all which it is as easie to deduce the cause of this Chronical Icteritious disposition, which here first gave the occasion of the Consumption, and of that horrid Pain, which reached from the Hypochondre through the Belly; which I observed not only this Patient, but also Mr. *Maddox* before mentioned, Mrs. *James*, Mr. *Freestone* in *Bucklersbury*, and almost all others that have been ill in this manner, to complain of with great cries so earnestly and continually, as if they had been troubled with no other Symptom. But in some this pain rather occupies the Region of the Kidneys and Loyns, being like a Nephritick pain, or a Scorbutical pain of the Loyns, as it happened to Mr. *Maddox*, and Mr. *Freestone:* But in others it is seated in the fore-part of the Belly, and especially the *Hypogastrium*, in the form of a true Colick; in which manner the Patient of whom we are now speaking, was affected.

From this as it were kind of compactness and hardness of the Substance of the Liver so preternaturally swelled, and from the remarkable varication of the branches of the *Vena Portæ* following thereupon as the Ætiology of this Chronical Icteritious Disposition, by which my Patient was first disposed to a Consumption, does appear plain enough to Reason, and in a manner to Sense too: So no less evident is the Original of that horrid pain, which occupyed the parts of the Belly, and perhaps too of that Remarkable *Ascites*, by which without doubt the fatal day of his Death was much hastened.

As for that Chronical Icteritious Disposition, no one can think it strange, when this great Instrument of the separation of the Bile is quite deprived of its Natural laxity, if by the constriction

striction and compression of its Substance following thereupon it is rendred unfit for the performance of its Function; to wit, the secretion of the bilious parts from the Blood, and the excerning of them into the Bile-duct, and Gall-bladder for great uses, for which they are appointed by Nature: From whence there must necessarily follow too great a congestion, or heaping up of Bile in the Blood it self, and thereupon also a yellowish Tincture of the Skin, an Urine very high-colour'd, yellow, and full of Contents, somewhat a whitish colour of their Stools, together with a Faintness, Weakness, and the other usual Symptoms of a Jaundies.

And it may be from this compression of the Substance of the Liver, and the varication of the *Vena Portæ* caused thereby, it happened that the Lymphatick Vessels which arise from the Liver, or the conglobate Glands seated in the *Sinus* of it, just at the entrance of the *Vena Portæ*, were broken; from whence also it is easie to give the reason of that Dropsical Swelling, which came upon this Patient about the end of his Icteritious Consumption, as it uses to happen to almost all others that are affected in that manner.

Finally, as for that horrid pain, which is wont to accompany this Distemper, we must observe that every Jaundies, of what sort soever it is, whether Accidental or Habitual, has always this kind of Spasmodick pain joyned with it; but with this difference, that as an Accidental Jaundies proceeds meerly from an Obstruction of the *Porus Bilarius*, or the *Ductus Communis*, caused by a stone, or the glutinousness of the Bile; so it causes a very Acute Disease attended with a dangerous Fever, and dreadful Spasmodick pains, even

even so great as to make them swoon; which pain indeed is wont nevertheless to be circumscribed by the Region of the Stomack, and by the Shoulder-blades, like a Colick of the Stomack: Because these Parts that are near are wont to have very painful Spasms by the consent they have with that tender Duct, which at this time is distended much beyond is Natural Tone by the Bile, or by Stones: When on the contrary, in an Habitual Jaundies, though there is always felt from the very beginning of the Disease a certain dull and gravative pain in the Region of the Liver (as I remember it happened often to Mrs. *James*, and some others;) to wit, as soon as the substance of this Entrail begins to be deprived of its Natural laxity, and to be too compact. Yet there is no Acute and Spasmodick pain like the former but only in the parts of the Belly below the Navel, in the manner of a true Colick; or in the Region of the Loyns in the form of a Nephritick pain, and that not long before they dye, that is not long before the Liver it self happens at length to be constring'd to such a degree from the compression of its Substance being much increased, that the Blood can very difficultly if at all pass through it out of the *Vena Portæ:* Whereupon who can wonder if the very Vessels being once distended beyond their Natural Tone by the pressure of the subsequent Blood, do by degrees grow very large, if it is not prevented by an immoderate flux of the internal Hæmorrhoids (to which this sort of Patients are very subject) or by some other Rupture, or else opening of the Vessels. So *Vessalius*, in the 15*th*. Chapter of the Fifth Book, observed in one that had the Jaundies, and was carried off with the flowing of the Hæmorrhoids,

the

the Liver very much swelled, and the branch of the *Vena Portæ* all along the Duct of the *Intestinum Rectum* enlarged so as to be an Inch in Diameter. Likewise *Guarinonius* in 584*th.* Consultation affirms, That in Hypochondriacal Persons he himself has often found the obstructed Veins of the Mesentery so much dilated, that they looked more like Intestines than Veins. 'Tis true indeed, this pain is not perceived in the Vessels themselves, that are preternaturally distended or swelled; for the Veins and Arteries (as *Gallen*, in the xij. Chapt. of his First Book of the use of the Parts, affirms) have no sense if they are cut, or burnt, or tyed hard with strings. To which Opinion I very readily assent, as being perswaded of the truth of it from the frequent Observation of *Varices*, which I remember to have often happened in Cancrous Breasts, and in the Legs of Women with Child: All which seemed to be affected with a very obtuse or no pain from these *Varices*, though they were grown never so big; which pain too always seemed to me to proceed rather from a preternatural distention of the external Skin, and a pressing upon the Muscular flesh under them caused by the larger *Varices*, than from the sense of the Vessels themselves, that were so varicous. And it may be that dreadful pain in the lower part of the Belly, which is wont to accompany an Icterical Consumption, of which we are now speaking, may be thought to be caused in the same manner. For as soon as the substance of the Liver happens to be so constringed and thickned, that being now deprived of its Natural laxity, it does very difficultly, if at all admit the passage of the Blood through it; the *Vena Portæ*, and the branches of it, which

bring

bring the Blood back to this part, must necessarily at length be much swelled, and rendred varicous by the continual drift of fresh Blood, by reason of the stop that is here put to it. Which being so, though the Veins themselves, according to *Galen*'s Opinion, are not affected with any dolorifick sense, yet none ought to think it strange that from a distention, and a *Solutio continui* made in the Membranes, through which these varicous Vessels creep, there proceeds this dreadful and spasmodick pain, which can be removed only with the use of *Chalybeate* and Diuretick Medicines, endued with subtle and penetrating parts; and that a long and constant use of them, which may be sufficient to open the Obstructions of the Liver. Which Obstructions being once removed, and thereupon the *Varices* going down of their own accord, the Membranes, through which they creep, may by knitting together again be quickly freed from this Spasmodick Pain. And in vain, even for the abating of the pain, are outward and warm applications made, to wit, of Fomentations, and Anodyne Liniments, which are wont to be of very great use in Pleuritick, Colick, and other Spasmodick Pains, because the Blood contained in the *Varices* is more agitated and heated by external warmth; whereupon a greater varication or preternatural distention of the Vessels with an increase of the pain must necessarily follow. But I have observed that *Oxycrate*, the *Cerote of Saunders*, *Oyntment of Roses*, and other such-like Styptick and cooling things, and those applyed cold, have much better answered the end. But above all things, *Opium* given inwardly, as it is the last, so it is likewise the only, at least the greatest Relief and Refuge for this pain.

This

This too is given in vain if it be in a little quantity. For no Dose will truly answer our end, unless it be so great as may be able to cause some kind of numbness or insensibility in the distended Membranes as well as in the other parts of the Body. Which I have often found in Mr. *Maddox*, and other Patients in the like case; whose Pains I could not so much as abate, even with *Laudanum* it self, till I began to prescribe three or four Grains every time. 'Tis true indeed the Original Disease, and these Symptomatical Pains proceeding from it, do afford different Indications. For as much as these Pains are abated by Opiates, so much the Obstruction, or Constriction of the Substance of the Liver, which gave the first occasion of the pain, is increased and confirmed. And indeed what is done by *Chalybeates* in the Day-time, is in some measure undone by *Opiates* in the Night. However, forasmuch as the Vital Indication requires it, oppressed and languishing Nature must be supported with necessary *Opiates*. For they being now almost ready to expire with the continual Fatigue of these Spasms, there cannot be room to use either *Chalybeates*, or any other kind of convenient Medicines. And therefore in this case, though the use of *Opium*, which is very necessary (and which ought to be compensated with the more diligent, and longer use of Deobstruent and Attenuating Medicines) may be permitted at due intervals by a Prudent Physician, yet we must not give even the least Grain of *Laudanum* without urgent necessity, because the Original Distemper does plainly contraindicate the use of it.

History 4.

The Wife of Mr. *Prestbury*, that lived in *Black-Fryars*, who was now some Months gone with Child, really an honest Woman, but somewhat anxious and thoughtful, at length from Cares, and various Passions of her Mind fell into the Jaundies from a deficient secretion of the Bile, caused by as it were a kind of Schirrous hardness and closeness of the Substance of the Liver it self. But from the long neglecting of her Jaundies she became not only tabid and emaciated by the long substraction of the Nutritious Juice; but likewise began to want an Appetite, to have a Thirst, and something of a Hectick heat, to be troubled with a difficulty of Breathing, a Cough, and other signs of an incipient Consumption of the Lungs; insomuch that even I my self thought she would in a short time dye of a Consumption, unless there could be some help given her to open the Obstructions of her Liver time enough: And therefore when for fear of a Miscarriage, I dare order neither *Tinctura Sacra*, nor the Purging Mineral Waters, nor any other Purging Medicine, on the third day of *May* this present Year I ordered four Ounces of the Aperitive Apozem already described to be given her every sixth hour for ten days together, adding likewise twice a day an Ounce of the *Chalybeate* Wine to the Draught. But when by reason of some Natural Antipathy which she had against Saffron, she could neither bear that, nor Turmerick-Roots, nor it may be some other things that were Ingredients in these Medicines, but as soon as they were taken she threw them up again, and that not without signs of

of a sudden Miscarriage. *May* 25. I set my self to answer the former Indications by some new Prescript made for the same intentions in the manner following.

Take the Pouder of Wood-lice, Goose-dung, of each two Drams, of Salt of Steel a Scruple, Syrup of the five Opening Roots a sufficient quantity: Mix them, and make them into Pills of a middle size to be gilt, of which let her take three thrice a day at Physical hours, and drink four Ounces of the following *Apozeme* after every Dose.

Take the Roots of Succory, Grass, Parsley, Fennel, Asparagus, of each two Ounces, of the inner Bark of the Barberry-tree an Ounce, shavings of Hartshorn, Ivory, of each half an Ounce, of Currans two Ounces, boyl them in a sufficient quantity of Spring-water to a Pint and half, adding when they are almost boyled half a Pint of White-wine. To the Liquor when it is strained add the Magisterial Water of Earth-worms, Syrap of Hedg-Mustard, of each three Ounces, the Juice of one Lemon. Mix them, and make an *Apozeme.*

Take Parsley-water, Fennel-water, of each four Ounces, the Magisterial Water of Earth-worms, strong Piony-water, of each an Ounce, of the Syrup of the five Opening Roots an Ounce and half. Mix them, and make a *Julep*, of which let her take four or five spoonfuls when she is faint.

With the long use of which (the Country Air likewise contributing something) she became plainly freed not only from her Jaundies, but also from her Consumption, and the Morbid Symptoms of her Lungs, and that without one Grain of Pectoral Medicines; and now at length having recovered her wonted Temper and Appetite, she is very well.

CHAP. XIV.

Of a Conſumption of the Lungs proceeding from Internal Ulcers of the Viſcera, *and Membranous Parts.*

I Have, as well from Reaſon as Experience, proved in the Firſt Book, that there is a Flame kindled in the ſolid Parts, from the long and plentiful ſubſtraction of the Nutritious Juice cauſed by old and large Ulcers, which are wont to diſcharge continually a great quantity of gleety Matter in what part ſoever of the Body they happen to be ſeated, whether inward or outward, and thereupon the Patient is rendred Tabid. I have likewiſe ſufficiently ſhewn in the 8*th.* Chapter of this Book, that a Conſumption of the Lungs is very often occaſioned from the healing of this kind of Ulcers, but eſpecially if they have been cuſtomary, and of a long continuance, or elſe Malignant, or Fiſtulous.

A true Conſumption of the Lungs often proceeds from Internal Ulcers.

But becauſe I have obſerved, not only that Patients being brought into the ſtate of an Univerſal *Atrophy*, have at length been rendred Tabid, but have likewiſe many times from thence been affected with a Conſumption of the Lungs from the beginning by a long continuance of Ulcers bred in the *Viſcera*, and Internal Membranous Parts, but eſpecially in thoſe, that are reckoned the more Noble, and of greateſt uſe; ſuch as the Liver, Kidneys, Teſticles, Ovaries, the Womb, and the *Vagina Uteri*, the Urinary Bladder,

Bladder, Stomack, Inteſtines, *&c.* from long ſubſtraction of the Nutritious Juice, as frequently as from the healing of them; I ſhall think fit in this place to add alſo, though briefly, the Obſervations, which my Practice has offered to me, concerning the peculiar Nature of this kind of Conſumption.

Neither has any one reaſon to think it ſtrange, that this kind of Ulcers, eſpecially if they have been Chronical, can occaſion a true Conſumption of the Lungs: I ſay, no one has reaſon to think it ſtrange, that ſeriouſly conſiders with himſelf how great and continual an expence there is of the Nutritious Juice, that is wont to be diſcharg'd by this kind of Ulcers; and how great an impoveriſhment of the whole Maſs of Blood, together with an Acrimony following upon it, from this ſubſtraction of the Chyle that is deſigned for the reparation of it; and how great a waſting, or *Atrophy* of the Parts proceeding from thence; thereupon how great an excandeſcence or inteſtine motion of the Blood and Spirits, and finally, how great a Flame there is, with a fixt heat in the whole Habit of the Body, together with an Univerſal Colliquation of the Nutritious Juice from the Maſs of Blood (to which by reaſon of its preternatural Heat and Acrimony it could not be perfectly united) made by every Avenue, where it has the liberty of paſſing. But to be Ingenious, and to ſpeak the whole truth, I have been ready to wonder rather that in this Univerſal Flame and Colliquation, the Lungs (whoſe Subſtance is Naturally ſo Tender, Veſiculous, and Spongy, and thereupon as it is apt to be very ſoon affected with a Hectical Heat, ſo it is alſo ready to be as ſoon corrupted by the purulent Particles, which are tranſlated

This is not ſtrange upon ſeveral Conſiderations.

flated thither by the Circulation of the Blood, and in every considerable Colliquation more susceptive of the Humours, than any other part) can ever be long free from a touch of a Consumption. And indeed to speak the truth of this case, whenever these Ulcers happen to be bred in the Bladder, Womb, *Vagina Uteri*, the Ovaries, or Kidneys, or other Entrails, or Membranous Parts, that are remote from the Heart, and so of less note, as I have always observed the Consumption that is caused by them, to be more Chronical; so I have observed that a little before Death it certainly terminates in a true Consumption of the Lungs, proceeding by degrees from a stuffing of the Lungs to Tubercles, and those such as at length become ripe, and ulcerate, together with a troublesom Cough, a shortness of Breath, an universal Colliquation, and the other signs of this Fatal Disease. But yet in a more Acute and hasty Consumption, proceeding from an Exulceration of the Liver, Stomack, and other Entrails, or Membranous Parts seated nearer to the Heart it self, I have found in the Bodies of such Persons, that have been opened when they have been dead, the Lungs not so much exulcerated, as discolour'd, stuff't, and sticking to the sides of the Cavity of the Breast; and at length (that is, when they have been very ill affected) full of crude Tubercles: Because by reason they dyed quickly, there was not time enough for the Lungs to receive any deep impressions from this Phthisical Malignity; the Patient being taken off by a quick Death from the Original Consumption before the Tubercles of the Lungs could be ripen'd, or the Consumption of the Lungs could be advanced beyond its first or second degree. But in

A Consumption from Ulcers in parts remote from the heart ends in an Ulcer of the Lungs.

In a Consumption from Ulcers in the Liver, &c. Death prevents this.

in this very Acute Consumption I have found plainly the same, if not more violent Symptoms, than in a true Pulmonary Consumption that has been Mortal; the same fierce and troublesome Cough, the same difficulty of Breathing, though they proceeded meerly from a stuffing of the Lungs, and crude Tubercles bred in them; but first an Inflammatory Fever, and afterwards a Putrid and Intermitting Fever, attended with an Universal Colliquation, Light-headedness, and other more direful and fatal Symptoms than in an Original Consumption of the Lungs; I speak of those which arise from an Inflammation and Exulceration of the *Viscera*, or Membranous Parts, that are very Noble. So that it is a very hard matter to distinguish this Consumption from an Original Consumption of the Lungs, unless it be by the more intense degree of the Symptoms, and by some Pathognomonick signs, which discover the Part that is primarily affected.

These Consumptions are very hard to Cure.

Every Pulmonary Consumption of this sort is very hard to Cure, because it springs from a certain Fountain, that is for ever running. For the Internal Ulcers, which gave the first Occasion to this Consumption, can very seldom be perfectly cured, as lying beyond the Sphere of Surgery. And indeed to Cure this Consumption perfectly, without healing of the Ulcers, from which it takes its Original, is the same thing as to take away an Effect whilst the Cause of that Effect remains. It is true indeed that so often as these Ulcers happen to be small and benign, and are likewise placed in the Kidneys, Bladder, Testicles, Ovaries, the *Vagina Uteri*, or in other Membranous Parts and Entrails, that are more remote from the Heart; as the Ulcers themselves (which here assume the Nature of a Cause)

And not to be cured without healing the Original Ulcer.

do sometimes admit of a perfect Cure, so likewise the Pulmonary Consumption it self, which depends upon them, may as well be cured. But this Consumption, whether it be capable of a Cure or not, does nevertheless almost always assume the Nature of a Chronical Disease in some measure. And from hence I have found some of this sort of Patients for several Months, yea, and sometimes several Years languishing with a Consumption, pining away by degrees, and dissolv'd by Colliquations; but especially when the source of the Disease has been in one of the Kidneys, the Bladder, or *Vagina Uteri*, that have been ulcerated. A Consumption proceeding from an Ulcer of the Ovaries in Women, or the Testicles in Men, I have observed to have been of a middle Nature, but for the most part to carry off the Patient within the space of a Year: But that which arises from an Exulceration of the Womb it self, the Stomack, Liver, or other Entrails, or Membranous Parts of the greatest note, I have observed to put an end to the Patient's Life in the space of a very few Months, or even Weeks, after the manner of a very Acute Consumption; because it has been immediately attended, first, with an extraordinary Inflammatory Fever, and after that with a Putrid Intermitting Fever, and an universal Colliquation, together with a want of Rest, Light-headedness, Spasms, and other direful Symptoms of the Nerves. But yet by reason of the sudden Destruction brought on from the Nature of the Original Disease, I have found by inspecting into Bodies after they have been dead, that the Lungs have not been so much affected, as they used to be in other Consumptions, that are more Chronical; to wit, where by reason

When this Consumption is Chronical.

When Acute.

reason that the Original Distemper has suffered the Patient to live long enough, the Lungs have happen'd not only to be stufft, but likewise to have Tubercles bred in them, and those Tubercles at length have happen'd to turn to Apostems. But, generally speaking, as every Consumption of this kind is very hard to Cure, so it is so much the harder as it is more Acute, because it has its Original from more considerable Ulcers. Neither indeed does it ever admit of a perfect Cure without the healing of the Ulcers whatever they are, and in whatsoever Entrail or Membranous Part those Ulcers are bred, which gave the first occasion to this Disease.

The more Acute it is, the harder to Cure.

From what I have now said, it is plain enough even to Reason what are the Indications of Cure in this kind of Consumptions, which likewise the happy Success of our Practice is wont daily to present to our very sight; that is, whenever the Distemper does in its own Nature admit of a Cure. And they must respect the Original Disease as well as the Lungs themselves, first, by promoting as much as we can the healing of the Ulcers, in what part soever of the Body they have been bred, with the plentiful use of Balsamick and Vulnerary Medicines; which indeed ought to be of the milder sort, lest by increasing the Feverish Flame, that is already kindled in the Blood, they should do more hurt than good.

The Indications of Cure.

Secondly, by taking timely care of the Lungs with the use of Pulmonary Remedies, to wit, Opiate and Expectorating Medicines given alternately; by which the mischief which they have got, may be taken off, or at least as little as may be promoted by the Original Distemper.

Thirdly, by mixing always with the Pectoral and Balsamick Medicines those things which may

may restore and confirm the Tone of the Part, which was first of all affected, and which have a particular respect to it; as *Uterines*, *Hepaticks*, *Diureticks*, and other such-like Medicines, as the case may require.

Fourthly, by tempering the Hectick heat, which is already kindled in the Blood and Spirits, with a strict Milk Diet, the *Chalybeate* Mineral Waters, Vulnerary Decoctions of *Sursa*, Lime-water, and other things of the like Nature (so far as the present state of the Patient can bear them;) as also by taking off the Putrid Intermitting Fever with the plentiful use of the *Peruvian* Bark, and with repeating of it often enough at due intervals: And lastly, by relieving with the most diligent application the most urgent Symptoms, and those which weaken the Patient most, whether they arise from the Original Ulcer, or from the Lungs. As for Example.

The Method of Cure. If the Original Ulcer is so benign and small, that there appear any hopes of a perfect Cure, and it has not continued so long, that the Patient is brought very weak with it; and if it is not seated in so Noble a Part, as to make us fear the sudden destruction of the Person from an Acute Consumption, it is plainly convenient in the very beginning of the Cure to endeavour the healing of the Original Ulcer, by giving *Calomelanos* plentifully, and that not only mixt with Purges, and therefore at due intervals, but likewise by it self in Doses repeated quickly one after the other, with a design to raise a Salivation; by which (if the Patient has strength enough to bear so great an Evacuation, and it be convenient in other respects) we shall take much better Measures, as for the healing of the Ulcer, so like-

likewiſe for the preventing of the Conſumption, which is like to follow, than by any other *Apparatus* of Medicines.

But if that be contraindicated by the Patient's Weakneſs, the intenſe degree of the Fever, and the very Acute Nature of the Conſumption, at leaſt as Antimonial, ſo Mercurial Medicines may be ſo diſpoſed at due intervals in the Method of Cure, that they may ſucceſsfully exert their extraordinary Healing Vertue without any expenſive Evacuation excited thereby. As for Example: Let the Patient take every Night xv. or xx. Grains of *Antimonium Diaphoreticum* in a little bit of Old Conſerve of Red Roſes mixt with *Leucatellus*'s Balſam. And every third or fourth Morning a Scruple, or half a Dram of *Mercurius Dulcis* in a ſpoonful of Milk.

Let him alſo drink a Vulnerary Decoction of *Sarſa*, deſcribed in another place, for his ordinary Drink, adding always at the time when he takes it, of the Balſamick Syrup ſo much as will ſerve to make a Draught of it grateful to the Patient's Palate.

My Balſamick Pills are likewiſe very good in this caſe, being ordered ſo that the Patient may take three of them every day at Phyſical hours; drinking after them four or ſix Ounces of the *Traumatick* Decoction, and the Pectoral Decoction mixt in equal quantities. Here likewiſe it is very convenient to temper the Hectical heat of the Blood with a Milk Diet ordered in the ſtricteſt manner, or elſe (if other things do not contradict, and it is a proper time of the Year for it) with a long uſe of the *Chalybeate* Mineral Waters, the Vertue of which, eſpecially in curing a Conſumption proceeding from an Exulceration of the Kidneys and Bladder, I have often

often tryed with good Success. Neither is it of less use, as well to temper the Acrimony, and heat of the Blood, as to carry down the load of Purulent and Heterogeneous Particles heaped up in the Mass of Blood, to give at Physical hours an Emulsion made of fifty or sixty Wood-lice, and four Ounces of the Vulnerary Decoction of *Sarsa* sweetned with the Balsamick Syrup; or with two Ounces of the Pectoral Decoction, and as much of the *Traumatick* Decoction.

The *Peruvian* Bark is likewise of very great Efficacy in this case to relieve the Putrid Intermitting Fever, caused by the mixture of the Purulent and Heterogeneous Particles, that are sent into the Mass of Blood from the Original Ulcer. Which we must repeat often at due intervals for this end, thereby to obtain some respite, as well to support and relieve languishing Nature, as for the use of Balsamick Medicines, and other things of that Nature, which respect the Original Distemper.

History 1.

Mr. *Neast*, a Presbyterian Minister of *London*, and my very good Friend, whilst he lived at *Oxford* was suddenly taken about the Eight and Twentieth Year of his Age with a dreadful Colick with taking a great deal of Pains in Ringing; caused without doubt by the motion of a Stone out of the Gall-bladder into the Duct, which goes towards the Intestines. From which he was freed I know not by what means; yet he continued free from the return of any such kind of Fit till he was almost Forty Years old, and the Year 1670. From which time almost for the full space of Ten Years, to wit, to his dying

dying day, he uſed oftentimes in a Year to be taken with, and to be a long time ill of this dreadful Diſtemper, with a violent pain in his Side, a high Fever, and other uſual Symptoms from any violent Motion, the taking of Cold, a draught of Sack, or any other the leaſt occaſion. But when I was firſt called to go ſee him, miſtaking the Diſtemper for a Pleuriſie, I endeavoured in vain to free him from his painful Spaſms with repeated Bleeding, a Fomentation, and Anodyne Liniments, as alſo with Pectoral Medicines; till at length upon a more attentive Inſpection, and Obſervation, as well of his high-colour'd and yellowiſh Urine, as of his whitiſh Stools, and of his Skin being lightly ting'd with a Jaundies colour, I reaſonably altered my Opinion, and upon that I took off the Racking Fit with the repeated uſe of the *Tinctura Sacra*, given with Liquid *Laudanum* at the time of going to Reſt, and of the Purging Mineral Waters boyl'd, and turn'd with Milk, given him to take the following Mornings. And in this manner I uſed afterwards to take it off eaſily, and that in a little time. But though his Fits were by this means brought to be ſhorter, yet with the frequent return of them (becauſe ſo long as this Spaſmodick Conſtriction continued upon the Bile-duct, which was at the ſame time plugg'd up with a Stone, the uſual Excretion, or Paſſage of the Bile into the Inteſtines being thereby hindred, and ſo the Nutritious part of the Aliment being driven down into the thick Guts with the Excrements, there was very little if any thing ſupplyed for the reparation of the Blood.) I ſay, with the frequent return of theſe Fits, the Patient did by degrees continually waſt away from the detraction of the due Nutritious Juice,

Juice, having likewise Tremblings come upon him, and Spasms in the Nervous Parts frequently recurring. Which I now observing, to prevent the sudden Destruction of Nature, amongst other things I ordered the use of *Chalybeate* Medicines, but especially the *Vitriolick* Waters every Year, from which I hoped there would follow the opening of the Obstructions, and the restitution of the Tone of the Liver, which was much spoyl'd. But at length, to wit, about the Year 1680. my Patient being taken with a most violent Colick, together with an Inflammatory Fever, though he was treated with Bleeding, and a due Regimen, yet at last his Fever turning into a Putrid Intermitting Fever, which was a *Quotidian*, notwithstanding the use of the *Peruvian* Bark, Pectoral Medicines, and Temperate Juleps, and likewise the application of Blisters, and the giving of other things, which either I or my Famous Colleague Dr. *Pagett* thought might be most Efficacious, this Excellent Person within the space of six Weeks dyed deeply Consumptive, being delirous in his Fever-Fits, and always miserably troubled with an Asthmatick Cough, in the same manner as those that are affected with a true Pulmonary Consumption, and likewise worn to nothing with an universal Colliquation. The Body being opened when he was dead, we found the Gall-bladder very much distended like a Purse with Stones of a different Magnitude without even the least drop of Bile in it. Likewise in the Concave part of the Liver, just at the entrance of the *Vena Portæ* was found a large Apostem, which contained in it almost a Pint of true *Pus*. But for all his great Cough, and difficulty of Breathing, we did not find the Lungs affected with any Tubercles,

bercles, at leaſt that were maturated, though we found them ting'd with ſeveral colours, and ſtufft, and adhering to the ſides of the Breaſt.

Whereupon the Colick of his Stomack, which frequently returned, ſeemed to me to have its Original from the moving of the Stones out of the Gall-bladder: The Univerſal, and Habitual Conſumption from the frequent Obſtruction of the Bile cauſed by that Colick; the fatal Fever, which was firſt Inflammatory, and afterwards Putrid and Intermitting, together with the univerſal Colliquation, and *Maraſmus* following upon it from the Inflammation and Exulceration of the Liver; finally, the Cough and difficulty of Breathing from a more light Symptomatical Affection of the Lungs; but ſuch as by reaſon of the haſty and acute Nature of the Original Diſeaſe (however that dreadful Cough ſeemed to be Aſthmatical) was not advanced beyond the firſt degree of a Pulmonary Conſumption.

Hiſtory 2.

The Wife of Mr. *Greaves*, living in *Paſter-Noſter-Row*, who, when ſhe was a Virgin uſed to be very Cachectical, a few Months after ſhe was married, and before the Twentieth Year of her Age, began to be Melancholy, and to have Oppreſſions at her Breaſt: Her Belly likewiſe ſwell'd, but yet more on one ſide than on the other: Her Appetite was plainly loſt, her Thirſt increaſed, and a Conſumption together with a Hectick Fever at length prevailed ſo much upon her, that having at length wholly given over the vain hopes of being with Child, I was ſent for, though too late, to viſit this miſerable Patient: Whom I found in a Tabid ſtate, and

and afflicted every day with a Putrid Intermitting Fever, which moreover was accompanyed with the Gripes, vast Colliquative Sweats, a Dropsical Swelling of the Legs as well as of the Belly, a perpetual Catarrhous Cough, a shortness of Breath, and the other usual Symptoms of a Fatal Consumption of the Lungs. With which the Patient being at length brought into the state of a *Marasmus* in the space of six Weeks or somewhat more, notwithstanding the plentiful use of Pulmonary and Uterine Medicines, of the *Peruvian* Bark, *Laudanum*, Pearl Juleps, Vesicatories, and other Remedies respecting the Original Disease as well as the various Symptoms proceeding from it, and she wasting away by degrees, went off plainly in the same manner, as those use to do, who dye of a Consumption of the Lungs.

The Body being opened after she was dead, we found the Lungs, contrary to our Expectation, not very much affected with the Stigmes of a Consumption. For though we found them stufft, adhering to the Ribs, and ting'd with several Colours, yet (so far as I remember) there were no Tubercles, either crude or ripe, found in them: But the Substance of one Ovary was plainly eaten away and consumed by an Exulceration; and the outward Membrane in a wonderful manner distended with a Dropsical Humour, so that we took out of it, which now took up the greatest part of the Belly, several Pints of Water somewhat purulent, together with a great quantity of little Bones, and small Fibres, or (as I judg'd) threads which had made up the Glandulous Substance that look'd like yellow Hair.

From

From whence it seemed plain to me that that Mortal Fever, accompanyed with the fatal Colliquation (though this Consumption was Pulmonary only Secondarily and Symptomatically; and the Cough (and in some measure the difficulty of Breathing too) had their rise from the stuffing and adhesion of the Lungs) had its Original from the Inflammation and Exulceration of the Ovary it self. By which Colliquative Fever, as also by the substraction of the Nutritious Juice by the large Dropsical Swelling of the Ovary such a quick Consumption, and so grievous a difficulty of Breathing were caused, that her Life being thereby brought all of a sudden into extream danger, there was not time enough given for that Consumption which was impreſt upon the Lungs to be advanced beyond the first degree of a Pulmonary Consumption, though there seemed to be all the usual Symptoms of a Fatal Consumption of the Lungs.

History 3.

A certain Merchant of *London* before the Fortieth Year of his Age (when he had now lived almost two Years somewhat sickly, and with little and uncertain Appetite, which perhaps he procured to himself by his immoderate use of Wine and Women) at length asked my Advice about a Swelling, and a painful Inflammation arising from thence, with which the right Testicle had been now affected for almost the space of three Months, and that (as he told me) occasioned by some Contusion he had got in Riding. Indeed that Swelling to me seemed to be a kind of *Sarcocele*. The Testicle swell'd to the bigness of ones fist. There was likewise no

ſmall Inflammation upon the *Scrotum* it ſelf, as well as upon the Teſticle. But with repeated Bleedings, the application of Cataplaſms made of Barley-meal and Oxycrate (the Parts affected being likewiſe kept up with a Truſs to prevent the flux of Humours into the place) frequent Purging with *Calomelanos* and *Confectio Hamech*, and alſo drinking plentifully of Emulſions of the four greater cold Seeds made with Barley-water, and of a Decoction of *Sarſa* and *China* ordered for his common Drink, the painful Inflammation plainly vaniſh'd. But the Swelling ſtill continued, though without any pain, and the bigneſs of it was uncertain, being ſometimes greater, ſometimes leſs, and eaſily yielding to a preſſure of ones fingers; ſo that at length the Judgment of two very skilful Surgeons being taken, and that Swelling being ſuppoſed to be a *Hydrocele*, it was juſtly thought fit to open it. But when it was ſolemnly opened with an Inciſion-Knife, there came out ſcarce any Water, and no Matter. Alſo the whole Subſtance of the Teſticle ſeemed to have been eaten away, and periſh'd for ſome time, but the Inveſting Coats were hard and incraſſated, ſo that the Teſticle being once opened look'd like an empty Egg-ſhell, or rather a Pomegranate-ſhell, when the Meat, or that which was contained in it, is taken out. From the Fiſtulous ſtate of this Swelling it came to paſs that the Surgeons being deceived, and taking it, becauſe it yielded to the preſſure of their Fingers, for a *Hydrocele*, opened it by Inciſion, though indeed after they had once opened it, it ſoon appeared to be in truth a Venereal Fiſtula, proceeding from ſome virulent and old *Gonorrhœa*, that had been ill cured. But from that Wound there aroſe a large

large Ulcer, which every day ran a great quantity of Ichorous, or gleety Matter. Which though many times it deluded us for several times with the vain hopes of Curing it, having ordered the *Sarsa* Drink now again for his ordinary Drink, when at the same time he was purged with the bitter Decoction repeated at due intervals, that is, so often as there was occasion, and every Night he had a *Paregorick* Draught given him with Syrup of *Diacodium*. But yet from an unexpected flux of the Humours, (which (as I always told the Surgeons) it was impossible to prevent without castration or cutting out of the Fistulous Testicle) the Ulcer very often broke out again; so that the Patient being quickly brought into a Tabid and Hectick state by the contiual and plentiful substraction of the Nutritious Juice through the Wound, and the expences arising from it, which Nature was not able to bear, as he began to have a great Thirst, so likewise to lose his Stomack, and at length to be afflicted with a troublesome Cough, a shortness of Breath, and the other usual Symptoms of the Lungs when they are distemper'd; continually wasting away more and more with the sudden Ruin of Nature, which was much promoted by the Fits of a Putrid Intermitting Fever coming upon all; which returned every day at a stated hour with a Chilness, Heat, and Sweats succeeding one another; till at length the Patient being brought to the utmost degree of a *Marasmus*, was forced to yield to Fate.

With the repeated use of the *Peruvian* Bark I very often took off his Putrid Fever, which nevertheless (the cause of it still remaining in the Wound) returned as often, after the interval of a Week or two. Likewise the Hectick heat,

which was kindled in his Blood, was much mitigated with the use of a Milk Diet, of Asses Milk, and by the benefit of the open Country Air; though it could never be perfectly extinguished, because the Procatartick Cause of it, to wit, the Malignant and Incurable Ulcer was plainly too much for the Art of Surgery. Whereupon at last, the ulcerated part being gangren'd, after he had lain six Months, he was reduced to a very Skeleton, and carryed off not only with an Universal Consumption, but also a true Consumption of the Lungs, though it was a Symptomatical one.

History 4.

Mr. *Nye*, the Son of *Philip Nye*, the Famous Nonconformist Minister (as they are called) when he had now about the Thirtieth Year of his Age been troubled almost continually for the space of a Year with a Swelling, that grew in his Stomack, a *Cardialgia*, and Vomiting, (from which Symptoms he could not be freed neither by the frequent use of *Calomelanos*, the Purging Mineral Waters, Chalybeates, Wood-lice, the Decoctions of *Sarsa*, prepared Coral, Pearl, Crabs-eyes prepared, nor of other Medicines of all sorts, ordered even by the most learned and skilful Physicians) at length the Swellings beginning to be inflamed and ulcerated, he being presently taken with an Inflammatory Fever, which was afterwards succeeded by a Putrid Intermitting Fever, he not only ran apace into a Consumptive state with an Universal Colliquation, but also being troubled with a pertinacious Cough, a difficulty of Breathing, and all the other Symptoms of a very Acute Consump-

tion

tion of the Lungs; at length he sent for me, though 'twas to no purpose. For I found him Sick in Bed, in the last degree of a Symptomatical Consumption of the Lungs, which as it was in its own Nature fatal, so likewise very quick. And therefore when I had once given him my helping Hand as much as I could for the Relief of the urgent Symptoms, I presently took my leave of him, having first made a Prognostick of his Death.

Neither indeed did this miserable Patient continue many days. But not having the liberty of opening the Body after he was dead, though there were all the Symptoms of a Pulmonary Consumption, yet as it did not appear to me as an Eye-witness, so I cannot confidently affirm how much the Lungs themselves had happened to be affected and injured thereby.

History 5.

A certain Old Gentlewoman, a Lawyer's Wife, that lived in *Shoe-Lane*, when (as she told me) she had for the space of Twenty Years been hardly able to sleep half an hour at a time by reason of a violent and continual pain in making of Water; with which, and with other direful Symptoms accompanying of it she having been very much and continually weakned (and that notwithstanding she had taken the Advice of the most able Physicians) and thereupon being brought at length into a plain Consumptive and Hectick state, and being continually confin'd to her Bed by reason of her Weakness, she sent for me not long before she dyed; now when by reason of the loss of her Appetite, she had for a long time abhorred Food as well as Physick

When I came I found her really an extraordinary Woman, that adorn'd her Old Age with Fortitude and Prudence beyond what is common to that Sex; but yet (as I gueſt even at the firſt ſight by her extream Emaciation, Cough, Fever, and difficulty of Breathing) I found her lying very miſerably in the laſt degree of a Conſumption. Becauſe ſhe was obliged almoſt perpetually to conflict not only with the uſual Symptoms of a Pulmonary Conſumption, and a Hectick Fever, but alſo with a frequent and dreadful Spaſmodick Colick of her Stomack, from the motion of ſome Stones out of the Gall-Bladder, as likewiſe with a continual pain in making of Water, cauſed by a Stone, and an Ulcer of the Kidneys. From whence it came to paſs, that her Urine when 'twas firſt made, was whitiſh, and afterwards had a very great, a fetid, and truly purulent Sediment. But upon looking on the Urine, I preſently found there was a pretty large Ulcer cauſed by a Stone in the Kidney affected, and I did think that a Pulmonary Conſumption had been brought on Symptomatically by that Ulcer.

Nature having been now for ſome time weakned, oppreſt, and ſinking under ſo many, and ſuch great Evils, it happened likewiſe that her Brain, and the whole *Genus Nervoſum* were ſo remarkably and continually affected, that laying aſide all her other Complaints of her Conſumption, Ulcer, and Stone, ſhe deſired only this, that I would do ſomething to help her againſt her Swoonings, and Faintneſs, which often returned, as alſo againſt deliriouſneſs, and the cold and hot Vapours, (as ſhe called them) which did continually both Night and Day alternately ſucceed each other, which ſeemed to be more troubleſome to her than all the other miſerable Symptoms.

toms. Presently I did all I could to relieve those troublesome Symptoms with the use of *Spirit of Hartshorn*, of *Salt Armoniack*, *Tincture of Castor*, *Antihysterick Juleps*, and other things of that Nature. Neither indeed did I plainly neglect her distempered Lungs, and her ulcerated Kidneys, (where the first Original of this Distemper lay) but I took care of these too, with the use of Emulsions, Balsamick and Pectoral Medicies, that is, so far as the extenuated Habit of her Body, and of her bad Stomack would bear. But yet all these things were now ordered to no purpose. For as the Ulcer of her Kidney was now for a long time become plainly incurable; so likewise the Secundary Affections of the Lungs and *Genus Nervosum*, which were the Effects of it, seemed to be rather the Trophies of conquer'd and yielding Nature, than either accidental Oppressions, or any accidental Diseases, that Art could overcome. But a little before she dyed, when Death seemed to be near at hand, this *Virago* desired me very earnestly, and indeed made me promise that I would take care that her Body should be opened after she was dead, that for the good of the Living, she might, when she was dead, be serviceable to that Art of Physick, from which she received no Benefit whilst she lived.

The Husband having given leave (though with much ado) that the Body should be examined after she was dead, she was opened very Solemnly, several Eminent Physicians being present. The first thing that was Remarkable was, that though all the Limbs, and the Face of this Tabid Woman were emaciated, yet the Adipose Membrane of the Belly was strangely thick with Fat, as it commonly happens to Calculous Persons, it may be from a slower motion of the Blood through the Neighbouring Parts, and a smaller secretion of the *Serum* by the Kidneys than there ought to be; but we found the outward Membrane of the left Kidney sticking firmly to it, as being something swelled from its Distemper.

But the Substance of it being opened it looked like a Honey-Comb, being every where full of Stones and Cavities, or certain little Cells, out of which some Stones had been formerly extruded, but without the least Exulceration. But the right Kidney we found like a Purse

not only full of Stones and Matter, but likewiſe very much diſtended, the whole Subſtance alſo, which had been contained within the inveſting Membranes, having been before by degrees corrupted and conſumed, and likewiſe the Membranes themſelves being filled with abundance of Stones and Serous *Pus*, ſuch as we likewiſe found in the Bladder, and ſuch as ſhe uſed commonly to void with her Urine. From which the cauſe of that Chronical Dyſury and Conſumption, with which ſhe had been ſo long afflicted, was very evident. Alſo the Emulgent Veins, which carryed back the Blood from the Kidneys, by reaſon of the mighty Calculous diſpoſition of the Blood, with which this Miſerable Old Woman was affected, were (which was very ſtrange) like ſtony Pipes covered on the inſide with a plain calculous Cruſt. Moreover we found the Gall-Bladder full of Stones, from the motion of which that Cholick of her Stomack, accompanyed with dreadful Spaſms, with which ſhe was often troubled, did without doubt take its Original. Yet we did not find that the Lungs themſelves were any where exulcerated, but almoſt every where full of crude Tubercles, and Chalky Stones. From which the cauſe of her continual Cough, ſhortneſs of Breath, and the other Pulmonary Affections did appear to our very ſight. Yet I do not at all doubt but that in progreſs of time thoſe Tubercles might have ripened; and by that means this Incipient Conſumption of the Lungs might have gone on to a Confirm'd and Deplorable Conſumption, if an untimely Death, procured by other cauſes, had not prevented it.

FINIS.

A General

TABLE

Of all the Diseases and their Cure, illustrated with variety of Cases and Observations.

A.

OF *an* Abscess *of the Loyns, an Example.* pag. 30
Agglutinating *Medicines* 135
What Air *is good in a Consumption* 152
Anatomical *Cases of an Asthmatical Consumption* 215
Of a Consumption from a Dropsie 49
Of a Consumption from an Hæmoptoë 232
Item 233
Of an Ictherical Consumption 327
Of a Consumption from a Loseneß 38
Of a Consumption from Nails in the Lungs 247
Of a Scrophulous Consumption 200
Of a Consumption from Internal Ulcers 348
Item 351
Item 357
Antiscorbuticks *to be used in a Scorbutical Consumption* 204

Asse's

Asse's Milk is proper in Consumptions pag. 22
Rules to be observed in the use of Asse's Milk 163
Asse's Milk not convenient in an Icterical Consumption 315
Of an Asthmatical Consumption 212
The Cure 214
A History 215
An Atrophy, *or Nervous Consumption* 4
The Cure 6
History 1. 8
History 2. 10

B.

Balsamicks *proper in a Consumption from Apostems* pag. 27
Balsamicks *proper in an Original Consumption of the Lungs* 133. 151. 159. 180
Balsamicks *useful in a Scrophulous Consumption* 196
In a Consumption from stopping of Ulcers 255
In a Consumption from a Peripneumony 269
In a Consumption from Stones in the Lungs 240
Item 242
In a Consumption from Internal Ulcers 345
The Author's Balsamick *Pills* 151
The Peruvian Bark *is good in a Consumption from Bleeding at the Nose* 17
The Bark *is good in a Consumption from Intermitting Fevers* 298
Is an Antidote against an Habitual Hæmoptoë 227
Is good in an Hæmoptoïcal Consumption 231
Is to be given in the Putrid Fever 179
And to be repeated 181
The Bath *Waters are proper in a Consumption from a* Diabetes 41

The TABLE.

Bleeding *necessary in the beginning of a Consumption* pag. 138
Bleeding *necessary in the Peripneumonick Fever* 175
Bleeding *necessary in a Consumption from Fevers* 295
Bleeding *when necessary in a Scrophulous Consumption* 197
From Bleeding *at the Nose a Consumption* 14
The Cure Ibid.
A History 17
A Broath *to be used in a Consumption* 165

C.

THE Cure of the Catarrh *in the beginning of a Consumption* 138
Carminative *Medicines to be used in a Consumption* 134
From the Celiack *Passion a Consumption* 57
History 1. 59
History 2. 60
Cephalicks *proper in an* Atrophy 6
Cephalicks *proper in a Consumption from Melancholy* 218
Chalybeate *Waters proper in a Consumption from Apostems* 29
In a Consumption from Bleeding 17
In a Consumption from a Diabetes 41
In a Consumption from a Dropsie 48
In a Consumption from a Dysentery 38
In a Consumption from a Gonorrhœa 22
In a Consumption from stopping a Gonorrhœa, *&c.* 255
In a Consumption from the Gout, &c. 279
In a Consumption from the Green-Sickness 260
In a Hæmoptoical Consumption 231

Chaly-

Chalybeate *Waters proper in an Icterical Consumption* pag. 315
In an Original Consumption of the Lungs 160
In a Consumption from a Peripneumony, &c. 269
In a Scorbutical Consumption 205
In a Scrophulous Consumption 200
In a Consumption from giving of Suck 34
In a Consumption from Sweats 54
In a Consumption from Internal Ulcers 347
Rules to be observed in the use of the Chalybeate *Waters* 161
Item 231
Chirurgical *Remedies in a Pulmonary Consumption* 137
Of the Colliquation *in a Consumption* 105
How to moderate the Colliquative *Sweats* 186
Of a Confirm'd *Consumption of the Lungs, the Signs* 100
A dry Cough *the first Sign of a Pulmonary Consumption* 82
How distinguisht from a Catarrh 84
How to relieve the Cough *in a Pulmonary Consumption* 184

D.

THE Decoction *of* Sarsa *good in a Consumption from Apostems* 24
In a Consumption from the French *Pox* 283
In an Original Consumption of the Lungs 133, 134
In a Consumption from the drying of Old Sores 287
A Prescription for a Decoction *of* Sarsa 25
A Pectoral Decoction *of* Sarsa 153. 253

The

The TABLE.

The several Degrees *of a Pulmonary Consumption* pag. 69

From a Diabetes *a Consumption* 41

The Cure Ibid.

History 1. 42

History 2. Ibid.

History 3. 43

The Diagnostick *Signs of an Asthmatical Consumption* 212

Of Consumption from Melancholy 218

Of an Original Consumption 82

Of a Scrophulous Consumption 195

Of a Consumption from Stones, &c. 238

Diaphoreticks *good in a Consumption* 143

What Diaphoreticks *are good in a Consumption* 133

Rules about the use of Diaphoreticks 144

What Diet *is convenient in a Pulmonary Consumption* 153

The Differences *of an Original Pulmonary Consumption* 117

Diversion *good in a Consumption from Bleeding* 16

Diversion *good in a Nervous Consumption* 8

Diversion *good in a Scorbutical Consumption* 206

The Diureticks *proper in a Pulmonary Consumption* 132

Diureticks *good in a Consumption from a Dropsie* 48

From a Dropsie *a Consumption* 47

The Cure 48

A History 49

A Dysury *from an Ulcer in the Kidney* 357

E.

From an Empyema *a Consumption, and the Cure* 268

History 1. 270

History 2. 273

Evacuati-

Evacuations *proper in an Original Pulmonary Consumption* pag. 128
All Evacuations, *when to be avoided* 22. 34. 131

F.

A Fever *one sign of a Consumption* 98
From Fevers *a Consumption* 294
The Cure 295
Observation 1. 299
Observation 2. 302
Observation 3. 304
From Fistula's *a Consumption* 254
A Fistula *in one of the Testicles* 353
From the French *Disease a Consumption* 250
The Cure 251
An Observation 252

G.

Gargarisms *to be used in the Thrush* 190
From a Gonorrhœa *a Consumption* 19
The Signs 20
The Cure 21
From the stopping of a Gonorrhœa *a Consumption* 254
The Cure 255
From the Gout *a Consumption* 276
The Cure 277
From the Green-Sickness *a Consumption* 258
The Cure 259
An Observation 260

H.

Pag.

A Hectick *Fever one Sign of a Consumption* 94
A Hectick *Fever when the Sign of a confirm'd Consumption* 158
When the Hectick *Fever is considerable, what is to be done* 163
The Hiccough *how to relieve* 189
From an Hypochondriacal *Affection a Consumption* 217
From an Hysterical *Affection a Consumption* Ibid.
The Cure 218
Of an Hysterical *Consumption, an Observation* 223
Hysterick *Passions the sign of Nurses Consumptions* 33

I.

AN Icterical *Consumption* 307
Diagnostick Signs 311
Prognostick Signs 313
The Cure Ibid.
Observation 1. 316
Observation 2. 321
Observation 3. 327
Observation 4. 338
Jellies *to be used in a Consumption* 166
A Jelly-*Broth* Ibid.
Inciding *Medicines* 134
Inciding *Medicines good in an Asthmatical Consumption* 214
Incraſſating *Medicines* 135
Incraſſating *Medicines good in the beginning of a Consumption* 146
Incraſſating *Medicines good in an Hæmoptoical Consumption* 230

Incraſſating *Medicines hurtful in an Aſthmatick Conſumption* pag. 214
In a Conſumption from the Gout 277
In an Icterical Conſumption 314
Indications *for preventing a Conſumption* 75
Indications *of Cure in a Pulmonary Conſumption* 127
Inflammatory *Fever a ſign of a confirm'd Conſumption* 100
The Inflammatory *Fever deſcribed* 174
The Cure 175
From Intermitting *Fevers a Conſumption* 296
The Cure 298
Obſervation 1. 299
Obſervation 2. 332
Obſervation 3. 344
Iſſues *convenient in an Original Pulmonary Conſumption* 81
Iſſues *when convenient in a Conſumption from Ulcers* 28
Iſſues *convenient in a Conſumption from Sweats* 54
In a Conſumption from ſtopping of Ulcers 255
Juleps *to be uſed in a Pulmonary Conſumption* 167. 169. 173. 177
A Julep *for the Colliquative Sweats* 187

K.

From the King's-Evil *a Conſumption.* Vide *A Scrophulous Conſumption*

L.

From a Lientery *a Conſumption* 57
A Lime-*Water good in a Conſumption from Apoſtems* 25
For a Lime-*Water a Preſcription* 26

From

From a Looſeneſs *a Conſumption* pag. 37
The Cure Ibid.
An Obſervation 38
Of the Looſeneſs *in a confirm'd Conſumption* 109
A Looſeneſs *in a Pulmonary Conſumption how to relieve* 183
The Lubricating *Medicines that are proper in a Conſumption of the Lungs* 134. 146
Lubricating *Medicines when proper in a Conſumption from a Peripneumony* 269
Lubricating *Medicines good in a Conſumption from Stones in the Lungs* 241
Lubricating *Medicines do no good in a Conſumption from the Gout* 277
Not to be uſed in Hæmoptoical Conſumptions 230
Of the Lungs *an Original Conſumption* 62
The Cauſes 64
The Degrees, and Preſaging Signs 69
The Diagnoſtick Signs 82
The ſigns that it is confirm'd. Vide *confirm'd Conſumption*
Indications of Cure. Vide *Indications.*
Method of Cure in the firſt degree 138
Method of Cure in the ſecond degree 155
Method of Cure in the third degree 171
Symptoms how to relieve 182
Of the Lungs *Symptomatical Conſumptions* 191

M.

THE Matter *ſpit in a Pulmonary Conſumpt.* 115
True Matter, *or* Pus, *how to be known* 116
A Mead *when proper* 170
From the Meaſles *a Conſumption* 294
The Cure 295
From Melancholy *a Conſumption* 217
The Prognoſticks 218
The Cure Ibid.

Observation 1. pag. 220
Observation 2. 221
A Milk-*diet good in a Consumption from Apostems* 29
In a Consumption from Bleeding 17
In a Consumption from a Diabetes 41
In a Consumption from a Dysentery 37
In a Consumption from a Gonorrhœa 22
In a Consumption from a Looseness 37
In an Original Consumption of the Lungs 127
In a Consumption from Salivation 46
In a Consumption from giving of Suck 34
In a Consumption from Sweats 55
In a Consumption from Internal Ulcers 347
Concerning a Milk-diet, *some Observations* 163
A Milk-diet *not proper in an Asthmatick Consumption* 214
Nor in a Consumption from a Dropsie 49
Nor in an Icterical Consumption 315
Nor in a Consumption from Melancholy 219
Nor in a Scorbutical Consumption 206
Nor in a Scrophulous Consumption 197
Nor in a Consumption from Stones 242
A Milk-Water 168
Mucilaginous *Medicines to be used in an Icterical Consumption* 314

N.

FRom Nails, *&c. a Consumption* 239
The Cure 240
An Observation 247
The Nerves *to be relieved in a Consumption from Melancholy* 218
A Nervous *Consumption.* Vide Atrophy.

O.

OPiates *convenient in a Consumption from a Looseness* 38
In an Original Consumption of the Lungs 136

Opiates

Opiates *convenient after a Vomit* pag. 140
After a Purge 142
With Diaphoreticks 144
At other times 150
Opiates *to be given to abate the Cough* 185
Opiates *easily born in the Symptomick Looseneß* 183
Muſt be given in the Symptomatick Looseneß. Ib.
Opiates *when cautiously to be given* 173
Opiates *good in a Conſumption from Melancholy* 219
Opiates *good in a Conſumption from ſpitting of Blood* 230
In a Conſumption from Stones, &c. 240
Opiates *dangerous in an Aſthmatick Conſumption* 214
Opiates *hurtful in a Conſumption from the Gout* 277
In an Icterical Conſumption 315
In a Scorbutical Conſumption 204
An Oppreſſion *of the Breaſt in a Conſumption* 96
Oyly *Medicines.* Vide *Lubricating Medicines.*

P.

PAins *racking the Bowels to relieve* 183
Pains *of the Sides how to relieve* 178
Pains *in a Conſumption from the Green-Sickneß* 259
Pains *in an Icterical Conſumption* 313
Pains *in a Conſumption from Stones* 238
A Paracenteſis *when to be made* 268
From Parents *a Conſumption derived* 66
Paſſions *troubleſome cauſe a Nervous Conſumption* 8
Paſſions *the cauſe of a Pulmonary Conſumption* 92
Paſſions *attend a Conſumption from Bleeding* 16
Confirm a Conſumption 21
Troubleſome Paſſions *muſt be avoided* 154
Of Pectoral *Medicines the ſeveral ſorts* 74. 133
Pectorals *muſt be given plentifully.*
The Peripneumonick *Fever in a Conſumption* 100. 174
The Cure 175

Salt Phlegm *sign of a Consumptive disposition* 71
From a Pleurisy *a Consumption* 263
The Cure 267
Observation 1. 270
Observation 2. 273
A Pleurisy *ill cured causes Tubercles in the Lungs* 91
From the French-Pox *a Consumption* 250
The Cure 251
An Observation 252
From the Small-Pox *a Consumption* 294
The Cure 295
The Prevention *of a Consumption* 74
Prognosticks *in an Original Consumption of the Lungs* 122
Pulmonary *Medicines.* Vide *Pectoral Medicines*
Of the Pulse *in the Hectick Fever, Observations* 113
In the Inflammatory Fever Ibid.
In the Putrid Fever 114
Purging *proper in a Consumption* 128
The Purgers *proper in a Pulmonary Consumption* 131
Purging-*Waters when convenient in a Scorbutical Consumption* 205
Purging *when not convenient* 158
The Putrid *Fever in a Consumption of the Lungs described* 103. 179
The Cure 179

R.

A Raucedo *presages a Consumption* 95
From a Rheumatism *a Consumption* 276
The Cure 276. 278
Observation 1. 280
Observation 2. 283
Observation 3. 291
From a Chronical Rheumatism *a Consumption incurable* 278

The TABLE.

S.

From a Salivation *a Consumption* pag. 45
The Cure 46
An Observation Ibid.
Salivation *proper in a Consumption from the* French *Disease* 252
Salivation *proper in a Consumption from Internal Ulcers* 346
A Salt *Scurvy* 202
From Scarlate *Fevers a Consumption* 294
The Cure 295
A Scrophulous *Consumption* 194
The Cure where there are hot swellings 197
The Cure where they are of a middle nature 199
The Cure where there is no Putrid Fever 290
An Observation Ibid.
From the Scurvy *a Consumption* 202
The Signs 203
The Cure 204
An Observation 207
Shaving *of the Head good in a Consumption from Apostemes* 28
Shaving *of the Head good in a Pulmonary Consumption* 81. 137
Shell-Fish, *when proper* 165
Shortness *of Breath follows upon the Tubercles* 96
Signs *of an Incipient Consumption* 82
The Skin *how it shews a Consumptive disposition* 70
A Snail-*Water* 168
From Spitting *of Blood a Consumption* 225
The Cure 230
Observation 1. 232
Observation 2. 233
Observation 3. 236
Steel *Medicines good in an* Atrophy 6
In a Consumption from Melancholy 219

Steel

Steel *Medicines good in a Scorbutical Consumption* pag. 205
Stomachicks *good in a Nervous Consumption* 6
From Stones *in the Lungs a Consumption* 238
The Cure 240
Observation 1. 244
Observation 2. 245
Observation 3. 246
From Stones *in the Kidneys and Bladder a Consumption* 243
The Cure Ibid.
From giving of Suck *a Consumption* 32
The Cure 34
An Observation 35
Giving of Suck *sometimes Cures a Consumption* 32
The Suppression *of Evacuations one cause of a Consumption* 70
From a Suppression *of Womens Courses a Consumption* 258
The Cure 259
From Surfeits *a Consumption* 294
The Cure 295
From Sweats *a Consumption* 52
Observation 1. 53
Observation 2. 54
Observation 3. 56
Colliquative Sweats *in a Consumption* 107
The Colliquative Sweats *how to moderate* 186
The Symptoms *of a Consumption to be relieved* 182
Symptomatical *Consumptions of the Lungs* 191

T.

TAblets *of the* Peruvian *Bark* 301
From breeding of Teeth *a* Diabetes *and Consumption* 43
A Thirstiness *attends a Consumption* 94
Much Thoughtfulness *presages a Consumption* 70

Tobacco *hurtful in a Scorbutical Consumption.* p.206
A Thrush *happens in the end of a Consumption* 111
The Thrush *how to be relieved* 189
Tubercles *in the second degree of a Consumption* 156
An Account of the Tubercles *in a Pulmonary Consumption* 88

V.

VEsicatories *proper in an Original Consumption of the Lungs* 145. 178
In a Consumption from the stopping of Ulcers, &c. 255
A Voice *squeaking and shrill shews a Consumptive disposition* 70
A disposition to Vomit, *when the Sign of a Consumption* 94
A Vomiting *in the end of a Consumption to relieve* 188
Vomits *good in an Original Consumption of the Lungs* 132
In a Consumption from the Gout and Rheumatism 278
In a Consumption from Melancholy 219
Vomits *to be given to help Expectoration* 268
Observations of the Urine *in a Consumption* 114
From Iternal Ulcers *a Consumption* 340
Indications of Cure 345
Method of Cure 346
Observation 1. 348
Observation 2. 351
Observation 3. 353
Observation 4. 356
Observation 5. 357
From large Ulcers *a Consumption* 23
The Cure 24

W.

WAsting *of the Flesh a sign of a Consumption* pag. 99
From the Whites *a Consumption* 19
The Presaging Signs 20
The Cure 21
Wine *hurtful in a Consumption from Bleeding* 16
In a Consumption from a Diabetes 42
In a Consumption from a Gonorrhœa 22
In a Pulmonary Consumption 153

Y.

IN Young *Persons a Consumption is Acute, and hard to Cure* 124

FINIS.